

Presented to
The Library
of the
University of Toronto
by
Prof. J. Macnaughton

W. G. PETERSON
EX LIBRIS
W. G. PETERSON.

EX LIBRIS
W. G. PETERSON.

Clarendon Press Series

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Vol. I.

THE present Volume is likewise issued in two Parts, at 2s. 6d. each. Part I contains *The Simple Sentence*; Part II *The Compound Sentence*. The Vocabulary is given with both Parts.

* * A Key to this Volume is supplied to *Teachers only*, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press, price 5s. net cash.

BY THE SAME EDITOR.

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Vol. II. Passages of Graduated Difficulty for Translation into Latin, together with an Introduction on Continuous Prose. 4s. 6d.

LATIN PROSE VERSIONS. Contributed by various Scholars, and edited by Prof. GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., LL.D., Litt.D. Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.

* * This Volume includes Latin renderings of many of the English passages contained in '*Latin Prose Composition*,' Vol. II.

N

Clarendon Press Series

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

VOLUME I

G. G. RAMSAY

London

HENRY FROWDE

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE
AMEN CORNER, E.C.



New York

THE MACMILLAN CO., 66 FIFTH AVENUE

LaL.Gr
R1787Kx

Clarendon Press Series

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

*ADAPTED FOR THE LEAVING CERTIFICATE
AND UNIVERSITY PRELIMINARY
EXAMINATIONS*

BY

GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., LL.D.

HON. LL.D. (EDIN.), LITT.D. (DUBLIN)

PROFESSOR OF HUMANITY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF GLASGOW
EDITOR OF 'SELECTIONS FROM TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS,' ETC.

FOURTH EDITION, REVISED

VOLUME I: CONTAINING

SYNTAX

EXERCISES WITH NOTES

VOCABULARY AND APPENDIX

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1897

28/882/33
25



Oxford

PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

BY HORACE HART

PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PREFACE TO THIRD EDITION

THIS book has been entirely rewritten. I have been so often asked by former pupils, schoolmasters, and others, to make it complete in itself for teaching purposes, by adding a Syntax, together with the various notes and hints with which I have been accustomed to supplement my own use of it, that I at last consented; though I confess, had I foreseen how much time and labour would be involved in a work apparently so elementary, I might have hesitated to undertake it.

My object in this edition has been to construct a progressive manual for teaching Latin Prose Composition, not only to the advanced student, but also to beginners who know nothing of Latin but the Accidence. I believe in teaching Latin Prose *well* from the very beginning; in the very simplest sentences, regard for order, for idiom, for Latin modes of thought and expression, can be taught; and to acquire these is to acquire the art of writing good Latin Prose.

The present Volume takes the student from the beginning of the Syntax to the writing of simple Continuous Prose. Part I gives the Syntax of the Simple Sentence, and of the Cases; Part II that of the Compound Sentence. The order of the whole is arranged with a view to consecutive teaching. The

Exercises are progressive throughout ; if any point introduced into an Exercise has not previously been explained either in the Rules or Notes, a note is added to explain it. At the same time, there is scarcely a sentence which illustrates one rule only. At any one point, the student is supposed to know, and to be able to apply, all that has preceded ; different constructions, illustrations of exceptions as well as of the rule, are placed side by side, that he may acquire the habit of thinking out each sentence before he writes it.

Especial care has been bestowed upon the Syntax. In framing the definitions all the best modern authorities have been consulted. The object aimed at has been to state the results of modern scholarship in the simplest and clearest terms.

Under all the main headings in the Syntax, two sets of Exercises are given. Those headed ' Easy ' are intended for beginners, and will serve as a First Course ; more advanced students should be required to translate these at sight into Latin, *viva voce*. The others are more difficult ; idioms and varied constructions are gradually introduced, with hints for their use, in order that the student may learn as early as possible how to pass from idiomatic English to idiomatic Latin.

All the Sentences have been chosen or framed with a view to translation into Latin, so as to bring out the differences of idiom in the two languages. Many of the exercises consist of stories, given in detached sentences. Having translated these singly,

the pupil should be taught to combine them in a narrative, and thus make a commencement of Continuous Prose.

It is not intended that a pupil should have to write every Exercise in the book. There is necessarily much repetition of important points, and each teacher will know best which Exercises to select. He should, however, in every case require the pupil to get up the notes to omitted exercises.

Vol. II treats of Continuous Prose systematically, and comprises a series of passages, of various styles, and of graduated difficulty, for translation into Latin. In connexion with this Volume there has been published a selection of Latin Versions contributed by many of the best Latin scholars of the day.

Among many books from which I have derived assistance, I may specially mention Madvig's Latin Grammar, Draeger's Historical Syntax, Roby's Grammar, Monro's Homeric Grammar, Dr. Bradley's two books on Latin Prose, the Revised Primer, and the Grammars of Dr. Postgate, Prof. E. A. Sonnenschein, and Messrs. Allen and Greenough. While I have not followed exactly the terms or the classifications of any one Grammar, and have avoided all technical terms not generally familiar, I have taken care that the book should present no difficulties to those who use as their Grammar the Revised Latin Primer.

In one point, to which I attach much importance, I have departed from the established order in the Syntax. I put the Syntax of the Verb, in all its varieties, before the Syntax of the Cases. To adopt

any other order, as a matter of practical teaching, seems to me to be a fundamental mistake. The Verb is *the* great instrument, the starting-point, of thought; the Cases presuppose the Verb, not the Verb the Cases; no sentence can be constructed without a Verb; and the pupil who has once mastered the uses of the Verb finds no difficulty with the Cases. To go straight for the Verb is to attack at once the main difficulty of the Latin language, and to grasp the key to the fundamental differences between English and Latin.

My especial thanks for help and suggestions are due to Professor Butcher, Professor E. A. Sonnenschein, Professor H. A. Strong, and to the Rev. C. Darnell of Cargilfield, whose rare power of teaching Latin Prose to young boys I have long admired.

A key to the present Volume, for teachers only, may be had from the publishers.

G. G. RAMSAY.

UNIVERSITY OF GLASGOW:

November 1, 1891.

PREFACE TO FOURTH EDITION

THE book has been revised throughout for this Edition; and suggestions kindly made by various teachers and scholars have been adopted.

G. G. R.

November 1, 1896.

TABLE OF CONTENTS



PART I.

The Simple Sentence.

	PAGE
Preliminary, §§ 1-10	I
The Four ConCORDS, §§ 11-15	5
Exercises on Do., I-III	7

Syntax of the Latin Verb.

Transitive and Intransitive Verbs, with their varieties, §§	
16-28	10
Exercises on Do., IV-XVIII	10
Do. and the use of Pronouns, XIX-	
XXI	29
Verbs used Prolately, § 27	32
Exercise on Do., XXII	33
Impersonal Verbs, § 28	33
Exercise on Do., XXIII	35
Deponent Verbs, §§ 29, 30	36
Exercise on Do., XXIV	37
The Participles, §§ 31-35	37
Exercises on Do., XXV-XXVII	39
The Infinitive, § 36	42
Exercise on Do., XXVIII	44

	PAGE
Gerund and Gerundive, §§ 37-41	45
Exercise on Do., XXIX	47
The Supines, §§ 42, 43	48
Exercise on Do., XXX	49

Syntax of the Cases.

The Accusative, §§ 44-58	50
Exercises on Do., XXXI-XLI	57
The Dative, §§ 59-69	66
Exercises on Do., XLII-LIII	73
The Ablative, §§ 70-90	84
Exercises on Do., LIV-LXVIII	93
The Genitive, §§ 91-104	106
Exercises on Do., LXIX-LXXVIII	116
Exercises on Gerund and Gerundive, LXXIX- LXXXIII	122
Do. on Supines, LXXXIV	126
Do. on Numerals and Money, LXXXV	127
Do. on Dates, LXXXVI	128
Do. on Motion, Place, Time, &c., LXXXVII	129
The Subjunctive Mood used Independently, §§ 105-107	130
Exercises on Do., LXXXVIII-LXXXIX	133
Recapitulatory Exercises on Part I, XC-XCVIII	134

PART II.

The Compound Sentence.

Simple and Compound Sentences, and Subordinate Clauses, §§ 108-112	141
Adjectival Clauses, § 113	144
Exercises on Do., XCIX-CII	145

	PAGE
Substantival Clauses, §§ 114, 115	148
Oratio Obliqua, §§ 116-124	150
Exercises on Do., CIII-CVII	155
Virtual Oratio Obliqua, § 125	164
Exercise on Do., CVIII	165
Indirect Question, §§ 126, 127	166
Exercises on Do., CIX-CXVI	168
Speeches in Oratio Obliqua, § 128	175
Exercises on Do., CXVII-CXXI	177
Indirect Commands, &c., Substantival Clauses introduced by <i>ut, ne</i> , &c., §§ 129, 130	180
Exercises on Do., CXXII-CXXVI	181
Adverbial Clauses, §§ 131-133	186
Final Clauses, §§ 134-135	188
Exercises on Do., CXXVII-CXXIX	189
Consecutive Clauses, §§ 136, 137	192
Exercises on Do., CXXX-CXXXIII	194
Causal Clauses, § 138	197
Concessive Clauses, §§ 139, 140	198
Exercises on Do., CXXXIV-CXXXV	200
Temporal Clauses, §§ 141-143	201
Exercises on Do., CXXXVI-CXXXIX	203
Conditional Clauses, §§ 144-150	205
Exercises on Do., CXL-CXLIV	210
Comparative Clauses, §§ 151-153	216
Exercises on Do., CXLV-CXLVI	213
Qui with the Subjunctive, § 154	220
Exercises on Do., CXLVII-CXLIX	221
Quin and quominus, §§ 155, 156	223
Exercise on Do., CL	223
The Consecution of Tenses in Subordinate Clauses, § 157 .	224
Recapitulatory Exercises on Part II, CLI-CLXVI	227

	PAGE
Appendix, containing Summary of Hints for Latin Prose	237
Choice of Words and Phrases	238
Correct Construction of Words	243
Order of Words in Latin	250
Note on the Subjunctive Mood	256
Vocabulary.	
Index.	

SYNTAX WITH EXERCISES.



PART I.

Syntax of Simple Sentences.



PRELIMINARY.

§ 1. Syntax (from *σύνταξις*, 'a putting together in order') teaches us how to put words together, and to 'construct,' or 'build up,' a Sentence, so as to convey a complete meaning. Such meaning must be either (1) A Statement, (2) A Question, (3) A Command, or (4) A Wish.

§ 2. Every Sentence which conveys a complete meaning must contain two parts, and express a connection between them: the **Subject**, i. e. a word or words denoting the Thing or Person spoken about; and the **Predicate**, i. e. that which is said about the thing or person denoted by the Subject.

§ 3. The connection between the Subject and the Predicate (called in Logic the **Copula**, i. e. 'the link') is expressed by the inflection of the Verb—whether

sum or any other Verb—which forms a part, or the whole (as the case may be), of the Predicate.

Thus in the sentence, *rex mortuus est*, ‘the king is dead,’ the Subject is *rex*, the Predicate is *mortuus est*; and the sentence as a whole is said to predicate death of the king. In the sentence, *rex hostem vicit*, ‘the king has conquered the enemy,’ the Subject is the same, the Predicate is *hostem vicit*. In both sentences alike, the link between Subject and Predicate is supplied by the inflexion of the Verbs *est* and *vicit* respectively.

§ 4. The Subject must be in the Nominative Case, and must always be either a Substantive, or the Equivalent of a Substantive. Such Equivalent may be

(1) A Pronoun*:

Hic vera dixit, *This man has spoken the truth*;
Tu mentitus es, *You have lied*.

(2) An Adjective or Participle:

Similia similibus curantur,
Like things are cured by like;
Amantes amentes sunt,
Lovers are lunatics.

(3) An Infinitive or Infinitival Phrase†:

* Pronouns are usually omitted in Latin when not necessary for emphasis or distinction. Thus, *curro*, ‘I run’; *legit*, ‘he reads’; *audimus*, ‘we hear’; but, *non ego sed tu erras*, ‘It is not I, but you, who are mistaken.’

† In a Compound Sentence (see § 10) each group of words which has a Subject and Predicate of its own is called a *Clause*. A group of words which together stand for a single part of speech, without the idea of predication, is called a *Phrase*.

Errare humanum est, *To err is human ;*
 Multas vidisse terras paucis contingit,
To have seen many lands falls to the lot of few.

(4) A **Substantival Clause** introduced by *ut* or *quod* :

Restat ut fugiamus, *It remains that we should fly*, i. e.
flight remains for us.

§ 5. The Predicate must either be a Verb, or contain a Verb *, because it is only by a Verb that a statement, a question, a command, or a wish, can be expressed †. It may be a simple idea, expressed by a single Verb, as

Hic puer natat, *This boy swims ;*

or it may be a very complex idea, requiring many additions to the Verb to complete the sense, as

Hic puer bene natat, *This boy swims well ;*

Hic puer in aqua inconsulto dum natat ab ingenti sepia morsus est,

This boy while swimming unwarily in the water was bitten by a huge cuttlefish.

These three sentences have the same Subject, *hic puer*, of whom it is predicated (1) *that he swims ;*

* The Verbs *est*, *sunt*, are frequently omitted : *victi hostes*, 'the enemy (were) conquered.'

† In fact, the simplest form of sentence consists of a finite Verb alone : e. g. *vivit*, 'he lives.' The Subject is here supplied by *-it*, the Person-Ending of the Verb, while the Stem *viv-* supplies the Predicate. Strictly speaking, if we supply a Subject—*vivit rex*—the term supplied is an explanation in apposition to the Subject already expressed by the termination. Thus *viv-it* means 'lives he' ; *vivit rex* 'lives he—that is to say—the king.'

(2) *that he swims well*; (3) *that he was bitten when swimming*, &c.

§ 6. In the same manner, the **Subject** may be enlarged indefinitely by the addition of Adjectives, Adverbs, Nouns in Apposition, or Clauses of any kind; but however complicated Subject or Predicate may be, there can be but one Subject and one Predicate in any Simple Sentence.

§ 7. Verbs which serve to link together two ideas in the relation of Subject and Predicate, are called **Copulative Verbs**. Such Verbs cannot govern a case; they take the same case after them as before them. The following are the principal Verbs of this class: *sum*, 'I am'; *fio*, 'I become'; *evado*, 'I turn out'; *appareo*, 'I appear'; *videor*, 'I seem'; *maneo*, 'I remain,' &c., as well as the Passive of **Factitive Verbs** (Verbs of *making, calling, deeming*, &c.), such as *appellor*, 'I am called'; *existimor*, 'I am deemed'; *creor*, 'I am created,' and the like.

§ 8. A Sentence which consists of a single Subject and a single Predicate is called a **Simple Sentence**. Such a Sentence consists of one Principal or main Clause without any Subordinate Clause dependent upon it; as

Rex mortuus est, The king is dead.

§ 9. When two Sentences, each grammatically complete and independent, are joined together by such Conjunctions as 'and,' 'but,' 'for,' 'or' (*et, sed, at, autem, nam, aut*), &c., they are called **Co-ordinate Sentences**, i. e. Sentences of equal rank, and such Conjunctions are called **Co-ordinative** :

Meum amo patrem, tuum autem odi,

I love my father, but I hate yours ;

Vinceris aut vincis,

You are conquered or you conquer.

§ 10. But when a Sentence consists of a Principal Clause, with one or more Clauses grammatically dependent upon it, it is called a **Compound Sentence**. The Clause or Clauses which are dependent on the Principal Clause are called **Subordinate Clauses** ; they cannot stand alone, or express a complete meaning apart from the Principal Clause :

Rex, quem heri vidi, mortuus est,

The king, whom I saw yesterday, is dead ;

Cum Romam venero, si placebit, te visam,

When I come to Rome, if you wish it, I shall visit you.

Here the Clauses *quem heri vidi, cum Romam venero, si placebit*, are Subordinate or Dependent Clauses, incapable by themselves of expressing a complete meaning. The Rules for the construction of Subordinate Clauses will be given in Part II.

THE FOUR CONCORDS.

§ 11. A **Verb** agrees with its Subject in Number and Person :

Tu nullum omnino sensum habes,

You have no feeling at all ;

Britanni patriam amamus,

We Britons love our country.

§ 12. An **Adjective** agrees with its Substantive in Gender, Number, and Case :

Vacca mea lac nullum dat,

My cow gives no milk.

§ 13. When one Substantive describes or qualifies another Substantive, or a Personal Pronoun, like an Adjective, it is said to be in **Apposition** to the first Noun; and as in such an expression the two ideas are interchangeable, the two Nouns must be placed in the same Case :

Rex Magnus Alexander Indiam vicit,
King Alexander the Great conquered India;
 Ab Alexandro rege India victa est,
India was conquered by King Alexander.

§ 14. The **Relative** *qui, quae, quod*, agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case, it takes whatever construction is required by its own clause :

Femina ista **quam** vides insana est,
That woman whom you see is mad;
 Vir **cuius** uxorem vides insanus est,
The man whose wife you see is mad;
 Candidatus **cui** faves repulsus est,
The candidate whom you support has been rejected;
 Pauci eos amant a **quibus** ipsi non amantur,
Few love those by whom they are not themselves beloved.

COMPOSITE SUBJECTS.

§ 15. The rules for **Composite Subjects** are the same as in English. Thus :

(1) Two Subjects in the Singular, when joined together so as to form a Composite Subject, take a Verb or an Adjective in the Plural :

Caesar et Bibulus consules erant,
Caesar and Bibulus were consuls.

(2) When First and Second Persons are so joined, the Verb will be in the First Person ; when Second and Third are joined, it will be in the Second :

Ego et tu Scoti sumus,
You and I are Scotchmen ;
 Tu et Philippus stulti estis,
You and Philip are fools.

(3) When Substantives of different Genders are coupled together so as to form one Subject, the Adjective usually agrees with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine ; sometimes however with that which stands nearest :

Pueri et puellae mixti cursitant,
Boys and girls are running about together ;
 Terras et maria omnia peragravi,
I have traversed all lands and seas.

But when the Substantives so coupled denote things without life, the Adjective will usually be in the Neuter :

Morbus et medicina pariter ingrata sunt,
Disease and physic are things equally disagreeable.

EXERCISE I.

(*The Concords : easy.*)

Note.—Distinguish carefully the Demonstrative Pronouns.

Hic means ‘this person or thing here,’ ‘this near me’; *iste* ‘that near you,’ ‘that of yours’; *ille*, ‘that yonder,’ ‘that far away.’

Thus *hic* may be equivalent to *ego*; *iste* (sometimes contemptuously) to *tu*; *ille* often means ‘that famous,’ ‘that well-known’ (whether in past or future). Where *hic* and *ille* are contrasted, *hic* means the nearer object, *ille* the further : of two things mentioned, *hic* is ‘the latter,’ *ille* ‘the former.’

Is stands for 'he' or 'that' without emphasis; *ipse* is emphatic, 'himself': *se, sui, sibi, suus*, are Reflexive, and can only be used of the subject* of the sentence. Thus *matrem suam amat*, 'he loves his mother'; but *matrem eius amo*, 'I love his mother.' *Idem* is 'the same'; *uterque* 'each of two'; *ambo* 'both together.'

1. My daughter is very¹ dear to me. 2. I have² an aged mother. 3. My mother is dead. 4. My father and my³ mother are dead. 5. This boy whom you see is not my son. 6. He has² two sisters; both of them have beautiful hair. 7. You and your grandson have often been in my house.⁴ 8. I have seen both⁵ your uncle and your grandfather; the latter is now an old man, but⁶ the former is quite young. 9. That boy there, whose mother you admire, has lost his purse. 10. His purse has just been found by⁷ that same slave.

¹ 'very dear': use the superlative. ² For 'I have' in such cases say *est mihi, sunt mihi*, 'there is (there are) to me.' *Habeo* rather means 'I hold' or 'possess.' ³ Do not repeat 'my.' Latin uses the Poss. Pron. much more sparingly than English. Only use it when needed for distinction. ⁴ 'in my house': *apud me*. ⁵ 'both . . . and': *et . . . et*. ⁶ For 'but' in cases like this use *autem*: *sed* is too strong a word. *Autem* (like *enim, que, &c.*) cannot stand as the first word of a sentence. ⁷ 'by': use *a* with the Abl. Always use *a* or *ab* for 'by' when it denotes a thing done *by a person*. Otherwise the Abl. alone: *dolo* 'by deceit.'

* Or of some word which is regarded as the possible subject of a clause by itself. Thus *suum cuique tribuamus*, 'let us give to each his own': here *cuique* is thought of as subject to some such sentence as 'each should have his own.' But the student should observe the rule absolutely.

EXERCISE II.*(The Concord: easy.)*

1. That book of yours¹ which you hold in your² right hand was written by³ Caesar. 2. It was written by him when⁴ Proconsul. 3. You and I both read it when⁵ we were boys at school. 4. Caesar and his⁶ army performed great exploits⁷; the latter remained faithful to their general throughout all his career. 5. Caesar sailed with all his⁶ forces for⁸ Britain in the month of⁹ August. 6. He returned to Gaul with all speed¹⁰ at the end of the month of September, having remained¹¹ only one month¹² in the country.

¹ Use *iste*: See Pref. N. to Ex. I. ² Do not translate 'your.'

³ See Ex. I, n. 7. ⁴ Omit 'when' and place the Noun in App.

⁵ Use *cum* for 'when' here, since there is a Verb depending on it. ⁶ Remember that *se* and *suus* can only be used of the Subject.

You may say here either '*Caesar atque exercitus eius* (not *suns*) or *Caesar cum exercitu suo*. See Pref. N. to Ex. I. ⁷ Say 'did great things.'

⁸ 'for' here denotes *motion towards*. Use *ad* or *in* with the Acc. ⁹ 'month of August': leave out 'of' and use Apposition.

'Of' here is not the true sign of the Gen.: e.g. 'the city of Rome' is *urbs Roma*. ¹⁰ 'with all speed': *quam celerrime*.

Do not use *cum* for 'with' unless it means 'along with.' ¹¹ Say 'when he had remained.'

¹² Use the Acc. for *duration of time*.

EXERCISE III.*(The Concord: easy.)*

1. Caesar was the greatest of all the Roman generals. 2. He wrote a famous book about his wars in Gaul¹. 3. The book is called the Commentaries of Caius Julius Caesar about the Gallic War.

4. Among Caesar's officers² there were many distinguished men. 5. Antonius and Labienus were of this number, and commanded³ legions under him. 6. In one year⁴ ten great cities, with⁵ much booty, were captured; in each many men and women were sold into⁶ slavery. 7. The cities which the Romans captured were always burned⁷.

¹ Say 'Gallic wars.' ² *praefectus*, -i. ³ *praesum*, with the Dat. ⁴ Use Abl. for a *point of Time*. ⁵ Use *cum*, as 'with' means 'together with.' ⁶ *in*, with the Acc. ⁷ Use the Imperf.

SYNTAX OF THE LATIN VERB.

Transitive Verbs.

§ 16. A Transitive Verb is a Verb the action of which passes over to, and acts directly upon, an Object. Thus *ferio*, 'I strike'; *amo*, 'I love'; *tollo*, 'I raise'; *frango*, 'I break,' are Transitive Verbs, because they necessarily imply an Object which is struck, loved, raised, or broken.

§ 17. The Object of a Transitive Verb is called the Direct Object, and must always be in the Accusative Case :

Magister puerum docet, *The master teaches the boy;*

Timent pueri flagellum, *Boys fear the rod.*

EXERCISE IV.

(*Transitive Verbs : easy.*)

Note.—Observe the exact meaning of the Latin Tenses.

(1) The Present Tense, *amo*, means either 'I love,' or 'I am loving'; the Passive, *amor*, either 'I am loved,' or 'I am being loved.'

(2) The Imperfect, *amabam*, means 'I was loving,' and is used

to denote a state, or continuance of action. It is also used to denote repeated action in Past Time: *Zenonem audiebam frequenter*, 'I used often to hear Zeno'; sometimes also intention, or incipient action: 'wished to' or 'began to.'

(3) **The Perfect**, *amavi*, has two meanings: (a) 'I have loved'; and (b) 'I loved.' With meaning (a) it is called the **Present Perfect**, because it regards a past action not as it was in itself, but as affecting the present condition resulting from it. Thus 'I have dined' is equivalent to 'I am now satisfied'; 'they have lived,' is equivalent to 'they are now dead.' When the Perfect has meaning (b), 'I loved,' it is called **Aoristic**, as being equivalent to the Greek Aorist.

(4) **The Future Perfect**, *amavero*, means 'I shall have loved,' i. e. when some event now future shall have become past.

1. This sailor has bound¹ himself by an oath. 2. The Athenians used to pay² especial honour to old men. 3. Three commissioners³ marked out the boundaries of the new colony. 4. I like very much the flesh of a young hare. 5. Have you not been spending⁴ this winter with your daughters at Rome? 6. I will certainly invite your son-in-law to dinner. 7. If I live⁵ till⁶ October, I shall complete my fortieth year. 8. As the Romans say, you have hit the nail on the head⁷. 9. Since you gave your friend such bad advice, you ought to become surety⁸ for him now. 10. When I was staying in your father's house⁹ I used¹⁰ frequently to see his¹¹ mother.

¹ 'To bind oneself': *se adigere*. ² 'To pay honour to': say 'to honour.' ³ 'Three commissioners': *triumviri*. So *quatuorviri*, *decemviri*, &c. ⁴ 'To spend,' of time: *agere*. ⁵ Use the Future-Perfect. ⁶ 'till': *usque ad*. ⁷ The Latin equivalent for this proverb is 'you have touched the matter with a needle.'

⁸ 'To become surety for': *se vadem dare pro aliquo*. ⁹ 'in your father's house': *apud patrem tuum*. ¹⁰ Use the Imperf.

¹¹ Note that 'his' does not refer to the Subject.

EXERCISE V.*(Transitive Verbs : easy.)*

1. You have cheated your heirs finely by this will.
 2. The emperor is filling the whole of¹ that newly conquered district with colonists. 3. Some of these have cultivated farms² before ; others have only given attention to³ merchandise. 4. It is better to be the possessor of⁴ a live son than⁵ of a dead hero. 5. The country which the emperor conquered was becoming filled by new colonists. 6. They have flocks and herds in abundance : everything except law and order, without which nothing is of any avail⁶. 7. They have fought many battles with the natives, and can with difficulty⁷ hold their own.

¹ 'the whole of': say 'all.' ² Say 'lands.' ³ 'To give attention to': *operam dare*. ⁴ Say 'to have.' ⁵ *Quam*, 'than,' has no effect upon the construction. It takes the same Case after it as before it. ⁶ 'To be of avail': *prodesse*. ⁷ 'with difficulty': *vix*.

EXERCISE VI.*(The Concords, Apposition, Transitive Verbs, &c.)*

1. The people of Rome¹ were at first governed by² kings. 2. Romulus was the first king of Rome. 3. There were two brothers: the one³ was called Romulus, the other Remus. 4. Romulus slew his brother in⁴ a passion. 5. Some⁵ wished Romulus for king, others⁵ Remus: the rest⁶ desired to have no king at all. 6. Neither would⁷ yield to the other, so the augurs were consulted. 7. They said: 'Whomsoever⁸ the birds choose⁹, that man shall be king.' 8. All the best men¹⁰ approved of¹¹ this plan.

¹ Use the Adj., not the Gen. : 'the people of Gaul' is *populus Gallicus*. ² 'by' : see EX. I, n. 7. ³ 'the one . . . the other' : *alter . . . alter*. Note that *alter* always means *one of two* : hence it often means 'the second.' ⁴ Do not translate *in* : say 'being angered,' *iratus*. ⁵ 'Some . . . others' : always translate by *alii . . . alii*. Carefully distinguish *alius* from *alter* (n. 3). ⁶ 'the rest' : *ceteri*. This word includes all except those already mentioned. ⁷ 'would yield' : use the Imperf. Indic. : see EX. IV, Pref. N. *Cedo*, 'I yield,' takes a Dat. ⁸ 'Whosoever' : *quicumque*. This is a Rel. word, declined like *qui*, *quae*, *quod*. ⁹ 'Choose' : use the Fut. When two contemporaneous events, both future, are spoken of, one in a Subordinate, one in a Principal Clause, *both* Verbs must be in the Fut. We say 'I shall help you if I can' : in Latin, *adiuvabo si potero*. So 'I shall see you when I am in Rome' : *cum Romae ero te videbo*. So exactly in French : *je viendrai quand je pourrai* (fut.). ¹⁰ 'All the best men' : *optimus quisque*, lit. 'each best man.' So *sapientissimus quisque*, 'all the wisest men.' ¹¹ 'to approve of' : *approbare*.

EXERCISE VII.

(The same as above.)

1. So on a fixed day each of the two¹ brothers took up a high position for himself, and watched the sky². 2. Soon Remus saw six great vultures ; but³ a little while afterwards⁴ Romulus saw twelve. 3. The former⁵ said that he ought⁶ to be chosen because he had been the first⁷ to see the birds. 4. But the latter⁵, having seen⁸ the greater number of birds, claimed⁹ the kingdom for himself. 5. This made¹⁰ Remus very angry ; so when Romulus built a low wall, only three feet¹¹ high, round the city, Remus contemptuously¹² jumped over it. 6. Then Romulus pierced him through¹³ with his sword and said : 7. 'So shall perish every one who leaps¹⁴ over the walls of my city.'

¹ 'each of the two': *uterque*. 'on a fixed day': use Abl.
² 'To watch the sky': *de caelo servare*. ³ Use *autem*.
 Remember that *autem, enim, quoque, vero*, can never stand as the
 first word of a sentence. ⁴ 'a little afterwards': *paullo post*,
 lit. 'afterwards by a little.' ⁵ See **Ex. I**, Pref. N. ⁶ 'that he
 ought': use Acc. and Infin. (*Oratio Obliqua*). ⁷ Say 'had as
 the first (person) seen the birds.' ⁸ 'having seen': say 'since
 he had seen.' ⁹ 'To claim': *vindicare*. ¹⁰ Say 'Remus was
 made angry.' ¹¹ 'three feet': use Acc. (of *Extent*). ¹² 'con-
 temptuously': *pro ludibrio*. ¹³ 'To pierce through': *transfi-
 gere*. ¹⁴ 'leaps': use the Fut. Perf. When of two events
 mentioned, both future, one must take place before the other, the
 Fut. Perf. must be used for the one to be completed first. We
 say 'When I come to Rome, I shall see you': Latin, more
 correctly, '*cum Romam advenero, te videbo*. See **Ex. VI**, n. 9.

Intransitive Verbs.

§ 18. An Intransitive Verb is one which denotes a state, or an action, which is complete in itself. Thus *sum*, 'I am'; *dormio*, 'I sleep'; *surgo*, 'I rise'; *sto*, 'I stand'; and *curro*, 'I run,' are Intransitive; they do not require an Object to complete their meaning.

EXERCISE VIII.

(*Intransitive Verbs: easy.*)

1. I stand at¹ the door and knock². 2. He has slept for ten hours³ on end⁴. 3. If you hold out⁵ a little longer⁶, our friends will arrive with reinforcements. 4. When you were departing from the city, I was running across the forum. 5. If you leave⁷ Rome to-morrow, I shall die of disgust⁸. 6. When I arrive⁹ in Athens, I shall have journeyed for three whole months. 7. He lay on the ground breathing heavily¹⁰ like¹¹ one about to die. 8. He stood third amongst the candidates. 9. What

o'clock¹² is it? 10. It is six o'clock. 11. Did you¹³ ever see horses running? 12. Are you well¹⁴? 13. Have you not been living for a long time in town? 14. You do not like¹⁵ living there, do you? 15. Does any man¹⁶ want to die?

¹ *ad.* ² *Pulto*, 'I knock,' is a Trans. Verb, and therefore needs a Case. ³ 'for ten hours': time *how long* is put in the Acc. ⁴ Use the Adj. *continuus*. ⁵ 'to hold out': *resistere*, or *tolerare* used absol. ⁶ 'long,' of time, is *diu*. Say 'longer by a little.' ⁷ See Ex. VI, n. 9. ⁸ 'disgust': *taedium*; use Abl. ⁹ See Ex. VII, n. 14. ¹⁰ 'to breathe heavily': *graviter anhelare*. ¹¹ 'like': use either *similis* (with Dat.) or *ut*. Do not express 'one.' ¹² The hour is always asked by the Ordinal Interr. Adj. *quotus*, 'standing which in order?' *quotus* must always be answered by an Ordinal, *first*, *second*, *third*, and so on. ¹³ A question expecting the answer 'no' is asked by *num*; expecting the answer 'yes,' by *nonne*; if the answer is doubtful, by *an* or *ne*. ¹⁴ 'To be well': *valere*. ¹⁵ Use the Adv. *libenter*. ¹⁶ After *si* and *num*, *quis* is used for *aliquis*.

§ 19. An Indirect or Remoter Object is one which is affected by, or interested in, the action of the Verb, but in a more remote degree. It may be joined to Transitive and to Intransitive Verbs alike, and is placed in the Dative Case. If we say

Dant nummos pueris avunculi, *Uncles give coins to boys*; the Accusative *nummos* is a Direct Object to the Transitive Verb *dant*; the Dative *pueris* denotes the Object indirectly affected by it.

Again, if we turn *dant* into the Passive, and say

Pueris dantur nummi, *Coins are given to boys*;

or use an Intransitive Verb, and say

Placent pueris avunculi, *Uncles are dear to boys*;

in each case the Passive *dantur*, and the Intransi-

tive Verb *placent*, respectively, take a Dative of the Indirect Object.

§ 20. Many Verbs which are Transitive in English have Intransitive Equivalents in Latin. Intransitive Verbs cannot take an Accusative of the Direct Object; they can only take a Dative of the Indirect Object. The following is a list of the principal Verbs of this class:

faveo, *I am favourable to, I favour*: fortibus fortuna favet, *fortune favours the brave*.

fido, *I trust to, place confidence in*: hic sibi fidit, *this man believes in himself*. So **confido**, **diffido***.

medeor, *I provide remedies for, I heal*: dolori dentium medetur, *he prescribes for toothache*.

noceo, *I am harmful to, I hurt*: nocent frigora vitibus, *the cold damages the vines*.

nubo, *I veil myself for, I marry* (of the woman): Venus Vulcano nupsit, *Venus married Vulcan*.

oboedio or **obedio**, *I give ear to, I obey*: non semper patribus oboediunt pueri, *boys do not always obey their fathers*.

obsto, *I stand up against, I withstand*; **occurro**, *I run in the way of, I meet*; **subvenio**, *I come up to, I succour, I assist*: Tiberius filio subvenit, *Tiberius came to the rescue of his son*†.

* **fido** and its components are also used with the Ablative of Things, but not of Persons: prudentia eius consilioque fidens, *trusting in his sagacity and resource*.

† Many other Verbs compounded with Prepositions, and with the Adverbs bene, male, satis, whether Transitive or Intransitive, take a Dative of the Remoter Object: e.g. **desum**, *I am wanting to*; **praesum**, *I am set over, I command*: peditibus praefuit, *he commanded the infantry*; **praeficio**, *I put over, I place in command of*: equitibus filium praefecit, *he placed his son in command of the cavalry*; **oppono**, *I place against, obicio* (obiicio), *I throw against*: obiecit mihi ignaviam, *he cast up cowardice against me, he reproached me with cowardice*.

parco, *I am sparing to, I spare*: qui parcit flagello puerum perdit, *who spares the rod spoils the child*.

pareo, *I am attendant upon, I obey*: legibus cives pareant, *let the citizens obey the laws*.

placeo, *I am pleasing to, I please*; **displiceo**, *I displease*: hic placet sibi, *this man fancies himself**.

resisto, *I stand against, I resist*: venientibus occurramus, *let us resist their approach*.

servio, *I am a slave to, I serve*: regi libenter serviunt, *they willingly serve the king*.

studeo, *I am eager for, I apply myself to*: ille litteris studet, *that man is fond of books*†.

§ 21. A few Verbs are both Transitive and Intransitive: Intransitive as regards Persons, Transitive as regards Things. Such Verbs, in addition to the Dative of the Indirect Object, may also take an Accusative of the Direct Object. These are

gratulor, *I wish joy to, I congratulate*: Brutus Ciceroni gratulatus est, *Brutus congratulated Cicero*; but also, Brutus Ciceroni libertatem recuperatam gratulatus est, *Brutus congratulated Cicero on the recovery of liberty*.

ignosco, *I forgive*: ignosco inimicis, *I forgive my enemies*; but, ignosco delicta inimicis, *I forgive my enemies their trespasses*.

impero ‡, *I give orders to, I command*: imperat servis,

* But **delecto**, **iuvo**, *I delight*, are Transitive.

† To this list may be added **assentari**, **blandiri**, *to flatter*; **auxiliari**, *to help*; **gratificari**, *to oblige*; **irasci**, *to be angry with*; **obsequi**, *to obey*; **obtrectare**, *to disparage*; **officere**, *to obstruct*; **opitulari**, *to help*; **refragari**, *to oppose*; **suffragari**, *to support*; **succensere**, *to be angry with*, and a few more.

‡ But **iubeo**, *I order*, is Transitive.

he gives orders to his slaves; but, imperat filio nuptias, he orders his son to get married.

indulgeo, I am kind to, I indulge: indulge puellis, be kind to the girls; but, indulge veniam puellis, kindly grant pardon to the girls.

minor, I threaten: minatur hostibus, he threatens the enemy; but, minatur mortem hostibus, he threatens death to the enemy, he threatens the enemy with death.

respondeo, I answer: hoc mihi responderunt, this is the answer which they gave me.

suadeo, I advise, persuadeo, I persuade: suadent mihi, they advise me; but, suadent mihi mortem, they advise me to die; omnia nobis persuadet amor, love persuades us to do anything.

§ 22. The following Verbs have two different meanings; with the one they are Transitive and take the Accusative, with the other they are Intransitive and take the Dative.

cedo, I give way to, I yield, takes the Dative: cedant arma togae, let arms give place to the gown; but cedo, I give up, I yield, is Transitive: multa multis cessit, he made many concessions to many people.

consulo, I take counsel or care for, takes the Dative: saluti suae consuluit, he took counsel for his own safety; but consulo, I consult, is Transitive: patronum de rebus meis consului, I consulted my patron about my affairs.

credo, I believe, takes the Dative: amanti ne credideris, never believe a man in love; but credo, I entrust, is Transitive: pecuniam argentario credidit, he entrusted his money to a banker.

invideo, I envy, takes the Dative: invident homines superioribus, men envy their superiors; but invideo, I grudge, is Transitive: vicino asinum ne invideris, do not covet your neighbour's ass.

tempero *, *I set bounds to, I refrain from*, takes the Dative : *lacrimis temperare non queo, I cannot refrain from weeping*; but **tempero**, *I mix in due proportion, I control*, takes the Accusative : *animus amara lento temperet risu, let the mind assuage bitter things with genial laugh*; *Iuppiter mare et terras temperat, Jupiter rules both sea and land*.

EXERCISE IX.

(*Intransitive Verbs and the Indirect Object : easy.*)

1. Do not¹ believe a Greek, even² on his oath³. 2. He who forgives others their⁴ offences, is himself forgiven. 3. Hoards of money⁵ either serve or command their possessors. 4. We should resist⁶ those who give us bad advice. 5. We are wont to trust those who please us, and to oppose⁷ those who reprove our faults. 6. Juno used to hate the Trojans, and⁸ always favoured the Greeks. 7. I went to meet⁹ Cicero on his arrival¹⁰. 8. I envy you your assurance¹¹. 9. I hope that you will help me when¹² in difficulties. 10. Do not¹³ hurt my dog.

¹ In Prohibitions, use *ne* with the Perf. Subj. ² 'even': *vel*.

³ 'on his oath,' meaning 'a man who has taken an oath': *iuratus*.

⁴ Omit 'their.' ⁵ Say 'collected money.' ⁶ Say 'it must be resisted to' (Part. in *dus*). ⁷ Remember that *oppono* means 'I place (something) in the way.'

⁸ Instead of 'and' use the Fem. of *idem*: 'she, the same person.' ⁹ 'To meet': *obviā* *ire* with the Dat. ¹⁰ Say 'to him approaching.' ¹¹ *confidentia*.

¹² Omit 'when.' 'To be in difficulties': *laborare*. ¹³ See above n. 1.

* **moderor**, *I restrain*, is both Transitive and Intransitive, and takes the Accusative and the Dative indifferently.

EXERCISE X.*(Intransitive Verbs : easy.)*

1. Fortune ever favours the better man¹ ; she may take away a man's² life, but not his spirit. 2. If you yield to your opponent³ at first, you will often come off⁴ conqueror in the end. 3. He is over fond of books : a thing which⁵ in my opinion⁶ is injurious to his health. 4. The Saguntines placed their bodies instead of walls in the way of⁷ the advancing enemy. 5. He met me as I was leaving⁸ the senate-house⁹, and threatened me with death. 6. The miser is a slave to his own riches : he grudges himself every self-indulgence¹⁰.

¹ Use the Plur. ² Say 'take away the life to a man.' Use the Dat. ³ 'your opponent' : say '(him) opposing you.' ⁴ 'To come off' : *abire, evadere*. ⁵ 'a thing which' : say 'which thing.' ⁶ 'in my opinion' : *mea sententia, ut ego arbitror, &c.* ⁷ 'To place in the way of' : *opponere*. See § 20, n. †. ⁸ 'leaving' : note that 'to leave' in this sense means 'to depart from.' ⁹ 'senate-house' : *curia*. ¹⁰ 'every self-indulgence' : say 'even that which he indulges to himself.'

EXERCISE XI.*(Intransitive Verbs : easy.)*

1. He has advised me to go into exile¹. 2. All things do not please everybody². 3. Julia, the daughter of Augustus, married³ Tiberius as her third husband. 4. Tiberius married³ Julia as his second wife. 5. It is common to man² to pardon all his own faults. 6. It is⁴ only the brave who can resist the attacks of envy⁵. 7. He attacks the enemy's camp in three divisions⁶, and is resisted at every

point. 8. Children ought to obey their parents in all things ; but good parents will not lay upon them unreasonable⁷ commands⁸. 9. He who wishes to obey my precepts will not be the first to⁹ think of his own safety.

¹ 'to go into exile': say 'exile' (subs.). ² Use the Plur. ³ 'To marry': of a man, *ducere*, with Acc.; of a woman, *nubere*, with Dat. ⁴ 'It is,' 'it was,' etc., are not to be translated in Latin when used, as here, merely to emphasise a word. Express this by your order. ⁵ 'the attacks of envy': say 'envy' alone. ⁶ 'in three divisions': use *tripartito*, Adv. ⁷ 'unreasonable': *iniquus*. ⁸ Say 'command to them unreasonable things.' ⁹ See EX. VII. n. 7.

EXERCISE XII.

(*Intransitive Verbs: easy.*)

1. I will congratulate him on his victory. 2. Let us obey those who are set over¹ us. 3. He was coming to the assistance of² the distressed³ infantry. 4. He has been put in command⁴ of the whole of the cavalry. 5. I will advise him to go into exile⁵. 6. You yourself threatened each one of the captives with death. 7. A certain rich man forgave all his debtors their⁶ debts. 8. He entrusted you with all his money ; yet you will not believe him now. 9. He asked my advice about his marriage. 10. She married her present⁷ husband not for⁸ love, but for love⁹ of money.

¹ 'To be set over': *praeesse*. ² Use *subvenire*. ³ 'distressed': *laborans*. ⁴ See § 20, n. †. ⁵ Say 'advise exile to him.' ⁶ Omit 'their.' ⁷ Say 'whom she now has.' ⁸ Use the Abl. (of *cause* or *reason*). ⁹ *cupido*.

§ 23. (1) There are many Verbs in English which are used both Transitivity and Intransitively, but

whose equivalents in Latin can only be used Transi-
tively. Such are

augeo, *I increase*, i.e. *make bigger*;

iungo, *I join*, i.e. *bring together*;

linquo, *I leave*, i.e. *forsake*;

lugeo, *I grieve for*, *lament*;

misceo, *I mix*;

moveo, *I move*, i.e. *set in motion*;

obicio, *I object*, i.e. *throw in the way*;

oppono, *I oppose*, i.e. *put in the way*;

uro, *I burn*, i.e. *set on fire*;

verto, *I turn*, i.e. *make to turn*;

volvo, *I roll*, i.e. *make to roll*.

All these Verbs are Transitive, and therefore must have an Accusative after them.

(2) For some of the meanings given above there are special Verbs in Latin to denote the Intransitive sense, as

cresco, *I increase*, i.e. *grow bigger*;

abeo, *I leave*, i.e. *depart from*;

doleo, *I grieve*, i.e. *am distressed*;

obsto, *I oppose*, i.e. *resist*;
ardeo, *I burn*, i.e. *glow*.

(3) In other cases, the Intransitive sense can be expressed by using either the Passive (or, more properly, the Middle) Voice, or the Accusative of the Reflexive Pronoun with the Active Voice. Thus we can say

Omnia moventur, or *Movent se omnia*, *All things move*;

Volvitur in lecto, or *Volvit se in lecto*, *He rolls upon his bed*;

Iungitur collegae, or *Iungit se collegae*, *He joins his colleague**.

* In English, Transitive Verbs are constantly thus used Intransitively: 'to break,' 'to gather,' 'to collect,' 'to disperse,' 'to change,' 'to boil,' 'to surrender,' are a few out of many in-

EXERCISE XIII.

(On the Verbs given in § 23: easy.)

1. He left Rome in a hurry¹. 2. No animal moves more swiftly than² a bird, or more slowly than a snail. 3. I joined the consul's army at sunrise³. 4. In proportion as⁴ you increase your wealth, your cares will increase also. 5. On⁵ the Grampian hills my father fed his flock. 6. You will seldom see sheep mix with deer when⁶ feeding. 7. Many years have rolled since I first⁷ joined my fate to yours. 8. Nature placed the snowy Alps in Hannibal's way. 9. The milk is beginning to⁸ burn: throw some⁹ water on the fire.

¹ Say 'suddenly.' ² *quam*: note that *quam* has always the same case after it that it has before it. ³ 'at sunrise': *orientis sole*. ⁴ 'In proportion as': *prout*, with the Indic. ⁵ *in*. ⁶ Do not express 'when.' ⁷ 'first,' meaning 'for the first time,' is *primum*. *Primo* means 'at first.' ⁸ Use *iam*, 'by this time,' with the Indic. of the Verb. Note that *nunc* means 'at this time.' ⁹ Omit 'some.'

EXERCISE XIV.

(The same: easy.)

1. This pine-tree has grown six feet¹ in two years².

stances. Latin is much more accurate in such matters than English; the student therefore should never use a Latin Verb without assuring himself whether it is Transitive or Intransitive. Note further that in Latin many Intransitive Verbs become Transitive when compounded with Prepositions. Thus *pugno*, *I fight*, but *oppugno*, *I attack*; *sto*, *I stand*, but *circumsto*, *I stand round*, *I surround*. And many Intransitive Verbs are stretched in meaning so as to have an Object after them, as *pallere*, *to grow pale (at)*; *redolere*, *to smell (of)*; *silere*, *to be silent (about)*; *stupere*, *to be astonished (at)*.

2. The bird moved quickly from this side³ of the river to the other. 3. 'You burn with the love of books,' says he, 'but do not burn your candle at both ends.' 4. Wellington used to say: 'When a man⁴ begins to turn in his bed, it is time for him to turn out of it.' 5. He left his house in a hurry. 6. They will leave⁵ each of their children a large fortune. 7. He left his wife in tears⁶. 8. They have no hope⁷ left. 9. At last the rock slowly moved, and rolled rapidly down into the river.

¹ Acc. for *Extent of Space*. ² Abl. for *Time in which*. ³ Say 'bank.' ⁴ 'When a man': *siquis*. ⁵ 'To leave' here is 'to bequeath': *legare*. ⁶ Say 'weeping.' ⁷ Say 'nothing of hope.'

The Passive use of Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.

§ 24. In Latin, as in English, every sentence which contains a Transitive Verb in the Active Voice can be thrown into a Passive form by turning the Direct Object into a Subject, and the Subject into an Ablative. Thus *labor omnia vincit*, 'labour overcomes all things,' expresses exactly the same sense as *labore omnia vincuntur*, 'all things are overcome by labour.'

Note.—If the Subject of the Active Verb be a Person, or thing having life, then the Ablative of the Passive sentence must have the Proposition *a* or *ab* attached to it. Thus *pugione Caesar interfectus est*, 'Caesar was killed by a dagger'; but *a Bruto Caesar interfectus est*, 'Caesar was killed by Brutus.' This is called the Ablative of the Agent.

§ 25. Now Intransitive Verbs, as we have seen, have no Direct Object; they cannot therefore be used personally (i. e. with a Personal Subject) in the

Passive, because there is no Accusative in the Active which can be turned into the Subject of the Passive Verb. As we cannot use an Accusative after *noceo*, so we cannot say, 'I am injured by him': we must say *nocetur mihi ab eo*, 'injury is done to me by him.' In the same way we cannot say, 'I am envied,' 'I am obeyed'; we must say, *invidetur mihi*, 'it is envied to me'; *paretur mihi*, 'it is obeyed to me*.' Hence the important rule: **Intransitive Verbs can only be used Impersonally in the Passive.**

§ 26. The Dative with Intransitive Verbs, it will be noticed, is not affected by the change to the Passive Voice. Being a Dative of the Indirect Object, its relation to the Verb is the same whether the Active or the Passive Voice be used.

But when a Verb is Intransitive as regards Persons, but Transitive as regards Things, it may take a *Thing* as a Subject in the Passive Voice, though not a Person: thus *suadet mihi mortem* becomes, when turned Passively, *mors mihi ab eo suadetur*; *indulgeo veniam pueris* becomes in the Passive, *a me pueris venia indulgetur*. Here *mortem* and *veniam*, being Accusatives of the Direct Object after the Active Verb, become Subjects to the Verb in the Passive.

* Similarly, we cannot say 'the enemy must be injured'; or 'parents must be obeyed': we must say *hostibus nocendum est*, 'injury must be done to the enemy'; *parentibus parendum est*, 'it must be obeyed to parents.' In the Past tense we say *parentibus parendum fuit*, 'we ought to have obeyed our parents': in the Future *legibus optemperandum erit*, 'we shall have to obey the laws.'

EXERCISE XV.*(Passive of Transitives and Intransitives : easy.)*

1. He is praised by all good men. 2. He was believed by all the best¹ men. 3. Will you not gladly² obey your own father? 4. Certainly he must be obeyed³; but he has often laid on me⁴ intolerable⁵ commands. 5. Why do you cast this up against⁶ me? 6. It has been cast up against me only by my enemies. 7. You should pardon⁷ much to others, nothing to yourself. 8. The man who pardons his friend's faults will be himself forgiven. 9. Bungling⁸ workmen⁹ are injured by their own tools. 10. He has been rescued¹⁰ by one of his sons; let him be resisted by the other¹¹.

¹ *Optimus quisque*; see **Ex. VI.** n. 10. ² Use the Adj. *libens*.

³ Say 'it must be obeyed to him,' using the Part. in *-dus*, in the Neut. ⁴ Say 'has commanded to me intolerable things.' But

note that *iubeo* gov's. an Acc. ⁵ Say 'which I cannot bear,' or some such phrase. ⁶ 'To cast up against': *obicio*. ⁷ Use the Present Subj.

⁸ 'bungling': *inhabilis* or *ineptus*. Beware of using a Pres. Part. when the English Part. stands for an Adj.

⁹ 'A workman': *opera*, *-ae*. ¹⁰ 'To rescue': *subvenire*. ¹¹ 'the one . . . the other': *alter . . . alter*. See **Ex. VI.** n. 3.

EXERCISE XVI.*(The same : easy.)*

1. He was met on the road by the whole community¹. 2. An old wound can only² be healed³ by time and patience. 3. The man who has most regard for himself is generally loved by few. 4. He was envied by some, he was served faithfully by others,

but he was laughed at⁴ by the greater number⁵.
 5. The more⁶ a man has regard for himself, the less⁶ will he be loved by other people. 6. If his daughters have been persuaded⁷, he himself will be satisfied⁸. 7. If you yield⁹ to his entreaties now, no good thing¹⁰ will be grudged to you. 8. These men cannot be pardoned.

¹ Say 'by all the inhabitants.' ³ 'only by time': say 'not except by time,' *non nisi*. ³ *Mederi*, 'to heal,' is Passive in form. Therefore say 'You can only heal,' using the Pres. Subj. ⁴ 'To laugh at': *irridere*, with the Dative. ⁵ 'the greater number': *plerique*. ⁶ 'The more . . . the less': *quo magis, eo minus*. Lit. 'by what the more, by that the less.' ⁷ For the Tense to be used, see EX. VII, n. 14. ⁸ 'To satisfy': *satisfacio* (lit. 'I do enough'), with the Dat. ⁹ For the Tense, see EX. VI, n. 9. ¹⁰ 'no good thing': *nihil boni*.

EXERCISE XVII.

(*Passive of Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.*)

1. A large sum of money¹ has been entrusted to me by Caius. 2. You were answered shortly by my uncle. 3. The emperor is loved by his people, but² he is envied and thwarted³ by the magistrates. 4. The minds of the young must not be injured by too much indulgence. 5. When I ordered the assault⁴ to my soldiers, I was obeyed instantly. 6. He loved his troops much; but he was not loved by them in return⁵. 7. He has been often consulted by his father: but he himself never consults anything but⁶

¹ Say 'much of' or 'great money.' ² Not *sed*: use *autem* or *idem*. See EX. IX, n. 8. ³ 'To thwart': *resistere*. ⁴ *oppugnatio*. ⁵ 'in return': *in vicem*. Use *ipse*. ⁶ 'not anything but': *nil nisi* or *non nisi*.

his own interests. 8. You must be answered without delay.

EXERCISE XVIII.

(*The same.*)

1. Romulus divided the citizens into ¹ three tribes, which he called ² the Ramnes, Tities, and Luceres. 2. The whole people, when convoked ³ in their assemblies, were styled *Populus Romanus Quirites* or *Quiritium*. 3. Each tribe was subdivided into ¹ ten curiae, each one of which had a name ⁴ of its own. 4. The curiae were composed of ⁵ a certain number of families, whilst ⁶ each family was made up of individual members. 5. Those who belonged to ⁷ the same *gens* were held ⁸ to be the descendants of a common ancestor; hence they were called *gentiles*, and bore a common name. 6. Every Roman had ⁹ three names, of which the second marked the *gens* to which he belonged, the third his family, whilst the first distinguished him from his brothers.

¹ Use *in* with Acc., whenever *motion towards* is implied. ² 'To call,' 'to name,' 'to make,' 'to deem,' &c. are **Factitive Verbs**. Such Verbs in the Active take a second Acc. after them, agreeing with the Direct Object. In the Passive they are **Copulative Verbs**. See §§ 7 and 47. Cp. *Ciceronem populus creat consulem* with *a populo Cicero creatur consul*. ³ Omit 'when' before 'convoked': or else say 'when they were convoked.' ⁴ 'had a name': in such cases use *est mihi* for 'I have.' ⁵ 'To be composed of': *constare*, with the Prep. *ex*. ⁶ 'whilst': use *autem* (see **Ex. VII.** n. 3). Only use *dum* when there is a real reference to time. ⁷ 'belonged to': say 'were of,' using the Gen. ⁸ 'were held,' 'were called,' both **Factitive Verbs**. See above. ⁹ See n. 3.

EXERCISE XIX.

(Recapitulatory on Transitive and Intransitive Verbs :
Use of Pronouns (see Pref. Note to Ex. I.)

Note.—Obs. the exact meaning of the following Pronouns :

aliquis,* ‘some one’; *aliquot*, ‘some persons’;

quisquam, *quispiam*, ‘any one’: *quisquam* is generally used (like *ullus*) in negative or quasi-negative † sentences;

quidam, ‘a certain person’;

quisque (more emphatic *unusquisque*), ‘each individually,’ of a number.

quivis, *quilibet*, ‘any one you choose’;

quisquis, *quicumque*, ‘whosoever’ (both relative words);

ecquis? ‘is there any one who?’ indefinite interrogative;

quisnam, ‘who pray?’ ‘who indeed?’ emphatic interrogative;

qualis, ‘of what kind?’ *talis*, ‘of such a kind’; *talis qualis*, ‘of such a kind as’; *talis est qualem semper sensi*, ‘he is just the kind of man I always felt him to be’;

quantus, ‘how great?’ *tantus*, ‘so great’; *tantus quantus*, ‘as great as’: *non tantam habet pecuniam quantam pater eius*, ‘he has not as much money as his father’;

quot, ‘how many?’ *tot*, ‘so many’; *tot quot*, ‘as many as’: *quot homines tot sententiae*, ‘there are as many opinions as (there are) men’;

uter, ‘which of two?’ *uterque*, ‘each of two.’

1. He himself has said it. 2. He ever esteemed himself unfortunate. 3. All the wisest men are mistaken¹ at some time or other. 4. I have said it for this reason, that² I think so. 5. The victory will be his who³ is the first to engage. 6. Hares have more swiftness⁴ than courage. 7. Is not⁵ this stone as heavy as that one? 8. My father-in-law

* After *si*, *ne*, *num* and *an*, *quis* is used for *aliquis*: as *si quid habes*, *dīc*.

† i. e. Interrogative or Hypothetical.

had as much money⁶ as yours. 9. These dogs are just of the kind I expected. 10. The better the day, the better⁷ the deed. 11. A certain old man married a young wife: he also soon repented of it⁸. 12. Whoso breaks must pay. 13. Whoso runs fast will not run long. 14. He is just such a man as his brother. 15. Any one can do that. 16. Have you seen anyone? 17. Any thing⁹ for a quiet life. 18. Do you really think that miracles are impossible¹⁰?

¹ 'To be mistaken': *errare*. ² 'for this reason that': *ideo quod*. ³ Be careful as to the Tense. ⁴ Use the Gen. ⁵ *Nonne* expects the answer 'yes'; *num*, the answer 'no'; *an* and *ne* ask doubtfully. ⁶ Use the Gen. after the Neut. Pron. ⁷ 'The better . . . the better.' The Lat. phrase is *quo . . . eo*, each with an Adj. or Adv. in the Compar. Thus 'the sooner, the better,' *quo citius, eo melius*: lit. 'by what the quicker, by that the better.' ⁸ Omit 'of it,' and translate 'also' by *idem*. ⁹ 'Anything,' in this emphatic sense, may be either *quidvis* or *omnia*. ¹⁰ 'are impossible': say 'cannot be done.'

EXERCISE XX.

(*The same: easy.*)

1. Some one has injured¹ the wall of my house. 2. The wall of my house has been injured by a certain friend of mine². 3. Whosoever was the first to resist Antony has conferred a great benefit³ on the state. 4. Which of the two was it who came to my rescue⁴? 5. Did any one come to yours? 6. The more slowly⁵ an animal moves, the more surely⁵ does it reach its destination. 7. I joined⁶ Caesar because he was opposed by all the most worthless⁷ citizens. 8. He was just leaving⁸ Rome when he was met⁹ by the proconsul's messenger. 9. The

Proconsul himself is just such a man as I desire to serve.

¹ Note that *noceo* is Intrans., but that *laedo*, with same meaning, is Trans. ³ 'of mine.' Do not translate 'of.' ³ 'to confer a benefit upon': *prodesse*, with the Dat.; or *bene mereri de* with the Abl. ⁴ 'To come to the rescue of': say 'to help.' Note that *invare* is Trans., but *subvenire* is Intrans. ⁵ See above, EX. XIX, n. 7. ⁶ 'To join,' here, is an Intrans. Verb. ⁷ 'worthless': *perditus, nequam*. ⁸ Do not use *linguo*. ⁹ 'to meet': *occurrere* or *obviam ire*, both with the Dat.

EXERCISE XXI.

(The same.)

1. Whomsoever he met at my house he would¹ consult about his own affairs. 2. Here² is a golden rule³ which every man⁴ ought to obey: 'Let each man mind⁵ his own.' 3. I have suffered as many misfortunes as there are stars shining in the sky. 4. I have neither favoured any of⁶ these men nor have been favoured by any of them. 5. I did not care for my books when⁷ a boy; when I have grown⁸ old, I shall doubtless be as fond of them as⁹ you are now. 6. If ever¹⁰ he saw a person in want, he would give him something without being¹¹ asked. 7. My friends are dear to me; so are his own to every man¹².

¹ 'would' here is not Conditional: it merely denotes habit. ² Say 'this is.' ³ 'rule': *lex, praeceptum, sententia*. ⁴ Use the Plur. ⁵ 'To mind' here is 'to look after': *curare*. ⁶ 'of': translate by *ex*, not by the Gen. ⁷ Omit 'when.' ⁸ Be careful about the Tense: see EX. VII, n. 14. ⁹ 'As fond as': say *tantum . . . quantum*; or *non minus . . . quam*. ¹⁰ 'ever' = 'at any time': *aliquando*. After *si*, just as *quis* is used for *aliquis*, so is *quando* used for *aliquando*. ¹¹ 'without being asked': *ultra*. ¹² Use *quisque*.

Verbs used Prolately.

§ 27. Many Verbs in Latin—most of them Verbs in frequent use—take an Infinitive Mood to ‘carry on’ (*proferre*) and supplement their meaning. This use of the Infinitive may be called **Prolate** or (perhaps better) **Supplementary**: and such Verbs **Prolative**.* The chief Verbs of this class express

- (1) **Possibility** ; as *possum, queo, nequeo* :

Non possum ferre, Quirites, Graecam urbem,
I cannot endure, Romans, a Greek city;

- (2) **Beginning or Ceasing** ; as *coepe, incipio, desino, desisto* :

Illud iam mirari desino,
I now cease to wonder at that;

- (3) **Desire or Endeavour** ; as *cupio, volo, malo, nolo, opto, conor, statuo* :

Malebat esse quam videri bonus,
He preferred to be, rather than to seem, good.

- (4) **Add** *debeo, soleo, assuesco, videor, scio, disco, festino, pergo, metuo, vereor, odi, cuncto, moror*, and a few more :

* The term **Supplementary** would be a better term than **Prolate** to denote this use of the Infinitive. The Infinitive has the same subject as, and practically coalesces with, the Verb which governs it, so as to present a single idea to the mind. In some cases, e.g. after *odi, cupio, opto, scio, &c.*, the Infinitive seems to take the place of an Object. In others, e.g. after *possum, queo, coepe, conor, &c.*, it may be regarded as Adverbial. In both cases alike it defines the sphere of the action of the Verb, and thus discharges a function analogous to that of the Accusative Case. But see below on the Acc. (§ 44) and nn. to § 36.

Oderunt peccare boni virtutis amore,
The good hate to sin from a love of virtue.

EXERCISE XXII.

(*Verbs used Prolately: easy.*)

1. I wish to see the queen. 2. I cannot bear a city composed of Romans¹. 3. You ought to set bounds to² your anger. 4. You ought to have³ set bounds to your anger. 5. Men are wont to hate those whom they have injured. 6. I endeavoured to be of service to⁴ the rest of his relatives. 7. It seems that⁵ the old man is mad. 8. The evil hate to sin from fear of punishment. 9. I could not have⁶ endured the things which you wished to say. 10. You ought not to have grieved⁷ so deeply for so bad a man. 11. Soon afterwards⁸ he began to speak: in vain I endeavoured to prevent him.

¹ Say 'a Roman city.' ² 'To set bounds to': *temperare*, with the Dat. ³ Note that the English phrase 'ought to have' means

'you *were* bound to,' 'it *was* your duty to,' do something, in past time. It must be so translated in Latin. ⁴ 'To be of service':

prodesse. ⁵ Say 'the old man seems.' So for 'it is said that

Romulus,' &c., say 'Romulus is said,' &c. Or the phrase may be used, 'They say that Romulus,' &c. See § 36, Sub-section (5), *Note*. ⁶ See above, n. 3. ⁷ 'To grieve for': *lugere*.

Remember that *dolere* is Intrans. ⁸ 'Soon afterwards':

paullo post; lit. 'afterwards by a little.'

Impersonal Verbs.

§ 28. **Impersonal Verbs** are Verbs which cannot have a Nominative for Subject. They are only used in the Third person Singular, and in the Infinitive,

of the Active Voice. They vary in their construction as follows :—

(1) *Miseret*, 'it pities'; *paenitet*, 'it repents'; *piget*, 'it annoys'; *pudet*, 'it shames'; *taedet*, 'it wearies,' take an Accusative of the Person, and a Genitive of that which causes the feeling :

<i>Piget me vitae,</i>	<i>I am sick of life;</i>
<i>Miseret te mei,</i>	<i>You pity me;</i>
<i>Paenitet eum scelerum,</i>	<i>He repents of his crimes*.</i>

(2) *Decet*, 'it becomes'; *dedecet* †, 'it mis-becomes'; *oportet*, 'it behoves,' take an Accusative of the Person with an Infinitive (*oportet* sometimes a Subjunctive):

Decet fortem victis parcere,
It becomes a brave man to spare the conquered;
Non omnes scire omnia oportet,
It is not incumbent on all persons to know everything;
Matri omnia oportet ignoscas,
You should forgive everything to a mother.

(3) *Libet*, 'it pleases'; *licet*, 'it is allowed'; *liquet*, 'it is clear'; *placet*, 'it pleases,' take a Dative: so also do the impersonal phrases *accidit*, 'it happens'; *contingit*, 'it befalls'; *convenit*, 'it suits'; *evenit*, 'it results'; *expedit*, 'it is expedient.' *Fallit*, *fugit*, 'it escapes,' *iuvat*, 'it delights,' take an Accusative.

(4) *Interest*, 'it is of importance to'; *refert*, 'it

* Sometimes an Infinitive takes the place of the Genitive: *pudet me hoc dixisse*, 'I am ashamed at having said this.' But not with *miseret*.

† *Decet* and *dedecet* may also be used personally, with a Nominative as a Subject: *non me citharae decent*.

concerns,' take a Genitive of the thing or Person concerned, but an Ablative Feminine of the Possessive Pronouns, *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā* :

Meā unius interest ut mihi credas,

It is for my interest alone that you should believe me ;

Non hostium sed nostrā refert quid dicas,

What you say matters not to the enemy, but to us.

(5) *Attinet*, 'it concerns'; *pertinet*, 'it pertains,' take an Accusative with *ad* :

Quod ad Dymnum pertinet, nihil scio,

As regards Dymnus, I know nothing ;

Quid istuc ad me attinet ?

What does that concern me ?

(6) States of weather, &c., are expressed by the Impersonals *fulgurat*, 'it lightens'; *tonat*, 'it thunders'; *ningit*, 'it snows'; *pluit*, 'it rains'; *advesperascit*, 'it grows dark,' &c.

EXERCISE XXIII.

(*Impersonal Verbs : easy.*)

1. I pity you for being weary of life. 2. If you repent of your ingratitude¹, I shall restore you to my favour². 3. If ever he pitied any one, he would³ give him money. 4. No good will befall the man who is ashamed of his own father. 5. Young people should be seen, not heard. 6. Anger is very unbecoming to old age⁴. 7. What is lawful to you is not always expedient; do⁵ rather that which is becoming to you than that which pleases you. 8. It

is the State's interest to bring the suit to an end ⁶: it is mine to make good my case. 9. These things do not concern me at all.

¹ Say 'of an ungrateful mind.' ² Say 'Restore you into favour with me.' ³ Imperf. ⁴ Say 'to old men.' ⁵ Use Pres. Subj. ⁶ Say 'put an end to,' or 'make an end of.'

Deponent Verbs.

§ 29. Deponent Verbs are Verbs which combine a Passive Form with an Active meaning; they may be either Transitive or Intransitive.

Thus *amplector*, 'I embrace'; *mereor*, 'I deserve'; *metior*, 'I measure'; *pator*, 'I suffer'; *sequor*, 'I follow'; *tueor*, 'I protect'; *ulciscor*, 'I avenge,' &c., are Transitive and take the Accusative;

but *gradior*, 'I step'; *labor*, 'I glide'; *mori*, 'I die'; *nascor*, 'I am born'; *proficiscor*, 'I set out,' &c., are Intransitive. *Assentior*, 'I agree with'; *assentor*, 'I flatter'; *blandior*, 'I flatter,' and others (see above § 22) are Intransitive, and take a Dative.

§ 30. The following Deponent Verbs take an Ablative:

dignor, 'I deem worthy'; *fungor*, 'I discharge'; *fruor*, 'I enjoy'; *potior*, 'I possess myself of'; *utor*, 'I use'; *vescor*, 'I feed upon.' These Verbs have properly a Reflexive or Middle Sense, and the Ablative is one either of Respect or Instrument (see below §§ 80 and 82). Thus

Fungor officio,

I discharge myself by (or of) a service, I do my duty;

Fruor otio, *I enjoy myself by means of ease ;*
 Dignor me laude,
I deem myself worthy in the matter of praise.

EXERCISE XXIV.

(*Deponent Verbs : easy.*)

1. Using¹ very great² expedition, I reached Britain on the tenth day³. 2. He was on the point of⁴ gaining possession of the throne when he died. 3. Being unable⁵ to agree with him, I let slip⁶ the opportunity which I had waited for so long. 4. Having quitted office⁷, I determined to enjoy the wealth I had acquired⁸. 5. One⁹ should use one's age while one may : life flees on apace. 6. It is sometimes expedient to forget what one⁹ knows. 7. After trying better things, I deliberately follow what is worse. 8. Do not be angry¹⁰ with me without a proper reason.

¹ The sense requires 'having used.' See § 32, n. * ² Use the Superl. ³ Abl. (*point of Time*). ⁴ Use the Fut. Part.

⁵ Say 'since I was unable.' See Pref. N. (2) to EX. XXV.

⁶ 'To let slip': *omittere*. ⁷ *munus* or *honor*. ⁸ 'To acquire': *parare*. ⁹ 'One': use the 2nd Pers. Pres. Subj.

¹⁰ In Prohibitions use the Perf. Subj.

THE PARTICIPLES*.

§ 31. The following Table exhibits at a glance

* The Participle is properly a Verbal Adjective. It does not itself form a predication, but it implies one, and, like the Infinitive, governs the same case as the Finite Verb. See foot-note, p. 42.

the meanings, and the deficiencies, of the Latin Participle :—

A. Active Voice.

<i>Participle.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
Present	'Loving'	<i>Amans</i>
Past	'Having loved'	<i>Wanting</i>
Future	'About to love'	<i>Amaturus.</i>

B. Passive Voice.

Present	'Being loved'	<i>Wanting</i>
Past	'Having been loved'	<i>Amatus</i>
Future	'About to be loved'	<i>Wanting.</i>

§ 32. The Present Participle, *amans*, is Active, and means 'while in the act of loving.' This Participle is very seldom used in the place of an Adjective, as when we say 'a loving child,' 'a grumbling invalid,' 'a fighting man.' *Vir pugnans* would mean 'a man in the act of fighting*.'

§ 33. The Perfect or Past Participle, *amatus*, is Passive, and means 'having been loved.' The Latin Verb has no Past Participle Active: the meaning 'having loved' must be expressed by some periphrasis, such as 'when he had loved,' *cum amasset*. Hence Deponent Verbs alone have a Past Participle with an Active meaning: for as the essence of a

* Note that in English the Present Participle is constantly used where the sense requires the Past Participle. Thus we say 'drawing his sword, he closed with his antagonist.' What is meant is that he first drew his sword, and then rushed in. In Latin we must say *stricto gladio*, or *cum gladium strinxisset*. If we were to say *stringens gladium*, we should make the man a fool, and condemn him to certain death.

Deponent Verb is to combine a Passive Form with an Active meaning, the Past Participles *functus, usus, veritus, &c.*, mean 'having discharged,' 'having used,' 'having feared,' &c.

§ 34. The Future Participle, *amaturus*, 'about to love,' is always Active in meaning: the meaning 'being about to be loved' cannot be expressed in Latin except by a periphrasis.

§ 35. There is no Present Participle Passive in Latin. The meaning 'being loved,' must be expressed by saying 'since he is loved,' or 'when he is loved,' &c.

Thus the student must carefully note that in Latin

(1) There is no Past Participle Active.

(2) There is no Present Participle Passive.

(3) There is no Future Participle Passive.

EXERCISE XXV.

(*The Participles : easy.*)

Note.—Observe carefully the following points:

(1) In English the Pres. Part. is often used for the Past: 'arriving late, I went to bed at once.' Not so in Latin: see § 32, n. *.

(2) In Eng. both the Pres. and Past Parts. are used to express a reason: 'believing him to be dead, I passed on'; 'having known him before, I avoided him.' Not so in Lat.: you must say 'since I believed,' * &c.

* An exception is afforded by a few Deponent Parts., such as *veritus, ratus, ausus, &c.*, which are used much like our 'fearing,' 'thinking,' &c. The convenience of these Deponent Parts. caused them to be much used: Cicero is especially fond of them.

(3) In Lat. the Past Part. agreeing with a Noun is often used where we use a Noun followed by another in the Gen. : *fusus exercitus spem omnem abstulit*, 'the defeat of the army,' &c.; *post urbem conditam*, 'after the foundation of the city.'

(4) The Past Part. with a Verb is often used where we would use two Verbs joined by 'and': *mortuus sepultus est*, 'he died and was buried'; *hostem aggressus deturbavit*, 'he attacked and dislodged the enemy'; *Turnum caesum spoliavit*, 'he slew and despoiled Turnus.'

(5) Many Eng. words ending in *-ing* are not Parts. at all, but Nouns: 'painting is delightful,' i. e. *the process of painting* (= Lat. Infin. *pingere*); 'this painting is beautiful,' i. e. *this picture* (= Lat. *tabula*). See Appendix, p. 242.

1. Having loved his own, he loved them unto the end. 2. He lay on the ground dying. 3. Gladiators used to salute the emperor when¹ about to die. 4. I was just about to set out from Rome when Caesar returned. 5. A crying² child is a nuisance³ to everybody. 6. Having possessed himself of the throne⁴, he proceeded⁵ to lay down laws⁶ for his people. 7. Seeing you about to answer him, I preferred to say nothing myself. 8. Being loved by all men, he lives happily. 9. Being warned by a dream, they resolved to return home at once. 10. With these words⁷, he left the senate-house. 11. By using such language, you have made all your friends angry with you. 12. Have you received any threatening letters?

¹ Omit 'when.' ² Say 'a child who cries.' A few Pres. Parts. are however regularly used as Adjectives, such as *amans*, *prudens*, *nocens*, *impotens*, &c., and many Past Parts. as *doctus*, *paratus*, &c. ³ Say 'is disagreeable': *molestus*. ⁴ Say 'the kingdom.' ⁵ Use the Imperf. ⁶ 'To lay down laws': *iura dare*. ⁷ Use Past Part. of *loquor*.

EXERCISE XXVI.*(Use of Participles.)*

1. Being aware of your wishes¹, I will not leave the house. 2. Being about to die, he gave a complete pardon² to his relatives. 3. Being about to be put to death³, he is indifferent to⁴ the past⁵. 4. Beloved by my own family, I care not for⁶ the opinion of others. 5. Having performed their duty manfully⁷, they now enjoy a dignified leisure⁸. 6. Being divided into two hostile factions, the Gauls are easily governed. 7. First carrying⁹ the fortifications, they then poured¹⁰ like a destroying flood into the city. 8. Seeing a dying man, I stood still for¹¹ a moment. 9. Attacking the enemy, Caesar routed them easily. 10. Seeing¹² is believing. 11. Fighting is illegal. 12. He died while fighting¹³ for his country.

¹ Say 'what you wish.' ² 'a complete pardon': say 'forgave all things.' ³ The Latin phrase is 'since he was in that that (*in eo ut*) he should die' (Subj.). ⁴ *securus de*. ⁵ Say 'past things.' ⁶ *de*. ⁷ 'manfully': *pro virili parte*. ⁸ Say 'ease with dignity.' ⁹ 'To carry': *vi capere*. ¹⁰ Remember that *fundo*, *effundo*, &c. are Trans. ¹¹ 'for': duration of time. ¹² Is 'seeing' here a Part.? ¹³ Use a Finite Verb or Pres. Part.

EXERCISE XXVII.*(Use of Participles.)*

1. Believing Caius to be a good man, I trusted him. 2. Fearing death above all things, he fled. 3. Advancing slowly for ten miles, he was about to pitch his camp. 4. Suddenly the Parthians attacked him and put him to

flight. 5. Having dared so many great things¹ already, you will not refuse me this one thing. 6. He arrived before the capture of the city. 7. He lived for twenty-five years after the foundation of the city. 8. The murder of Caesar appeared to many to be a splendid achievement. 9. T. Manlius slew a Gaul and stripped him of his necklace. 10. After his defeat by Caesar, Pompey retreated to Egypt. 11. After his defeat of Pompey, Caesar pursued him without delay.

¹ The Lat. idiom is 'so many *and* so great things.'

THE INFINITIVE*.

§ 36. The Infinitive Mood—so called because it is not limited by definite conditions of Time or Person—is used in five main ways:

(1) In place of a Finite Verb, to express action rapidly and vividly. This is called the **Historical Infinitive**; the Subject stands in the Nominative Case:

Instare Rubrius, *Rubrius was urgent*;

At Romani festinare, parare, alius alium hortari, hostibus obviam ire,

But the Romans, preparing in all haste, and each exhorting the other, went forth to meet the enemy.

* Originally, in Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin, the Infinitive was the Dative of an Abstract Verbal Noun, expressing the end to which the action of the governing Verb was directed. Properly speaking, the Infinitive is not a Verb, as it does not in itself contain a Predication (except in the Historical Infinitive); but it is Verbal, inasmuch as it governs the same case as the Verb.

(2) In place of a Substantive*, either in the Nominative or the Accusative case, i.e. as (a) Subject, or (b) Object, to a Verb :

(a) As Subject to a Verb :

Humanum est errare,

To err (or error) is human ;

Hoc ipsum nihil agere me delectat,

This very thing, to do nothing (or doing nothing), delights me.

(b) As Object to a Verb :

Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum,

You will give me back my sweet voice, and my becoming smile.

(3) In Exclamations :

Tene haec ferre posse !

That you should be able to endure this !

Tantum laborem capere ob talem filium !

To think of taking so much trouble for such a son !

(4) Prolately†, after certain Verbs (see above § 27), and sometimes (chiefly in poetry) after Adjectives and Substantives :

* This Infinitive is frequently translated in English by a Verbal Noun with the termination *-ing*: *videre est credere*, 'seeing is believing'; *inveniet nil sibi legatum praeter plorare*, 'he will find nothing but weeping bequeathed to him.'

† This use corresponds closely to the original meaning of the Infin. (see note p. 42) as the Dat. of a Verbal Noun. It gives the aim or tendency of the action of the governing word. Thus the Homeric βῆ δ' ἵεναι, 'he went (for) to go'; ἐθέλω δόμεναι = *volo dare*, 'I am willing for giving'; *cupio fieri*, 'I am anxious for becoming'; *audax perpeti*, 'bold for enduring.'

Cupio consul fieri,
I desire to be elected consul;
 Audax omnia perpeti,
Bold enough to endure everything;
 Si tanta cupido est—Bis Stygios innare lacus,
If thou hast so great a desire twice to ferry over the
Stygian Lake.

(5) **In the Construction of the Accusative and the Infinitive.** This Construction is used mainly with Verbs of Thinking and Saying (*Verba Sentienti et Declarandi*); it will be explained at length in Part II :

Hunc ego hominem liberum esse aio,
I declare that this man is free;
 Istum nihil omnino daturum esse putavi,
I thought that that fellow would give nothing at all.

Note.—In the Passive Voice, Verbs of Saying and Thinking are used Personally and Prolately, rather than Impersonally with the Accusative and Infinitive : thus we should say *videtur insons esse*, ‘he seems to be innocent,’ rather than *videtur eum insonsem esse*, ‘it seems that he is innocent’; *illi socius esse diceris*, ‘you are said to be his accomplice,’ rather than *dicitur te illi socium esse*, ‘it is said that you are his accomplice.’

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(*The Infinitive : easy.*)

1. There was a general¹ hurrying, scurrying², and scampering away. 2. Separated from their friends, some were retreating, some pursuing : there was no keeping of standards or of ranks : nothing was done by command : chance ruled all. 3. To live happily belongs³ only to a few. 4. Living virtuously is the

same thing as ⁴ living happily. 5. I know that living happily belongs only to a few. 6. Grant to me to be undetected ⁵, grant to me to appear just and good. 7. To think that I should have lived for so many years, and never yet experienced happiness! 8. I would ⁶ rather buy than beg. 9. They have resolved to join the company of philosophers. 10. I say that all men ought to be free. 11. I thought that all men ought to be free.

¹ Use *omnis*. ² Use *trepidare*. ³ *contingit*. For 'only' say *non nisi*. ⁴ 'the same thing as': *idem atque*. Note that *idem*, like *par*, *similis*, *contrarius*, *iuxta*, &c., takes *ac* or *atque* where we use 'as.' ⁵ '*fallere*': lit. 'to escape notice.' ⁶ Note 'I would rather' means 'I prefer to.'

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

§ 37. The Gerund and Supines represent the oblique cases of the Infinitive when used as a Substantive; the Gerundive is a Verbal Adjective with a Passive Sense. Hence the Gerund of a Transitive Verb governs the Substantive which is combined with it; the Gerundive, being an Adjective, agrees with it in Number, Gender, and Case. Thus in translating 'the art of writing poetry,' we may say indifferently *ars versus scribendi*, 'the art of writing verses,' or *ars versuum scribendorum*, 'the art of verses to be written.'

§ 38. The Gerund supplies a Genitive, a Dative, an Ablative, and after Prepositions (especially *ad* and *in*) an Accusative, to the Infinitive Active; it is mainly used in the case of Intransitive Verbs, or of

Transitive Verbs used absolutely (i. e. without an Object):

Ars amandi ab Ovidio scripta est,
The Art of Loving was written by Ovid;

Hi scribendo affuerunt,
These were present at the writing;

Parcendo hostibus vicimus,
We conquered by sparing the enemy;

Exercitus ad pugnandum paratus fuit,
The army was ready for fighting.

§ 39. In the Nominative Case, the Gerund of Intransitive Verbs, or of Transitive Verbs used absolutely, is used Impersonally, and with the sense of *duty* or *necessity**. In this use the Gerund may take after it any case (except the Accusative) that is proper to the Verb; the Agent is put in the Dative:

Nunc est bibendum,
We must now drink (lit. It must now be drunk);

Obtemperandum tibi legibus est,
You must obey the laws;

Omnibus erit utendum viribus,
We shall have to use all our strength.

* It is not easy to decide whether we should consider this to be the Nominative of the Gerund or of the Gerundive. The usage of old Latin (such as *paenas in morte timendumst*, Lucr.) seems to decide in favour of the former. Otherwise it would be simpler to treat the Gerund as representing only the oblique cases of the Verbal Substantive, and to confine the sense of duty or necessity to the Gerundive (see § 41). This sense of necessity is probably to be explained by regarding the Gerundive as having been originally a Future Passive Participle.

§ 40. The Gerundive is used only with Transitive*, including Deponent, Verbs :

Agro colendo praefuit,
He superintended the tillage of the field;
 Haec in patria ulciscenda perpessus est,
These things he endured in avenging his country.

§ 41. The Gerundive is used also as a Predicative or Attributive Adjective to denote *duty* or *necessity*, with a Dative of the Agent expressed or understood :

Parentes nobis amandi sunt,
We ought to love our parents ;
 Sanitas et salubritas res admodum expetendae sunt,
Sanity and health are things much to be desired.

EXERCISE XXIX.

(*Gerund and Gerundive : easy.*)

1. The desire of living happily is implanted¹ in all men.
2. He was desirous of² seeing the triumph.
3. It is³ by self-restraint⁴ that men become happy.
4. The love of ruling impelled⁵ Caesar to overthrow the state.
5. The love of ruling men was inborn in Caesar.
6. He has sent horsemen to lay waste the fields⁶.
7. Husbandmen become rich by cultivating

* Hence the rule : if the Verb be Transitive, use the Gerundive ; if it be Intransitive, use the Gerund impersonally. Thus the Verb *providere* means (1) Transitive, 'to provide' ; (2) Intransitive, 'to provide for.' If we use meaning (1), we may say, *haec tibi providenda sunt*, 'these things must be provided for you.' If meaning (2), we will say, *saluti tuae providendum est*, 'it must be provided (i. e. measures must be taken) for your safety.'

the fields. 8. These fields must be laid waste by horsemen. 9. That book ought to have been ⁷ read by you. 10. All men must yield to death. 11. The king ought to have been obeyed. 12. Beauty is a thing to be admired ; but virtue should be sought by all.

¹ *insita* or *innata*. ² *cupidus*, with the Gen. ³ 'It is,' 'it was,' &c., placed at the beginning of a sentence, merely mark emphasis: they are not expressed in Lat. ⁴ Say 'by governing themselves.' ⁵ *impello*, *incito*. ⁶ Express this in different ways, using (1) the Gerundive (2) the Gerund after *causā*, (3) the Supine in *-um*, (4) *ut* with the Subj. ⁷ Say 'was bound to be.' Use *debeo*, 'I owe.'

THE SUPINES.

§ 42. The Supines in *-um* and *-u* are cases of Verbal Nouns. The **Supine in -um** is an Accusative of *Motion Towards* (see below §§ 49 and 50), used sometimes to denote Purpose:

Spectatum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae,
*They come to see (lit. to the seeing), they come that they
 may themselves be seen;*

It perditum universam gentem,
*He is going to destroy (lit. to the destruction of) the
 entire nation.*

Combined with *iri*, the Passive Infinitive of the Verb *eo*, used Impersonally, the Supine in *-um* forms the **Future Infinitive Passive**:

Credo totam gentem perditum iri,
*I believe that it is being gone to the destruction of the
 entire nation, i.e. that it will be destroyed.*

§ 43. The **Supine in -u** is used as an Ablative of Respect* (see below § 80) with some Adjectives, especially such as express *ease* or *difficulty*, *credibility*, *strangeness*, &c., and with the Substantives *fas*, *nefas*, *scelus*, and *opus*:

Hoc dictu quam re facilius est,
Sooner said than done (lit. *easier in the saying*);

Quid est tam iucundum cognitu atque auditu?
What is so pleasant to know and to hear?

EXERCISE XXX.

(*The Supines: easy.*)

1. Horsemen have been despatched to destroy the bridge. 2. The inhabitants came in crowds¹ to congratulate Caesar. 3. All the best people² will come to see the games. 4. These things are as hard to tell of as they are shameful to do. 5. I think that those lions will be killed. 6. I hope that his mother will not be frightened. 7. The oracles say that the Romans will conquer many nations, but that they themselves will be conquered by none. 8. It is not easy to say whether³ they really believed this or no. 9. It is an impiety to hear of, not only to see. 10. You must see it to believe it.

¹ *frequentes*. *Frequens* is used both of the *place thronged*, and of the *persons thronging* it. ² See Ex. VI, n. 10. ³ 'whether . . . or': *utrum . . . an*. Use the Subj. (*Indirect Question*).

* Possibly it may originally have been a Dative: cf. Plaut. Bacch. 62, *istaec lepida sunt memoratui*. This would be strictly in accordance with the fact that the Infinitive was originally a Dative, used to express purpose and direction. See footnotes, pp. 42, 43.

Syntax of the Cases.



THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 44. The main function of the Accusative is to define and limit the sphere or range of the action of the Verb. When this is done by an Object wholly distinct from the Verb, the Acc. is an **Acc. of the External Object**; but when the Acc. repeats, in any way, the meaning of the Verb, or qualifies and describes the nature of the action itself, it is an **Acc. of the Internal Object**.

With this proviso, the uses of the Acc. may be thus classified :

External Object.

- A. Accusative of the Direct Object.
- B. Accusative of Motion Towards.

Internal Object.

- C. Cognate Accusative.
- D. Accusative of the Part Affected—(sometimes called the **Acc. of Respect**).
- E. Accusative of Extent, whether of Time or Space.

Besides the above :

- F. Accusative after Prepositions.*
- G. Accusative before the Infinitive.

* This, of course, is not a distinct Acc., as each Prep. takes a Case by virtue of its own meaning. But as a matter of practical convenience, it is necessary to group the Preps. under the Cases which they govern.

A. Accusative of the Direct Object.

§ 45. The ordinary Construction of the Direct Object after Transitive Verbs has been explained above, § 17 :

Arma virumque cano,
I sing the arms and the man.

§ 46. Verbs of *teaching* and *concealing*, of *demanding* and *questioning*, often take a **Double Acc.**, one of the Person, the other of the Thing * :

Propertium literas mater docuit,†
Propertius' mother taught him his letters ;

Non te celavi sermonem T. Ampii,
I did not conceal from you the speech of Titus Ampius ;

Quinque talenta poscit ‡ te mulier,
The woman asks you for five talents ;

Hoc quod te interrogo responde,
Answer this question which I put to you.

Note 1.—In the Pass. these Verbs retain the Acc. of the Thing: *motus doceri gaudet* *Ionicos*, ‘she loves to be taught Ionic movements’; *hoc celor*, ‘I am kept in the dark about this’; *scito me non esse rogatum sententiam*, ‘know that I was not asked for my opinion.’

* The Thing is frequently represented by a Pron. : *hoc te rogo*, ‘I ask this of you.’

† But *doceo* in the sense ‘I inform’ takes *de* with the Abl. : *de Caesaris morte multitudinem docui*, ‘I informed the crowd of Caesar’s death.’

‡ Verbs of *asking* also take the Abl. of the Person with *ab*. *Peto* is always so used; *precor* and *postulo* usually. Thus *pacem a Caesare petit*; *orationes a me duas postulas*. The Verbs *quaero*, *seiscitor*, &c. are used with *ab* or *ex*: *quaesivi ex Antonio quid putaret*.

Note 2.—Trans. Verbs compounded with Preps. may take two Accs., one Direct, one (so to speak) governed by the Prep.: *equites flumen traiecit*, ‘he sent the cavalry across the water’; or Passively, *equites flumen traiecti sunt*.

§ 47. **Factitive Verbs**, i.e. Verbs of *making, calling, deeming, &c.* (see § 7), take also a **Double Acc.**, one of the Direct Object, one denoting what is predicated of that Object*; hence the latter is sometimes called a **Predicative Acc.**:

Me eius rei certiores fecit,
He informed me of that thing;
 Fabium consul dictatorem dixit,
The Consul named Fabius dictator.

§ 48. Under the same head must be ranked the **Acc. of Exclamation**, which is the Object of some Verb understood:

O me miserum, *O unhappy me!*
 O impudentiam hominis,
O the impudence of the fellow!

B. Accusative of Motion Towards.

§ 49. **Motion to a place** is invariably expressed by the **Acc.**, whether with a Prep. or without one. With the names of towns and small islands, and with the words *rus, domum, and foras*, no Prep.

* It is obvious that this Constr. is the correlative to that noticed in § 7, where the Pass. of the Factitive Verb takes as Subject that word which is the Direct Object of the Act. Verb: compare *Caesarem populus consulem fecit*, with *Caesar a populo consul factus est*.

is used ; but with the names of countries, &c., *ad* or *in* must be prefixed :

Athenas profectus est, *He has set out for Athens ;*

Ad Hispaniam properat,
He is hurrying off to Spain.

Note.—The phrases *venum dare* or *ire*, *infittias ire*, *pessum dare*, &c. show the same construction.

§ 50. The Supine in -um is an Acc. of Motion belonging to a Verbal Noun in -us. Thus *amatum* is the Acc. of the Abstract Noun *amatus*, -ûs, ‘a loving,’ and means ‘to the loving of’ :

Amicos it salutatum, *He is going to the saluting of his friends, i. e. is going to salute them.*

Note.—Hence the origin of the so-called Fut. Infin. Pass. (see above § 42). *Audio uxorem filio eius datum iri*, ‘I hear that it is being gone to the giving of a wife to his son,’ i. e. ‘that a wife will be given to him’ ; *certum est multos hodie interfectum iri*, ‘it is certain that it is being gone to the killing of many to-day,’ i. e. ‘that many will be killed*.’

* With regard to the Acc. of the Object to which motion is directed, Mr. D. B. Monro says (Homeric Grammar, § 140), ‘There is no reason to infer from these and similar instances that the Accusative is originally the Case of the *terminus ad quem*. It is natural that a Verb of motion should be defined or qualified by a Noun expressing *place*, and that such a Noun should generally denote the place *to which* the motion is directed. But this is not necessary. The Acc. is used with Verbs denoting *motion from*, as *φεύγω*, *νοσφίζομαι*, *ὑποείκω* (Il. xv. 228) ; and even with other Verbs of motion it may express the *terminus a quo*, if the context suggests it, as *ἀνεδύσατο κῦμα*, *rose from the wave*, *ὑπεράϊα κατέβαινε*, *came down from the upper chambers.*’ So *fugere*, *effugere*, can take the Acc. ; and compare our own phrase, ‘he fled the country,’ i. e. ‘from the country,’ with ‘he fled home,’ i. e. ‘to his home.’

C. Cognate Accusative.

§ 51. Intransitive Verbs may take an **Acc. of Cognate** or 'kindred' meaning; this **Acc.** usually has an **Adj.** with a limiting or defining sense attached to it:

Pugnavit multa proelia Idomeneus,
Idomeneus fought many battles;

Hunc sine me furere furorem,
Let me be mad with this madness;

Perfidum ridet Venus,
Venus smiles a treacherous smile.

Note.—This is an *Internal Acc.*, and essentially *Adverbial*. It is quite distinct from the **Acc. of the Direct Object**, as well as from the **Acc. of Extent** (see § 54). It denotes neither the **Object** of the Verb's action, nor its **Extent**, but rather (as the usually accompanying **Adj.** shows) the nature or quality of the action itself. Cp. *vitam tutiorem vivit*, 'he lives a safer life'; *acerba tuens*, 'glancing a cruel look'; *nec vox hominem sonat*, 'nor does his voice sound the man,' i. e. 'sound human*.'

D. Accusative of the Part Affected.

§ 52. Many Intransitive Verbs and Adjectives take an **Acc. restricting the force of the Verb or Adjective to some part of the Subject**. This is also called the **Acc. of Respect**:

Caput doleo, *I have a headache;*

Niger hic oculos est, cutem autem candidissimus,
This man has black eyes, but a very white skin.

* 'The Cognate **Acc.** is, in short, a special form of the use of the **Acc. as a defining or qualifying word.**' D. B. Monro, *Homeric Gram.* § 136, n.

Note.—This Constr. is more common in poetry than in prose. It is sometimes held to explain such adverbial phrases as *id temporis, vixem, partem, cetera* (as *cetera fulvus*, ‘tawny as to his other parts’). But perhaps these should rather be classed with *nimum, multum*, &c. as **Accs. of Extent**: see § 54.

§ 53. Analogous to the foregoing is the Construction (mainly poetical) by which certain Passive or quasi-Middle Verbs and Participles (especially those denoting ‘putting on’ or ‘putting off’) are used with an Acc. of the thing put on or off, or of some part of the body:

Androgei galeam induitur,
He puts on the helmet of Androgeus;
 Unum exuta pedem vinclis,
With one foot stripped of its sandal.

Note.—Similar, but more strained, are such poetic expressions as *perculus mentem*; *inscripti nomina regum*, ‘inscribed with the names of kings’; *traiectus lora*, ‘with thongs passed through him’; *caesariem effusae nitidam per candida colla*, ‘with their bright hair streaming over their fair necks*.’

E. Accusative of Extent.

§ 54. This Acc. denotes length of Time, Space, or Distance, and answers the questions, *How long? How big? How far?*

Annos quinque urbs obsessa est,
The city was besieged for five years;

* These Accs. are also analogous to the Cognate. In every instance the Acc. is *internal*, acting the part of ‘a defining or qualifying word.’

Duae erant fossae quindecim pedes altae,
There were two ditches fifteen feet deep;

Millia tum pransi tria repimus,
Then, after dinner, we crawl on for three miles.

Note.—This Acc. must carefully be distinguished from the Abl. of Time or Space, which denotes a point, without regard to length: *illo anno urbs obsessa est*, ‘in that year the city was besieged’; *praeterita hieme nix quatuor pedes alta iacebat*, ‘last winter the snow lay four feet deep.’

§ 55. Some neuter Adjectives and Pronouns are used in the Acc. to denote *how much* :

Hic homo multum ineptus est,
This fellow is very silly;

Sin quid offenderit, sibi totum, tibi nihil offendit,
But if he has erred at all, it has been entirely against himself, not at all against you.

Note.—Similarly the Advs. *minimum*, *nimum*, *commodum*, *primum*, *postremum*, &c. are all Accs. of Extent.

F. The Accusative with Prepositions.

§ 56. The following Prepositions always take the Acc. :

ad	citra	iuxta	prope
adversus	contra	ob	propter
ante	erga	penes	secundum
apud	extra	per	supra
circa	infra	pone	trans
circum	inter	post	ultra
cis	intra	praeter	versus.

§ 57. The following take the Acc. when they

denote *motion towards*, the Abl. when they denote *rest in*, a place :

in, sub, subter, super.

In Roma mortuus est, *He died in Rome;*

Ibo in Piraeum, *I will go to the Piraeus;*

Sub pellibus hiemant, *They winter under canvas;*

Sub iugum missi sunt, *They were passed under the yoke.*

G. The Accusative before the Infinitive.

§ 58. The Acc. is always used as Subject to a Verb in the Infinitive after Verbs of *saying, thinking, feeling, &c.* (**Verba sentiendi et declarandi**), as well as after impersonal phrases which imply a Statement or a Thought (see § 36 (5)) : *

Credo hanc terram a Deo creatam esse,
I believe that this earth was made by God;

Constat bonos omnes beatos esse,
It is certain that all good men are happy;

Expectatio fuit omnes interfectum iri,
It was expected that all would be killed.

EXERCISE XXXI.

(*The Accusative : easy.*)

1. He remained in the city for three days¹, and then departed for Athens,
2. I have fought a good

* This Constr. will be explained fully below in Part II, under the *Oratio Obliqua*.

fight, I have kept the faith². 3. Caesar advanced three days' journey towards Aquitania. 4. While these things were going on,³ I used to teach Marcus his letters. 5. I have now been ill⁴ for forty days. 6. He slays a like number⁵ of black-backed⁶ bullocks. 7. Do you not⁷ think that I have lived a most innocent life? 8. Having been struck on the eye with a stone, he sank immediately below the water. 9. I hope⁸ that you will forgive the offences which I have committed against you.

¹ *Triduum*, 'a space of three days.' ² 'To keep one's faith or promise': *fidem praestare*. ³ Say *inter haec*, or 'while these things are going on.' *Dum*, 'whilst,' takes the Pres. Indic. (see § 143). ⁴ When an action or state is spoken of as having gone on in the past, and as continuing still, the Pres. Tense must be used, usually with the word *iam*. ⁵ 'a like number': *totidem*, an indeclinable Adj. ⁶ Say 'black as to the back.' ⁷ Recollect the distinction between *nonne*, *num*, and *an* or *ne*. ⁸ Verbs of *hoping* and *promising*, &c., are used with the Fut. Infin.: 'I hope, I promise, I swear,' &c., 'that I will.'

EXERCISE XXXII.

(*The Accusative : easy.*)

1. I have known¹ that fact for a long time. 2. He promised² to remain in his father's house³ for two months. 3. I have concealed this from my father for a long time, but I will inform⁴ him to-morrow about the whole affair. 4. He was the first to leave for the country, and the last to return to town. 5. They are⁵ all gone to France. 6. I foretell that his daughter will be captured by the enemy. 7. I have asked of Caesar this favour, but

I do not think that he will grant it. 8. His body and lower limbs were covered with skins: in all other parts he was naked. 9. The people elected him consul along with Dolabella ten years ago ⁶.

¹ See above, EX. XXXI, n. 4. ² See EX. XXXI, n. 8. ³ 'In the house of': *apud*. ⁴ 'To inform': *certiorem (aliquem) facere de* (or with the Gen.). ⁵ 'are gone.' Note that this is in sense a Perf., and must be so translated. So 'he is departed,' 'the work is done,' 'the pond is emptied,' 'the potatoes are not cooked'; all refer to completed actions. ⁶ 'ago': *abhinc*.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

(*Accusative: Adverbs of Place: easy.*)

Note.—Distinguish carefully the following Pronominal Adverbs of Place:

(1) **Ubi**, 'where?'; **unde**, 'whence?'; **quo**, 'whither?'; **quā**, 'by what route?'—all used as Relative words as well as Interrog.

(2) **Hic**, 'here'; **hinc**, 'hence'; **huc**, 'hither'; **ibi**, 'there'; **inde**, 'thence'; **eo**, 'thither'; **eodem**, 'to the same place'; **eā**, 'by that way.'

(3) **Alicubi**, 'somewhere'; **alicunde**, 'from some quarter'; **aliquo**, 'somewhither'; **aliquā**, 'by some way.'

(4) **Ubique**, 'everywhere'; **ubicunque**, 'wheresoever'; **undique**, 'from every quarter'; **quocumque**, 'whithersoever'; **quacumque**, 'by whatever route.'

1. Where are you going? 2. I am going to the same place as you are. 3. Where are you coming from? 4. Do you not know the place which I have come from? 5. I shall return by the same route as he did. 6. Whichever way you go, black care will sit behind you. 7. I shall take you back to that place from which you have just come. 8. He has gone to some place certainly, but to what place

I know not. 9. Wheresoever the carcase is, there will the eagles be gathered together. 10. They will collect from every quarter. 11. Tell me to what place you are intending¹ to go. 12. Wheresoever I look, I see death: it may come at any moment, and from any quarter; by whatever way it comes, its approach cannot be resisted.

¹ Use Subj.: (*Indirect Question*).

EXERCISE XXXIV.

(*The Accusative, &c.*)

1. By this time¹ Rome had been built and fortified²; and Romulus could assure both his own safety and that of³ his fellow-citizens⁴. 2. But there was a want of⁵ inhabitants for the city; so Romulus determined⁶ to draw to Rome needy and brave men from every quarter. 3. With this object⁷, he opened an asylum upon⁸ the Capitoline hill, between the two groves—an opportunity of which⁹ he hoped that many would avail themselves¹⁰. 4. To this spot¹¹ he then invited from the neighbouring nations all the most restless¹² spirits, whether slaves or freemen, and all who wished for change¹³.

¹ Distinguish *nunc*, 'at this time,' from *iam*, 'by this time.' *Iam* has reference to foregoing time, and implies 'a point has been reached when.'

² Don't repeat the Auxiliary Verb: cp. *capti quidem multi sunt, pauci vulnerati*. Similarly a Poss. Pron. is not repeated: *Dominus noster atque Deus*, not *atque Deus noster*.

³ 'that of,' 'those of': never translate this phrase by the Lat. Pron., but either omit 'that,' 'those,' altogether, or repeat the Subs. for which they stand. Thus, *matris meae pulchrior forma est quam patris*, or *quam forma patris*. ⁴ Say 'citizens.' ⁵ Use

a Verb, *desse* or *deficere*, 'to fail,' 'to be wanting.' ⁶ *statuo*,
 Prolative: see § 27. ⁷ *hoc consilio*, or (better) *quo consilio*; or
hoc spectans. ⁸ 'upon': *in*. ⁹ Say 'which opportunity.'
¹⁰ 'to avail oneself of': *utor*, with Abl. ¹¹ For Adv. of Place,
 see Pref. N. Ex. XXXIII. ¹² *turbidus*: see Ex. VI, n. 10.
¹³ 'change': say 'new things.' Latin ever prefers concrete ex-
 pressions to abstract.

EXERCISE XXXV.

(*The Accusative, &c.*)

1. Everything¹ fell out in accordance with his
 wishes²: a great multitude of men, good and bad,
 gathered³ to the new city, and Rome had citizens
 enough⁴. 2. Nearly all of these men, however, had
 lived rough and wicked lives⁵, and were ignorant of
 all law⁶. 3. So Romulus taught them obedience by
 severe discipline, and made them worthy⁷ of the city
 he⁸ had founded. 4. Having⁹ thus attached¹⁰ his
 subjects¹¹ to himself, 'Citizens,' said he, 'so long as
 you observe¹² my laws, and obey me, our city will
 prosper.'

¹ Use Plur. ² *ex sententia*. ³ Note this Vb. is here Intrans.
⁴ Say 'enough of citizens.' ⁵ Cognate Acc. ⁶ Distinguish
lex, 'a law,' and *ius*, 'law in general,' or else 'a particular right,'
 as *ius suffragii*, *imaginum*, &c. ⁷ *dignus*, with Abl. ⁸ Note
 the ellipse before 'he.' ⁹ See § 33: say 'when he had.'
¹⁰ 'To attach to oneself': *sibi adiungere*. ¹¹ 'his subjects,' *sui*;
 used also for a man's relatives, retainers, servants, &c. ¹² Note
 the Tense: Ex. VI, n. 9.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

(*The Accusative, &c.*)

1. Now¹ for some months all went well with² the

new city ; but before long a new want made itself felt³. 2. For⁴ though there were men enough and to spare⁵, there was a scarcity of⁶ women—a thing which⁷ Romulus determined not to endure any longer⁸. 3. So⁹ he asked the Fathers for their opinion ; and in accordance with their advice sent messengers round to the neighbouring tribes. 4. ‘Like¹⁰ all other things,’ said they, ‘cities spring from small beginnings : if men have valour, they will not fail to¹¹ gain riches and a name for themselves.’ 5. ‘Let your daughters therefore wed our sons ; neither valour nor fortune will fail their descendants.’

¹ Obs. ‘now’ here is resumptive, and has no reference to time. *Autem, vero, quidem* (all *enclitics*, i.e. unable to stand as the first word in a clause) may all be used for ‘now’ in this sense. ² ‘with.’ Do not use *cum*, which means ‘together with.’ Use *bene esse* with Dat. ³ Say ‘the inhabitants felt that there was still (*adhuc*) something wanting.’ ⁴ *Nam* and *namque* may stand first in a clause ; but not *enim*. See n. i. ⁵ ‘enough and to spare’ : *satis superque*, with Gen. ⁶ Use a Verb. ⁷ Say ‘which thing.’ ⁸ *diutius*, comp. of *diu*. ⁹ So’ here means ‘accordingly’ : not *sic*, but *itaque*. ¹⁰ ‘like’ : say ‘as,’ *ut*. ¹¹ Say ‘will certainly.’

EXERCISE XXXVII.

(*The Accusative, &c.*)

1. But some despised, others feared, the new city and its inhabitants : by none were the envoys kindly received. 2. This the youth of Rome¹ took very ill² ; for a moment³ even⁴ Romulus was at a loss⁵, and was inclined to⁶ despair both of his own fortunes, and of those⁷ of his people. 3. At last, as their neighbours seemed to count⁸ them as enemies rather than as

friends, they resolved to take by force what they had been unable⁹ to gain by good will. 4. With this view¹⁰, Romulus ordered¹¹ games to be prepared as handsomely as possible¹², and invited people to Rome from all the towns about.

¹ Say 'Roman youth.' Distinguish *iuvenis* and *iuventus*.

² 'To take ill': *aegre ferre*. ³ 'for' implies duration of time.

⁴ Use *ipse*. ⁵ 'To be at a loss': *haerere*; or say 'knew not what he should do.' ⁶ Use the Impf. ⁷ 'those of': see

EX. XXXIV, n. 3. ⁸ 'to count them as': say 'to have them in the number of.' ⁹ 'to be unable': *nequeo*. ¹⁰ See

EX. XXXIV, n. 7. ¹¹ Remember the different constr. of *iubeo* and *impero*. ¹² *quam apparatissime*: so *quam optime*, 'as well as possible,' &c.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

(*The Accusative, &c.*)

1. At daybreak¹, on the appointed day, a vast multitude poured² into Rome, being anxious to see the town of which they had heard so much³. 2. Having first wandered⁴ through and admired the streets, they took up a position⁵ near the Circus Maximus, below the Palatine hill. 3. Here they watched the games for many hours⁶, with their wives and daughters, and were just about to depart⁷ to the place from which⁸ they had come, when a sudden tumult arose behind⁹ them. 4. For, at a given signal, the young men had rushed down among the spectators, and were carrying off all the maidens whom they could seize.

¹ Say 'at first light,' Abl. ² Obs. this Verb is here Intrans.

³ Say 'so many and so great things.' ⁴ Recollect that Deponent Vbs. have a Past Part. with Active sense. ⁵ *locum capere*.

⁶ Distinguish between 'I was ill *for a year*,' and 'I said goodbye *for a year*.' ⁷ Use either the Imperf. or periphrasis of Fut. Part. with *sum*. ⁸ See Pref. N. to **Ex. XXXIII.** ⁹ 'behind,' adverbially: *a tergo*. So *a fronte*, *a latere*: but *e regione*, 'in the direction of.'

EXERCISE XXXIX.

(*The Accusative, &c.*)

1. Then the strangers¹ saw they had been deceived, and sought to flee²: but the Romans were superior to them in number³ and in strength. 2. Trembling in their limbs, and overcome in their minds with rage and terror, the maidens were carried off to the homes of their captors. 3. Unable⁴ to rescue them, their fathers hurried out of the city, asking the gods for vengeance; next day, they sent ambassadors to complain⁵ of their wrongs. 4. With⁶ the maidens, however, love soon prevailed⁷ over affection for their parents⁸; and they attached themselves⁹ loyally¹⁰ to their husbands.

¹ 'A stranger': *advēna*. ² Use Imperf. ³ Use Abl. (of Respect: see § 80) without *in*. ⁴ 'Unable' here expresses a reason = 'since they were unable.' Adjs. and Parts. alone cannot be so used in Lat. See Pref. N. to **Ex. XXV.** ⁵ 'to complain of': *queri*. Use the Supine. The Infin. *never* denotes Purpose or Motion Towards. ⁶ 'With' here means 'in the minds or opinion of.' Use *apud*. ⁷ 'To prevail': *valere*. ⁸ 'for their parents': use either an Adj. or a Gen. (Objective Gen.: see § 101). ⁹ 'to attach oneself': *se adiungere*. ¹⁰ 'Loyalty' is *fides*.

EXERCISE XL.

(*The Accusative: Prepositions, &c.*)

1. When a Roman was adopted into another gens, he assumed in full¹ the name of the man who had

adopted him. 2. There was attached to every patrician house ² a body of dependents called clients: these termed the patricians to whom they belonged ³ their patrons. 3. The client had the right ⁴ of asking his patron for aid in any emergency: the patron was bound ⁵ to protect his client, and to expound for him the laws. 4. The client, on the other hand, had to ⁶ aid ⁷ and obey his patron, and to furnish him with ⁸ money when called upon.

¹ 'in full': say 'the whole name of.' ² 'house,' in this sense, is *gens*. ³ 'belonged to': say 'were of.' ⁴ 'had the right': use *esse* with Dat. ⁵ 'To be bound': *debere*, lit. 'to owe.' ⁶ 'had to': use Gerund Impersonally. ⁷ 'to aid': remember the different Consts. of *iuuare*, *subvenire*, *succurrere*. ⁸ Say 'give.'

EXERCISE XLI.

(*Accusative and various.*)

1. The Plebs were composed of ¹ the inhabitants of conquered cities, who, it is believed, had been transported to Rome at some time or other ² by conquering kings. 2. According to ³ the judgment of the consul Appius Claudius, a tribune of the plebs had no jurisdiction over ⁴ any except ⁵ plebeians. 3. The plebeians originally had no political ⁶ rights: neither the right of voting ⁷, nor that of being eligible to public offices ⁸. 4. It was ⁹ with great difficulty, and only ¹⁰ after many years' struggle, that they gained for themselves the right of appeal ¹¹ to the people from the consuls. 5. The right of voting was given them by Servius Tullius, when they were

included in¹² the classes; that of appeal they first acquired in the consulship¹³ of P. Valerius Publicola.

¹ 'To be composed of': *constare ex*. ² *aliquando* or *olim*.
³ 'According to': *ex* or *secundum*. ⁴ 'jurisdiction over':
ius in. ⁵ 'none . . . except': *non nisi*. ⁶ 'political': *publicus*.
⁷ *ius suffragii*, 'the franchise.' ⁸ *ius honorum*, 'eligibility
to public office.' *Honor* is 'a public office' or 'magistracy.'
⁹ Don't express 'It was.' ¹⁰ 'and only': use *non nisi* or *nec
nisi*. ¹¹ 'the right of appeal': *intercessio*. ¹² 'included in':
here 'in' implies motion. ¹³ 'in the consulship of': the phrase
is always 'so-and-so (being) consul,' Abl. Abs. See § 89.

THE DATIVE.

§ 59. The Dative Case is used in two senses, and in two senses only: a General Sense, and a Special Sense. These are:

A. Dative of the Indirect Object.

B. Predicative Dative.

A. Dative of Indirect Object.

§ 60. In its general and usual sense, the Dat. denotes the Person or the Thing (especially the Person) affected by an action, a state, or a quality, but not directly or primarily acted upon (as the Acc. by a Transitive Verb).

§ 61. The Person or the Thing thus affected is called the **Indirect** or **Remoter Object**; and while the Direct Object is always in the Acc., so the Dat. is the appropriate case for the Indirect Object.

The Prepositions **to** and **for** express the equivalent relation in English *.

§ 62. It is not possible to enumerate all the words which may thus be used with a Dat. †; but it will be useful specially to indicate the following :

(1) The list of Intransitive Verbs given above §§ 20 to 23;

(2) Transitive Verbs of *giving, declaring, answering, indicating, owing, promising, &c.*, take a Dat. of the recipient, i. e. of the person to‡ whom the gift, the statement, the answer, &c., is made :

Nil omnino mihi respondit,

He answered me never a word;

Qui sibi semitam non sapiunt, alteri monstrant
viam,

*Those who don't know the path for themselves, point
out the road to others;*

Mihi HS quadringentis debet,

He owes me forty million sesterces ||.

* Excepting always when 'to' denotes *motion towards* (when the Acc. must be used); and when 'for' means *on behalf of* (when *pro* with the Abl. must be used).

† Such words have been sometimes called **Trajective**. But it is impossible to draw a sharp distinction between words which are 'Trajective' and words which are not; the term is misleading, because it ascribes to particular words a virtue which resides in the meaning of the Dat. itself; and it is not well to cumber our nomenclature with unnecessary technicalities.

‡ The student will note how often the word *to* is omitted before the English Dative. Compare *I gave him* (Dat.) *two black eyes*; *I gave him* (Acc.) *back to his mother*.

|| Literally 'four hundred times (a hundred thousand) sesterces' i. e. forty million.

(3) Adjectives and Abverbs — sometimes even Substantives—which denote *nearness* * or *distance* ; *likeness* or *unlikeness* ; *kindness*, *gratitude*, *help*, *fitness*, *obedience*, and many similar relations or their opposites :

Haec castris quam urbi similia sunt,
This is more like a camp than a city ;

Rusticitas urbanitati contraria est,
Boorishness is the opposite to courtesy ;

Fons hic fluit utilis alvo,
This stream here is excellent for the stomach ;

Congruenter naturae vivere debemus,
We ought to live agreeably to Nature ;

Subsidio venit implorantibus,
He came to their rescue when they entreated him †.

(4) Many Compound Verbs, whether Transitive or Intransitive, compounded with the Prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *ante*, *cum*, *de*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub* and *super*, and with the Adverbs *bene*, *satis*, *male* :

Abstulit mihi ensem,
He took my sword away from me ;

Posthabuit otium dignitati,
He placed ease after honour ;

* The Advs. *prope*, *propius*, *proxime*, take the Acc., as if *ad* were understood.

† Many of the so-called 'Trajective' words are used in other constructions also: (1) with the Gen., as *similis*, *dissimilis*, *communis*, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *proprius*, *affinis*, *contrarius*; (2) with the Abl. with *ab*, as *dispar*, *contrarius*, *distare*, &c.; (3) with other Preps., as *aptus ad*, *communis cum*, *coniunctus cum*, *benevolus erga* or *in*, &c.

Campus aedificiis subiacet,
A field lies close beneath the building.*

§ 63. In almost any sentence, a Person or a Thing specially interested in the action may be placed in the Dat. :

Tuas res tibi habeto,
Keep your own property to yourself;
Esto, ut nunc multi, dives tibi, pauper amicis,
Be, as many now are, rich for yourself, poor for your friends.

This Dat. is often used where we should use a Genitive or a Possessive Pronoun :

Frontem puero dormienti floribus ornavit,
He decked the boy's brow with flowers as he slept ;
Oculos illi urget somnus,
Sleep presses on his eyes.

§ 64. Where the Dat. is emphatic, expressing a strong interest on the part of the person concerned, it is called the Dat. of Advantage or Disadvantage (**Dativus Commodi** or **Incommodi**) :

Sic vos non vobis mellificatis apes,
Thus do you bees make honey, but not for your own benefit.

§ 65. Where the interest of the person concerned

* Note that in each instance the Dat. stands in lieu of the Case which the Prep. would govern if it were not compounded. *Abstulit mihi ensem* = *abstulit ensem a me* ; *posthabuit otium dignitati* = *habuit otium post dignitatem* ; *coniunctus mihi* = *cum me iunctus*, and so on.

is slight, amounting only to a reference, sometimes of a playful character, it is called the **Ethical Dative** or **Dative of Reference** :

Ecce tibi exortus est Isocrates,
Then, lo and behold ! you had Isocrates springing up ;
 Haec vobis per triennium totum reipublicae status
 fuit,
*Such, let me tell you, was the condition of public
 affairs for three whole years ;*
 Quid mihi Celsus agit * ?
What is my good Celsus about ?

§ 66. Sometimes, again, this Dat. expresses merely a reference to some person's judgment or opinion :

In qua tu nata es terra beata mihi est,
*The land in which you were born is in my eyes
 blessed ;*
 Vere reputantibus Gallia suis ipsa viribus concidit,
*In the opinion of those who think truly, Gaul fell
 by its own strength.*

§ 67. With *est* or *sunt*, the Dative indicates the **Possessor** :

Est mihi nulla domus,
There is to me (i. e. I have) no home ;
 Sunt tibi fides et integritas,
*There are to you (i. e. you have) honour and inte-
 grity ;*
 Nomen puero Egerio † fuit,
*The boy was called Egerius (lit. the name was to
 the boy Egerius).*

* The French have exactly this idiom : *goûtez-moi ce fromage*, 'please taste this cheese.'

† Note this peculiar attraction.

§ 68. After Gerundives, the **Dative of the Agent** must be used (instead of the Ablative); sometimes also after Past Participles and Adjectives in *-bilis* :

Permulta Caesari facienda * sunt,
Many things must be done by Caesar;

Eo tempore tibi Caesar interficiendus fuit,
You ought to have killed Caesar at that time;

Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Vergili,
By none to be more bewailed than by you, Virgil;

auditumque Medis
Hesperiae sonitum ruinae,
And the sound of Hesperia's fall, heard by the Medes.

B. The Predicative Dative.

§ 69. This Dative falls under two heads :

(1) **The Dative of Use or Purpose** ; chiefly with Gerundives or Verbal Substantives :

Decemviri legibus scribendis,
Ten Commissioners for the drawing up of Laws;

Dictator creandis consulibus comitia habuit,
The Dictator convoked the assembly for the election of Consuls;

Receptui imperator signum cecinit,
The general sounded the signal for retreat;

* In this case the Dat. is used in its ordinary sense: *permulta Caesari facienda sunt* means 'there are many things for Caesar to do'; *tibi flebilis* is 'for you to weep for'; *nobis facta* not so much 'done by us' as 'things we have got done.'

Tu non solvendo eras,
You were not (fit) for paying, i.e. you were bankrupt.*

(2) **The Predicative Dative proper**, used almost always with Abstract nouns, in place of the Nominative or the Accusative. It goes generally with the Verb *esse*; sometimes with *dare*, *habere*, *ducere*; and occasionally with Verbs of Motion:

Virtus huius nobis exemplo sit,
Let this man's virtue be a pattern to us;

Terrori fuit hostibus,
He was a terror to the enemy;

Nunquam tanto odio civitati Antonius fuit quanto
 est Lepidus,
*Antonius was never so hated by the country as
 Lepidus is now;*

Dono mihi hunc cultrum dedit,
He gave me this knife as a present or for a present†;

Ludibrio servum Davum habuit,
He regarded his slave Davus as a laughing-stock.

Note.—The Pred. use of the Dat. is apparently ancient and original.

As we have already seen, the Infin. in Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin was originally a Verbal Noun in the Dat. Case, expressing the purpose and consequence of the action of the Verb. In Sanskrit the Infin. remains distinctly a Verbal Noun, in the Dat. or other Case. Out of this Verbal Noun, Greek and Latin developed the Infinitive: and, curiously enough, while Greek continued to use the Infin. to express purpose, and gave up the

* In each of the above cases we should rather have expected *ad* or *in* with the Acc.

† Or 'in a present,' as the Scotch idiom has it.

Predicative use of the Dat. with Nouns denoting things, Latin clung to this latter usage, and abandoned (except in poetry) the use of the Infin. to express purpose. Hence we class as 'a Graecism' Horace's *tristitiam et metus Tradam protervis in mare Creticum Portare ventis*.

The fondness of Latin for the Dat. of Predication is connected with the literal matter-of-fact character of the Roman mind, which objected to predicate of each other things not convertible. The Roman would not say *exitium est mare nautis* because it is not true; sea is 'destructive,' but it is not *destruction*: a man may be 'terrible,' but he cannot literally be a *terror*, which is an abstract quality, and therefore incapable, properly speaking, of being predicated of a concrete thing.

The following are amongst the most common examples of the Predic. Dat.: *laudi esse (alicui), honori, dedecori, odio, culpa, crimini, fraudi, vitio, documento, emolumento, exemplo, impedimento, &c., venire (alicui) auxilio, praesidio, subsidio*.

EXERCISE XLII.

(The Dative : easy.)

1. He has told me a long story¹. I gave him three hundred pieces of money². 2. He answered me at great length³ in Latin⁴. 3. He promised his mother not to leave⁵ the house. 4. He disclosed the whole affair to his wife. 5. I owe his father a large sum of money⁶. 6. I will tell him all as soon as I arrive⁷ in Athens. 7. The Parthians restored to Augustus the standards which they had captured⁸ from Crassus. 8. He trusted himself and all his fortunes to Caesar's honour⁹. 9. Seeing¹⁰ the general in distress¹¹, they brought him a horse and a sword. 10. He threatened all deserters with¹² death or exile.

¹ 'a long story': say 'many things.' ² *nummus*, a piece of money. ³ See n. i. ⁴ 'in Latin': *Latine*. So *Graece*,

Anglice, &c. ⁵ 'to leave': say 'to go out of.' ⁶ 'a large sum of money': either *grandis pecunia* or *multum pecuniae*.
⁷ Fut. Perf. ⁸ 'To capture': use *eripio*, with the Dat.
⁹ 'honour': *fides*. ¹⁰ 'seeing': say 'when they saw that.'
¹¹ 'To be in distress': *laborare*. ¹² Say 'threatened death to the deserters.'

EXERCISE XLIII.

(*The Dative: easy.*)

1. Did you not tell ¹ me that his house is near the river? 2. The two brothers were very unlike each other². 3. Did you think them like each other? 4. You can do me no greater favour ³ than this. 5. Her property⁴ is close to the walls of the city. 6. Such forms of speech⁵ are more suitable for young men than for senators. 7. Whoever he is, answer him never⁶ a word. 8. When the work is ⁷ finished he will owe the contractors ten thousand sesterces⁸. 9. Have you not promised your commander not to desert your post? 10. Do not show him the way. 11. I shall be grateful to you for this great kindness⁹ all my life¹⁰. 12. To hear a man,¹¹ and to obey him, are two different things. 13. He was very helpful¹² to me in this whole business. 14. Others again differ from¹³ them very much.

¹ Use the Infin. (*Oratio Obliqua*) after 'tell.' ² *inter se*. ³ 'A favour': *gratia*. ⁴ 'A property,' of land, *fundus*. ⁵ 'forms of speech': say 'modes of speaking'
⁶ 'never' here is only a strong Prohibitive. For Prohibitions in Lat. use the Perf. Subj.: *ne hoc feceris*. The Imper. is used only in poetry, and to slaves or children. The Pres. Subj. is seldom used, except in general maxims. Commonest of all perhaps are

such softened phrases as *noli id facere, cave ne facias*. ⁷ Be careful of the Tense. ⁸ Say 'ten thousands of sesterces.' 'Of sesterces' is placed before the numeral, and is usually represented by the letters IIS (i. e. two whole asses and one half, *semis*), sometimes written HS. ⁹ Say 'that you have thus benefited me.' ¹⁰ Say 'as long as I shall live.' ¹¹ 'a man': *aliquis*. ¹² Say 'for a great help.' ¹³ Use the Adj. *dispar* or the Verb *discrepo*.

EXERCISE XLIV.

(*The Dative : easy.*)

1. The cities which were near to Rome joined¹ together and declared war against her. 2. But each chose a time suitable to itself. 3. This proved very advantageous² to Rome. 4. For she could with ease resist her enemies when³ attacking her one by one. 5. The last war, that⁴ waged by the Sabines, was by far⁵ the most important of all. 6. Now⁶ the territory of the Sabines adjoined⁷ that of Rome⁸. 7. And the Sabines were more incensed⁹ against her than all the other people for this reason, that¹⁰ they had suffered worse things at her hands¹¹. 8. So they entered the Roman territory, and encamped close to the city.

¹ 'joined' is here Irtrans. ² Use Subs., 'for an advantage.'
³ Do not express 'when.' ⁴ 'that' must not be expressed. But you may make a relative clause, 'the war which was waged,' &c. ⁵ 'by far': *multo*, Abl. of *difference of measure*. See below, § 86. ⁶ 'Now,' resumptive, may often be translated by *autem*. Remember that *autem, enim, quoque, vero* are enclitics. ⁷ Say 'was adjoining to.' ⁸ Use the Adj. ⁹ *irati*. ¹⁰ 'for this reason that': *ideo quod*. ¹¹ 'at her hands': say 'from her.'

EXERCISE XLV.*(The Dative, &c.)*

1. Every day, they drew out their line of battle¹; but the Romans would not come out to meet² them.
 2. So they determined to add craft to violence. 3. For it chanced³ that Tarpeius, who commanded⁴ the citadel, had a fair daughter. 4. She was much taken with⁵ the beauty⁶ of the soldiers' arms; 5. for they all wore golden bracelets on their arms, as was the Sabine custom⁷. 6. 'Give me what you wear on your left arms,' she said, 'and⁸ I will help you.' 7. So she let the enemy into the citadel; and was given⁹ what she asked for, not what she wished. 8. For each soldier, on entering¹⁰, threw his shield upon her, instead of¹¹ the golden gifts. 9. Thus Tarpeia received death as a punishment for¹² her treachery.

¹ 'line of battle': *acies*. ² 'to meet': *occurrere*, *obviare* or *venire*. ³ 'it chanced that': *casu accidit ut*, with the Subj. ⁴ Use *praesesse*. ⁵ Say 'pleased her much.' ⁶ 'the beauty of': use an Adj. ⁷ Say 'as to the Sabines was the custom.' ⁸ 'Give . . . and': say 'If you give, I will.' ⁹ What does 'was given' mean? ¹⁰ Say 'whilst he enters.' ¹¹ 'instead of': *pro*. ¹² 'for': say 'of.'

EXERCISE XLVI.*(The Dative, &c.)*

1. Thus the Sabines had become masters of¹ the Capitol. 2. Next day² they descended into the plain below³ the Palatine. 3. The Romans at length

came forth to meet ⁴ them. 4. The fight was maintained sturdily ⁵ on both sides; but the ground favoured the Sabines most ⁶. 5. Confident in their strength, and bearing on ⁷ like lions, they drove the Romans back. 6. Then Romulus, lifting up his hands to heaven, prayed Jupiter to ⁸ come to the assistance of the Romans. 7. 'If thou wilt only spare my people,' he cried, 'I vow to ⁹ build thee here a temple as the Stayer of Flight ¹⁰'. 8. Then turning to his people, 'Let us now snatch victory from ¹¹ the enemy, and cast their bodies to wild beasts!'

¹ 'To become master of': *potiri*, with Abl. ² Use the Abl.
³ Say 'which was below': *subesse*. ⁴ See n. 2 on last Ex.
⁵ *acriter*. Use *pugno* impersonally. ⁶ Is 'most' here really Superlative or Comparative? ⁷ 'bearing on': say *illati*, or *invecti*. ⁸ After Verbs of praying and asking, use *ut* with the Subj. ⁹ 'To vow,' 'to promise,' 'to swear,' &c. require after them a Fut. Infin. ¹⁰ 'Stayer of Flight': *Sator*. ¹¹ Use the Dat.

EXERCISE XLVII.

(*The Dative, &c.*)

1. Then again 'Now, now,' he shouted 'we must stand up against ¹ the enemy; now, soldiers, must you display all your valour!' 2. While ² thus they desperately fought, the Sabine maidens rushed in and threw themselves down before the feet of the combatants ³. 3. With tears they besought their fathers to ⁴ forgive their husbands, their husbands to spare their fathers. 4. 'If ye are ashamed of this alliance, fathers, it is ⁵ us, and not our husbands, that ye must slay. 5. If ye repent, husbands, of ⁶ having taken

us for wives, then let our death be a consolation to you, and to us an expiation of wrong.' 6. Thus at length was the battle stayed⁷, to⁸ the honour and advantage of both nations.

¹ Use *resisto*, impersonally. ² *Dum* takes a Pres. Tense, even of a past action. See below, § 143. ³ Say 'before the feet to the combatants.' ⁴ Use *ut*: see Ex. XLVI, n. 8. ⁵ Omit 'it is.' ⁶ 'of having': say 'that ye have.' ⁷ Say 'an end of fighting was made.' ⁸ Say 'which thing was for.'

EXERCISE XLVIII.

(*The Dative, &c.*)

1. It is only¹ the brave whom fortune favours: if you rely upon yourself, your soldiers will rely on you. 2. If you do not spare² your enemies when³ victorious, do you suppose that you when conquered will be spared by them? 3. You should⁴ stand up against the enemy now that he is yielding, and give him no time to repair his fortunes⁵. 4. Fortune helps the daring: the enemy who is continually resisted will end by⁶ despairing of his own fortunes. 5. I promise you that you will never repent of having⁷ taken so rash a step. 6. A long delay is injurious to an army, however much⁸ it may be elated by success: the conqueror who hesitates to turn a victory to account⁹, is as good as¹⁰ conquered.

¹ *modo*; *non nisi*. ² Note the Tense. ³ Omit 'when,' or make a subordinate clause. ⁴ Use the Gerund, Impers. ⁵ *res*, in Plur. ⁶ Say 'will in the end': *tandem* or *denique*. ⁷ Say either 'of a deed done so rashly,' or 'that (*quod*) you have done so rash a thing.' ⁸ *quamvis* or *quantumvis*. ⁹ 'to turn to account': *uti*, with Abl. ¹⁰ *pro*.

EXERCISE XLIX.

(*The Dative ; Use of Pronouns ; see Pref. Note to Ex. XIX.*)

1. The wisest of all men is he who both invents and executes what is best ; next¹ to him comes² the man who obeys³ the wise counsels of others. 2. The one knows of himself⁴ what is good both for himself and others ; the other has the wisdom to know⁵ that he is ignorant. 3. Most men are by nature kind to those of their own family⁶ ; all without exception⁷ are well disposed to themselves. 4. Cicero was very⁸ like his mother : it was she who taught him his letters when⁹ a child. He also¹⁰ resembled his brother Quintus. 5. A certain man asked Socrates 'Who is the wisest man in the world ? Is there any one wiser than yourself ?' 6. 'Whoever pretends to¹¹ wisdom,' replied the philosopher, 'is a fool : if I am wise at all¹², it is because I know my own ignorance¹³'. 7. It is thus that all the wise men may be distinguished¹⁴ from the common herd. All men at times go astray : but only the wise know that they have done so. 8. What kind of a book is that of yours ? Mine is such a book as all men like to read.

¹ 'next': *proximus*. ² Say 'is.' ³ *obtemperare*. ⁴ 'of himself': should this be the Gen. ? ⁵ 'has the wisdom to know': use the phrase *ita . . . ut* (with Subj.), 'is wise in this way that he knows.' ⁶ *sui*. ⁷ Say 'none having been excepted,' or *nullus omnino non*. ⁸ Use the Superl. ⁹ What does 'when' here represent ? ¹⁰ 'He also.' When 'also' as here adds a new predication to a Subject already mentioned, use *idem*: 'he, the same person, resembled,' i. e. 'he also resembled.' ¹¹ 'To pretend to have': *profiteri*. ¹² Say 'if I am wise as to anything,' *si quid sapio*. Note that after *si*, *num*, and *an*, *quis* and

quid stand for *aliquis*, *aliquid*.¹³ Say 'know that I know nothing.'¹⁴ Say 'you might distinguish' (Imperf. Subj.).

EXERCISE I.

(*The Dative, &c.*)

1. It is a common¹ frailty² to envy those who have most benefited us. 2. Whoever can best manage his own business, that man is most to be envied³. 3. Who in the world⁴ is there who would not prefer to be of service to⁵ his fellow-citizens, rather than be a slave to his own passions? 4. Can any one doubt that it is more happy to lead⁶ a life of virtue than one of pleasure? 5. To live in harmony with⁷ Nature was the great object of⁸ those who professed the Stoical philosophy. 6. That we ought to obey the precepts of philosophy is a maxim which⁹ is on every one's lips: but how many are there¹⁰ who carry it out in their lives? 7. Whatever is disgraceful¹¹ in an ordinary mortal is unpardonable¹² in a king: as soon as¹³ a king has become odious to his subjects, no one will come to his assistance. 8. How many children have you? I have as many as I have fingers on both hands.

¹ Say 'This frailty is found, or is born, in most men, that,' &c.; or else, 'Most men sin in this, that.' ² *vitium*. ³ Use Ger. Impers. ⁴ *Quisnam* asks an emphatic, urgent question: 'who pray?'

⁵ *prodesse*. ⁶ 'to lead': say 'to follow.' What does 'a life of virtue' mean? ⁷ 'in harmony with': *congruenter*.

⁸ 'To make an object of anything': *id agere ut*, with Subj.

⁹ Omit 'a maxim which.' ¹⁰ Use *quotus quisque*, 'one out of how many (is) each person who?' lit. 'the how-many-th?'

¹¹ 'To be disgraceful': *opprobrio, dedecori esse*. ¹² Use the Verb *ignosco*. ¹³ 'as soon as': *simul atque*.

EXERCISE LI.

(Accusative and Dative. Use of Pronouns.)

1. That same Brutus threw himself before his father's feet¹ and begged for forgiveness. 2. Let it not be counted as a disgrace² to me or as a loss to my country that I have slain³ only those found⁴ in arms, and spared their wives and children. 3. For whose benefit⁵ will this victory be? Did he or any other⁶ man ever prefer⁷ his friend's advantage to his own? 4. I will entrust you with⁸ this office if you desire it, but you will consult best your own interests⁹ by declining it. 5. For power when too great has proved a danger to many; no man can please his friends and serve his country at the same time. 6. If you promote¹⁰ your friends to honour they will feel no gratitude towards you; if you raise their fears or disappoint¹¹ their hopes, they will abuse you and fail you in time of danger¹². 7. How great is that ship? it is as great a one as I have ever seen.

¹ Say 'to the father at (or before) the feet.' ² See **Ex. L**, n. 11. ³ Say 'to have slain . . . and spared.' ⁴ 'those

found in arms.' Remember that this phrase 'those found,' 'those killed,' &c. is equivalent to either (1) 'the found,' expressed in Greek by the Def. Art. with an Adj. or Part. (as οἱ πολλοί, 'the majority,' οἱ τεθνηῶτες (Hom.) 'the dead' = Lat. *plures* and *mortui*); or else (2) 'those who have (or had) been found.' *Ei* or *illi inventi* could only mean 'those persons (already mentioned) when found.'

⁵ Say 'to whom for a benefit?' *cui bono*? This phrase is usually misunderstood: it does not mean 'for what good?' but 'for whose good?' ⁶ See **Ex. XLIX**, n. 12. ⁷ *anteponere*. ⁸ Say 'entrust to you this office.'

⁹ Say 'yourself.' ¹⁰ *provehere*. ¹¹ Say 'cut down': *recidere*. ¹² 'To be in danger': *periclitari*.

EXERCISE LII.

(Accusative and Dative.)

1. A private individual is permitted to be just¹; those raised to office² must obey the orders of the people without regard for³ justice. 2. Having reached the city by night⁴, he appeared before⁵ the Senate next morning; and addressed the fathers for two hours. 3. If you oppose⁶ me in this way, I will not place you in command of⁷ the army. 4. The Roman army hung over Capua like a cloud for several years, and surrounded⁸ the entire city with a wall of great height⁹. 5. Your granting me¹⁰ so great a favour is a proof that I have won¹¹ your goodwill. 6. Whatever end you place before yourself as the one most to be desired, devote yourself¹² to it with all your might; for whosoever is not true to¹³ himself will be hated¹⁴ by all good men.

¹ Remember *esse* has the same case after it as before it.

² See **Ex. LI**, n. 4.

³ Say 'justice having been neglected,'

Abl. Abs.

⁴ Abl., a point of time.

⁵ 'before,' i. e. 'in

presence of': *coram*.

⁶ Remember that *opponere* is Trans.

⁷ 'To place in command of': *praeficere*.

⁸ 'To surround':

circumdare. You may say either *urbem muro*, or *urbi murum, circumdare*.

⁹ Say 'very high.'

¹⁰ Say 'That you have granted me': use *quod* with the Indic.

¹¹ 'To win,' in this

sense, *conciliare*.

¹² 'To devote oneself to anything,' *in aliquid incumbere*.

¹³ Say 'is not wanting to.'

¹⁴ Say 'will be for a hate to.'

EXERCISE LIII.

(The Accusative : various constructions.)

1. The name of Augustus¹ was given to Octavianus because he had come to the rescue of² his distressed³ country like a god. 2. From the time that⁴ he opposed⁵ the policy⁶ of Antonius, he became popular⁷ with the Romans. 3. The life and career⁸ of Augustus bear a marked resemblance to⁹ those of Napoleon the Third. 4. Pompey imputed it as a fault¹⁰ to Caesar that¹¹ he wished his command in Gaul to be prolonged¹² for a second period of five years¹³. 5. Caesar promised to come¹⁴ to the assistance of his friends in Rome¹⁵ with three legions. 6. When my colleague comes¹⁶ to relieve me in my command, I shall travel with all speed and appear before Rome in¹⁷ three days. 7. Before laying down¹⁸ his command, he had discharged a great part of his officers, and no less than¹⁹ five thousand cavalry.

¹ Either use Gen., or attract to case of 'Octavianus.' ² Use *subvenire*.

³ 'To be in distress': *laborare*. ⁴ *ex quo*.

⁵ *se opposuit*. ⁶ *consilia*. ⁷ 'popular': *gratiosus*, or *gratus apud*.

⁸ *res gestae*. ⁹ Say 'were very like to'; or 'such that they can be compared with.'

¹⁰ ¹¹ 'To impute something as a fault' is *aliquid alicui vitio* (or *culpae*) *vertere*; or *id vitio vertere quod*.

¹² 'To prolong a command': *prorogare*.

¹³ 'a period of five years': *quinquennium*.

¹⁴ Remember that verbs of promising, &c., take a Fut. Infin.

¹⁵ This is a case of *loose connection*, not tolerated in Lat. Say either 'his Roman friends,' or 'the friends whom he had in Rome.'

¹⁶ Note the Tense. ¹⁷ Say 'within': 'three days' is *triduum*.

¹⁸ Say 'before he had laid down.' What is the difference between *prius* and *priusquam*? ¹⁹ *usque ad*.

THE ABLATIVE CASE.

§ 70. The Ablative is the Case which defines the various circumstances which accompany or attend an action. It answers especially the following questions :

(1) As regards **Place**: *From what place? At what place? By what route?*

(2) As regards **Time**: *At what time? From what time? Within what time?*

(3) As regards **Instrumentality**: *From what cause? By whom? By what means? In what manner?*

§ 71. Speaking more strictly, we may divide its main uses into three, denoting respectively

A. The Place Whence (the true Ablative);

B. The Place Where (Locative);

C. Instrumentality.

In addition, it is used in

D. Certain special Idiomatic Senses; and

E. After Prepositions.*

A. Ablative of the Place Whence.

§ 72. Ablative of Motion away from: usually with the Preps. *a* or *ab*, except in the case of towns, small islands, and the words *rure*, *domo*, *humo* :

Caesar maturat ab urbe proficisci,
Caesar hastens to flee from the city;

Demaratus fugit Corintho,
Demaratus fled from Corinth;

Rure Romam advenit,
He has come to Rome from the country.

* See n. on § 44, p. 50.

§ 73. Ablative of Source or Origin :

Divis orte bonis,
O thou that art sprung from kindly gods ;
 Nascetur pulchra Troianus origine Caesar,
A Trojan Caesar shall be born from a noble stock.

Note.—Derived from the Abl. of Source is the *Abl. of Material*, usually with a Prep. : *totus ex fraude factus homo*, ‘a man entirely made up of deceit’; *valvae ex auro atque ebore factae*, ‘doors made of gold and ivory.’

§ 74. Ablative of Separation, with Verbs of removing, preventing, abstaining, releasing, depriving* (or being deficient), and with some Adjectives, such as *alienus*, *liber*, *solutus*, *vacuus* :

Nostri deiecti sunt loco,
Our men were dislodged from their position ,
 Abstinit sermone Graeco,
He abstained from talking Greek ;
 Solve me dementia,
Release me from madness ;
 Animus omni liber cura,
A mind free from every care.

§ 75. Ablative of Comparison †, used instead of a Nom. or an Acc. with *quam* :

Quid magis est saxo durum, quid mollius unda ?
What is harder than stone, what softer than water ?

* These Verbs are frequently used with the Preps. *ab* or *ex*.

† The Abl. of Comp. is perh. der. from the meaning ‘starting from’ : *Caia sorore pulchrior est*, ‘Caia is prettier than her sister,’ i. e. ‘starting from her sister as a standard of comparison.’ It is therefore properly ranked under the *Place Whence*. The English word ‘than,’ in comparisons, was originally ‘then.’ ‘Caia is prettier *than* her sister’ means properly : ‘Caia is prettier : *then* (comes) her sister.’

Sentio neminem te humaniorem esse,
I feel that no one is kindlier than yourself.

§ 76. **Ablative of the Agent**, with Passive Verbs, of the Person *by whom* something is done. It is always used with the Prep. *a* or *ab* (with the meaning *away from*):

A patre ad Scaevolam deductus sum,
I was introduced to Scaevola by my father;
 Trebonium a te amari teque ab illo gaudeo,
I rejoice that Trebonius is loved by you, and you him.

B. Ablative of the Place Where.

§ 77. This is used with names of towns and small islands. There was originally a *Locative Case*, to denote *the place where*, the form of which survives in a few words, such as *Carthagini* (or *Carthagine*), *tempori*, *vesperi*, *ruri*; in the apparent Genitives *humi*, *belli*, *militiae*; and in the use of the form of the Genitive Singular in the names of towns of the 1st and 2nd Declensions to denote the *place at which*, such as *Romae*, *Corinthis*, *Smyrnae*, &c.

In place of this old Locative, the *Ablative* form is used with all Plural Nouns, and with Singular Nouns of the 3rd Declension, to denote the **town at which** anything takes place:

Hoc factum est Athenis, Cumis, Tibure, Carthagine,
*This took place at Athens, at Cumae, at Tibur (Tivoli), at Carthage.**

* With the names of countries the Prep. *in* is used: in *Italia*, &c.

§ 78. Of places other than towns :

Seniores eburneis sellis sedere,
The elders seated themselves on ivory chairs ;
Terra marique victus hostis est,
The enemy was conquered by land and by sea ;
Te mihi loco fratris esse duco,
I deem you to be in the place of a brother to me.

§ 79. Of the route by which :

Milites monuit ut via omnes irent,
*He enjoined his men to march all by the high-
way ;*
Duabus simul portis eruptionem fecit,
He made a sally by two gates at once.

§ 80. The sense of 'the Place Where' glides into that of 'the Part affected' ; *the Place* or *Thing* or *Part in respect of which* ; this is called the **Ablative of Respect** :

Captus est oculis,
He was seized in the eyes (i. e. he became blind) ;
Aeger est pedibus,
He is diseased in the feet ;
Non corpore sed animo antecellis,
You excel not in body but in mind ;
Non tu quidem tota re, sed temporibus errasti,
*You were not altogether wrong, but you were wrong
in your dates ;*
Mea quidem sententia sapientissimus omnium quos
cognovi homines,
*In my opinion, the wisest of all the men I have ever
known.*

§ 81. Referring to Time, the Ablative expresses the **Time at which**, or **within which**, an event takes place :

Hora sexta Caesar est profectus,
Caesar set out at six o'clock ;

Initio aestatis Consul in Graeciam traiecit,
At the beginning of the summer, the Consul crossed to Greece ;

Nemo his viginti annis reipublicae hostis fuit,
The State has had no enemy in the course of the last twenty years ;

Agamemnon vix decem annis urbem unam cepit,
Agamemnon with difficulty took one city in a period of ten years.

C. Ablative of Instrumentality.

§ 82. Ablative of the Means or Instrument proper :

Gladio sibi viam fecit,
He made a way for himself with the sword ;*

Statuit non proeliis sed alio more bellum gerendum,
He determined that the war must be carried on not by battles, but in some other way.

§ 83. Ablative of the Cause † :

Hoc non odio neque crudelitate sed stultitia fecerunt,

* Note the ambiguity of the English 'with.' Where it denotes the Instrument ('with a sword') the Abl. alone must be used. Where it means 'together with' the Prep. *cum* must always be used : *cum patre meo ; otium cum dignitate.*

† The Cause, like the Agent, is prob. an Abl. of *Origin*, as the use of *ab, ex, de* implies : but it seems difficult practically to separate the *Cause* from the *Means*.

They did this not from hate or cruelty, but through folly.

§ 84. Ablative of Manner, either with or without an Adjective :

Magna industria bellum apparavit,
He made his preparations for war very carefully;

Ingredere in viam dolo,
Enter craftily upon your course.

Note.—The following are common instances of the Abl. of Manner : *hoc modo, quo modo, ea ratione, qua ratione, more antiquo, iure optimo, mea sponte, eo exemplo, magno opere* (or *magno-pere*), *dedita opera, pace tua* ('by your leave'), *iniuria* ('wrongfully'), *arte* ('artistically'), &c. These phrases are all equivalent to Adv.

§ 85. Ablative of Price :

Quadraginta minis eum servum emit,
He bought that slave for (lit. with) forty minae;

Quod non opus est, asse carum est,
What you don't want is dear at a penny.

Note.—The following are common instances of the Abl. of Price : *magno, parvo, plurimo, minimo, vili, tantulo*, &c.

§ 86. Ablative of Difference of Measure, with Comparatives :

Nonnumquam uno die mensem longiorem faciunt,
They sometimes make the month longer by one day;

Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa maior,
The greater the fault, the greater the annoyance
(lit. *by what the fault is greater, by that the grief is heavier*).

D. Special Idiomatic Uses.

The following uses of the Abl. are idiomatic, but may probably be all explained under one or other of the heads given above.

§ 87. The Ablative is used

(1) After *careo*, *egeo*, and other Verbs (with some Adjectives) denoting *Want* or *Fulness* * :

Caret culpa,
He is free from fault ;
Hoste vacant domus,
Our houses are free from enemies ;
Plena domus ornamentis fuit,
His house was full of ornaments.

(2) After the Adjectives *dignus*, 'worthy,' *indignus*, 'unworthy' ; the Participles *fretus*, 'relying on,' *contentus*, 'contented with,' *praeditus*, 'endowed with' ; and the Substantives *opus* and *usus* † :

Dignum laude virum Musa vetat mori,
*The Muse forbids the man worthy of praise
to die ;*

* This Abl. may be regarded either (1) as an Abl. of Respect : *cibo eget*, 'he is in need in the matter of food,' 'he needs food' ; or (2) as an Abl. of Separation.

† These Abls. may all be regarded as Abls. either of Respect or of the Instrument : *dignus laude*, 'worthy in the matter of praise' ; *contentus parvo*, 'contented with' (lit. 'held in by') 'a little' ; *magistratibus opus est*, 'there is need in the matter of magistrates.'

Haec sunt divino praedita sensu,
These things are endowed with a divine feeling ;
 Magistratibus opus est,
There is need of magistrates, or Magistrates are wanted.

(3) After the Deponent Verbs *fungor*, 'I perform,' lit. 'busy myself with'; *fruor*, 'I enjoy' ('enjoy myself with'); *utor*, 'I use' ('employ myself with'); *potior*, 'possess myself of' ('make myself powerful with'); *vescor*, 'I feed (myself) on'; *dignor*, 'I deem worthy'; *nitor*, 'I lean on' ('support myself by'):

Utor Pompeio familiarissime,
I am on the most intimate terms with Pompey ;
 Praetura functus,
Having discharged the office of praetor ;
 Omnes mortales dis sunt freti,
All mortals rely upon the gods.

§ 88. Ablative of Quality* or Description, attached to a Substantive or to the Verb *esse*, and used with an agreeing Adjective :

C. Valerius, summa virtute et humanitate adolescens,
C. Valerius, a youth of the greatest virtue and gentleness ;

Corpore fuit exiguo, magno capite,
He had a small body but a big head.

§ 89. Ablative Absolute* or of Attendant Circumstance. This Phrase consists of a Noun (or Pronoun)

* The Abl. of Quality and the Abl. Abs. are sometimes called Abl. of Association. So too the Abl. with *cum*.

in the Ablative, with another Noun, or an Adjective or Participle, agreeing with it. It is equivalent to a separate clause *within* the sentence to which it belongs; and is called **Absolute** because its construction is independent of that of the rest of the sentence. *It must not be used if the Noun itself, or a Noun in Apposition to it, has already a place in the Construction of the sentence:*

Natus est Augustus Cicerone et Antonio consulibus,
Augustus was born in the consulship of Cicero and Antony (lit. *Cicero and Antony being Consuls*);

Nihil de hac re agi potest salvis legibus,
Nothing can be done in this matter without violating the laws (lit. *the laws being unviolated*);

Hostibus a littore submotis, Caesar castra posuit,
Having driven back the enemy from the shore (lit. *the enemy having been driven back*), *Caesar pitched his camp*;

Te veniente die, te decedente canebat,
He sang of you as the day came, of you as it departed;

Summo omnium studio reductus est,
He was brought back amid universal enthusiasm (lit. *there being the greatest enthusiasm of all persons*).

Note.—The Abl. Abs. may usually be turned into a dependent Clause in English. In the above examples we might say (1) *When Cicero and Antony were Consuls*; (2) *So long as the laws remain unviolated*; and (3) *When the day came, and when it departed*; &c.

E. Ablative with Prepositions.

§ 90. The following Preps. take the Abl. :

a or ab	cum	prae
absque	de	pro
clam	e or ex	sine
coram	palam	tenus.

The following take the Abl. when they denote *rest* *in*, the Acc. when they denote *motion to* :

in, sub, subter, super.

Note.—*Clam* sometimes takes the Acc. : *tenus* sometimes takes the Gen. : it is always placed after its case, as *labrorum tenus*, ‘as far as the lips.’

EXERCISE LIV.

(*The Ablative : easy.*)

1. He has lived six months at Gabii. 2. Did you not leave him ill at Syracuse? 3. Better¹ be first man at Athens than second at Thebes. 4. They returned home, without orders from me², by a long and difficult road. 5. He has received a severe blow³ on the head. 6. Hannibal lost the sight of one eye⁴ in the marshes of Etruria. 7. Napoleon was short in stature, of great bodily⁵ strength, keen-eyed and quick-witted, but entirely selfish⁶ and untrustworthy. 8. Starting from Paris on the morning of January 1st, he reached his camp on the sixth day. 9. In five years Bonaparte had reduced all Europe to subjection⁷. 10. Born from a noble Corsican family, he was in his youth⁸ almost a foreigner in France.

¹ This may mean 'it is better, or preferable, to be'; or 'I would rather be.' ² 'by my orders': *iussu meo*; 'without my orders': *iniussu meo*. ³ Say 'has been severely wounded.' ⁴ 'To lose one's sight': *oculis capi*. ⁵ 'bodily'; say 'of body.' ⁶ 'selfish and untrustworthy': use periphrases. ⁷ 'reduced to subjection': say 'subjugated.' ⁸ 'in his youth': say '(as) a youth.'

EXERCISE LV.

(*The Ablative: easy.*)

1. Devoid of religion, free from all party feeling¹, he pursued² no end but his own advancement. 2. He abstained from public affairs³ until he saw⁴ that France needed a master. 3. Stirred⁵ equally by ambition and by hate, he carefully built up⁶ for himself a road to power. 4. He held cheap the lives of others, and, to his own great loss⁷, valued capacity⁸ in all men more than character. 5. He was by far⁹ the most able general of his time: he won most of his victories by swiftness. 6. He faced reverse¹⁰ with calmness¹¹; the more desperate his circumstances, the more¹² conspicuous his resource¹³. 7. The greater the army opposed to him, the more certain seemed his triumph to be. 8. He was never defeated except by Wellington, and by the difficulties presented by nature.

¹ 'party feeling': *studia partium*. ² 'pursued': say *id agebat*. *Agere aliquid* means 'to have an end in view.' ³ Say 'from the republic.' ⁴ 'until he saw': use the Pluperf. ⁵ 'stirred': *motus*. ⁶ 'To build up a road': *munire viam*. ⁷ Say 'with his own great loss.' ⁸ 'capacity': *ingenium*. ⁹ 'by far': *multo*. ¹⁰ 'reverses': *res adversae*, or *si res male cesserat*. ¹¹ 'with calmness': *aequo animo*. Yet in such

phrases, with an Adj., we may use *cum* : as *cum magna dignitate*, *cum eximia fortitudine*, even *cum multis lacrimis*.¹² 'the more . . . the more' : *quo . . . eo*.¹³ Say 'power of his mind.'

EXERCISE LVI.

(*Ablative : easy.*)

1. A sick man needs¹ much care. 2. This man is hungry; he wants his dinner. 3. This man's hair is wanting. 4. The black cattle of Aberdeenshire have no horns. 5. All my cattle are short-horned. 6. I need not less than twenty-five workmen². 7. A man endowed with brains is worthy of all honour. 8. I had need of much money yesterday. 9. Do not use³ my coat. 10. Having exhibited two sets of games⁴, I am now enjoying my popularity. 11. Caesar is a most intimate friend of mine⁵. 12. Better small fish than⁶ none. 13. No sooner said than done⁷. 14. Better a good fame than a fine face. 15. The more the merrier. 16. Suppers kill more than doctors cure. 17. Who is content with little will buy all things cheap. 18. Climb not too high lest the fall be the greater.

¹ Carefully distinguish *carere*, *egere*, *desse*, *abesse*. ² 'a workman': *opera*. ³ What Tense should be used in Prohibitions?

⁴ 'Public games': *ludi*. Where the Plur. is used in a Sing. sense to denote 'a set of' anything, as *ludi*, *castra*, &c., the distributive numeral is used with it, not the ordinal. Thus 'two camps' are *bina castra*. ⁵ 'To be on intimate terms with': *uti familiariter*.

⁶ Use *quam*. Remember *quam* has no effect upon the construction. ⁷ *Citius dicto: dictum factum*. Cf. ἄμα ἔπος, ἄμα ἔργον; *gesagt, gethan*; *aussitôt dit, aussitôt fait*.

EXERCISE LVII.*(The Ablative, &c.)*

1. Wearied with his long journey, but still exulting¹ in his victory, Hercules arrived at length at² the Palatine hill, driving his oxen before him. 2. Here there lived a monster, Cacus by name, who was the terror³ of the neighbourhood⁴, by reason of his huge bodily⁵ strength and cruelty. 3. So king Evander begged Hercules for help: 'We have a monster here,' said he, 'whom you must subdue for us, either by arms or by guile.' 4. Attracted by the beauty of the cattle, Cacus attempted treacherously⁶ to carry off all the biggest⁷ of them into his cave. 5. Knowing that Hercules was stronger than himself, and having seen that he was asleep, he made use of the following device.

¹ *ferox, exultans.*² Note that *motion towards* is here implied.³ Use the Dat.⁴ Say 'to the neighbours.'⁵ Say 'of body.'⁶ Use an Abl.⁷ 'all the biggest': *maximus quisque.***EXERCISE LVIII.***(The Ablative, &c.)*

1. Having marked¹ in his mind those which he wished to seize, he rushed suddenly upon them and dragged them off by their tails from the meadow where they were feeding. 2. At daybreak² Hercules awoke, and on counting the cattle perceived that some were wanting³ to the number. 3. In vain he

ran over the whole hill-side with his eyes, hoping to follow up⁴ the cattle by their tracks⁵. 4. He was just about to depart, and was driving what was left⁶ of his herd from the place, when some of⁷ the imprisoned cattle gave back a lowing sound from the cave. 5. Turning back at once, he made for⁸ the cave with all speed⁹, confident in spirit and eager for a fight¹⁰. 6. The doors of the cave were at the back¹¹, and were made of hard oak bound together with iron.

¹ 'To mark': *notare*. ² Say 'At the first light.' ³ To be wanting': *desse*, with the Dat. ⁴ 'To follow': *sequi*; 'to follow up': *persequi*; 'to follow up and catch': *assequi*. ⁵ *vestigia*.
⁶ Use *reliquus*. ⁷ Use *ex*. ⁸ 'To make for': *petere*. ⁹ Say 'as quickly as possible,' *quam celerrime*. ¹⁰ Use the Gen. after an Adj. signifying *desire*. See below § 102 (r). ¹¹ 'at the back': *a tergo*.

EXERCISE LIX.

(*The Ablative, &c.*)

1. The cave itself was full of dead men's bones and all the booty of which Cacus had despoiled the rustics of the neighbourhood¹. 2. 'Surely here is a monster worthy of a shameful end,' said Hercules: 'Now must I put forth all my strength.' 3. Cacus meanwhile had recourse to² his father's arts, and spitting forth fire from his mouth filled the whole place with smoke. 4. But Hercules, laying hold of a stone which propped³ the door, shook it with all his strength, loosened it, and hurled it down into the river below. 5. Then quicker than lightning he

rushed on by the way thus opened, seized Cacus by the middle⁴, and dashed him against the rocks. 6. Having thus manfully discharged his duty, and gained possession of his own oxen, he set out again from Rome next day.

¹ Say 'the neighbouring rustics.' ² 'To have recourse to': *confugere ad*. Say 'which was for a support to.' ⁴ Use *medius*, agreeing with *Cacus*.

EXERCISE LX.

(*The Ablative and various.*)

1. On hearing this remark¹, he snatched the drawn sword out of the Consul's hand² in the nick of time³. 2. Having set out from Carthage in the midst of⁴ summer, they arrived in Italy⁵ just before⁶ the autumnal equinox. 3. The various⁷ Roman magistrates had to⁸ go out of office⁹ each on a fixed day. 4. It was said that¹⁰ Livia made the house of Augustus void¹¹ of heirs by slaying¹² her two step-children, Lucius and Caius. 5. But she was, in fact, incapable of committing¹³ such a crime¹⁴. 6. She was doubtless less afraid for¹⁵ her own life than for that of¹⁶ her sons; but she was only suspected of the crime of murdering her stepsons for the reason¹⁷ that she profited by their death¹⁸.

¹ Say 'which when he had heard.' ² Say 'to the Consul out of the hand.' ³ Say 'very opportunely.' ⁴ Use *medius*, agreeing with 'summer.' ⁵ Is motion towards implied here? ⁶ Say 'the autumn equinox impending.' ⁷ 'various': say 'had each to go out.' ⁸ Use *abire* impersonally. ⁹ 'office': *honor* or *magistratus*. ¹⁰ It is more correct to say 'Livia was

said to have' than 'it was said that Livia.' See § 36, note. But the Impers. form is used in Tenses formed by Perf. Part.
 11 Use *vacuus*. 12 'by slaying': Abl. Abs. 13 'incapable of committing': say *alienus ab*. 14 Note that *crimen* is 'a charge,' not 'a crime.' 15 'To be afraid for': *timere de*. 16 Omit 'that of.' 17 'for the reason that': *ideo quod*. 18 Say 'that it was profitable to her.'

EXERCISE LXI.

(*The Ablative ; Time, Place, and Distance, &c.*)

1. After remaining three months at Carthage, Æneas sailed for Italy. 2. At Drepanum he honoured¹ his father Anchises by celebrating games ; then sailing past the coasts of Sicily and Lucania, he landed² at Ostia, not many miles distant from Rome. 3. Europe is many parts smaller than America, but it is much more populous³. 4. To buy cheap⁴ and sell dear⁴ is the very essence of commerce ; no trader can make a fortune⁶ on any other principle⁷. ★
 5. He sped from Sardis in midwinter, stayed three days at Miletus, and crossed thence to Athens in six hours. 5. After spending many years at Athens, Ephesus, Carthage, and other foreign places, he came finally to Rome, and lived there three years before he died.

¹ 'To honour': say 'hold in honour.' ² 'To land': *egredi navem* or *e navi*, or *appellere (navem)*. ³ Say 'more crowded (*frequens*) with inhabitants.' ⁴ Say 'at a small price' . . . 'at a big price.' ⁵ Say 'is contained in this that.' ⁶ Say 'become rich.' ⁷ Say 'way.'

EXERCISE LXII.*(Time, Place, Distance, &c.)*

1. The messenger¹ who came to Rome with² the news of the battle fought at Cannae had ridden over³ one hundred miles in⁴ about eight hours. 2. The whole city⁵ was seized with panic : when the extent of the calamity was known⁶, the Senate was kept sitting by the Praetors⁷ for two whole days without intermission⁸. 3. Upon⁹ the return of Varro to the city, the magistrates publicly thanked¹⁰ him for not having¹¹ despaired of the commonwealth. 4. The Consul Aemilius had lived a long life¹² and fought many successful battles ; ashamed¹³ to fly or ask an enemy for his life, he preferred to perish gloriously, and was cut to pieces¹⁴ by a Numidian horseman. 5. Hannibal at once despatched messengers to Carthage to announce¹⁵ his victory.

¹ *Nuntius* means either 'a messenger' or 'news.' ² Say 'who had brought news concerning.' ³ *plus quam*. ⁴ No Prep. is needed. ⁵ Was it the city, or its inhabitants, that were terrified? ⁶ Say 'when it was known how great the calamity was.' ⁷ Say 'the praetors detained the senators.' ⁸ Use the Adj. *continuus*. ⁹ Say 'when he had.' ¹⁰ Distinguish between *gratiam habere* and *gratias agere*. ¹¹ Say 'because he had not.' ¹² Cogn. Acc. ¹³ 'Ashamed' means 'since he was ashamed.' Use *pudet*. ¹⁴ 'To cut to pieces' : *concidere*. ¹⁵ The Lat. Infin. never denotes purpose : say 'that they should,' or 'who should.'

EXERCISE LXIII.*(Ablative and various.)*

1. When the battle of Cannae had been fought, Maharbal wished to push on for Rome with the

cavalry. 'Let me do this,' said he, 'and within five days you will be feasting a conqueror in the Capitol.' 2. Hannibal praised Maharbal for his zeal¹, but thought his counsel too rash to follow²: 'You know how to³ conquer, Hannibal,' replied Maharbal, 'but you do not know how to use your victory.'

3. Horace set out for the war from Athens, where he was studying philosophy, and joined⁴ the party of Brutus and Cassius. 4. At Philippi he threw away his shield, like Alcaeus, and separated himself forthwith from the liberators. 5. He was at that time a very⁵ young man, not two years older than Octavianus. 6. Believing that any kind of peace was better than civil war, he betook himself forthwith to⁶ Rome, and enrolled himself among the supporters of the young emperor.

¹ Say either 'praised the zeal of Maharbal,' or 'praised Maharbal because he was zealous.'

² Say 'rasher than which he should follow.'

³ Omit 'how.'

⁴ Say 'joined himself to' or 'with.'

⁵ 'very': *admodum*.

⁶ 'To betake one-self to': *se conferre ad*.

EXERCISE LXIV.

(*Ablative Absolute ; Various use of Participles ;
see §§ 31-35.*)

Note.—Observe the idiomatic uses of Participles in Latin.

(1) The **Ablative Absolute** is explained above § 89. It is used frequently with the Pres. and Past Parts.: very rarely with the Fut. It never should be used if the Noun has already a place in the construction of the sentence. The following are familiar examples : *te duce, me invito, Servio regnante, Fabio consule, re infecta, &c.*

(2) Note the idiom by which the Past Part. with a Verb is used instead of two Verbs: *incensam urbem spohaverunt*, 'they fired and plundered the city'; *profectus Roma Galliam properavit*, 'he set out from Rome and hurried to Gaul'; and that by which

(3) The Past Part. agreeing with a Noun is equivalent to the Noun followed by a Genitive: *occisus Caesar*, 'the death of Caesar.'

(4) The Fut. Part. expresses intention, probability, destination, as well as mere futurity; and

(5) in combination with the Verb *esse* supplies a Fut. both to the Infin. and to the Subj.: *rogo quid factururus sis (fueris)*, 'I ask what you are (were) about to do': *dicit se hoc facturum esse (fuisse)*, 'he says that he is (was) about to do this.'

1. Caesar having been elected consul, Cicero despaired of¹ the republic. 2. Having been elected consul, Cicero left Rome accompanied by a great crowd. 3. Whilst² the senators were deliberating, the soldiers had chosen an emperor. 4. Whilst the senators were deliberating, they let slip³ the opportunity of electing an emperor. 5. Having said these words, Caesar, without further delay⁴, led his troops across the river. 6. Under your leadership⁵, even⁶ though the consuls are unwilling, we will joyfully⁷ attack the barbarians. 7. Having then refreshed his men with food and sleep, the general gave them the order to advance. 8. Upon the slaughter of Brutus and Cassius, Caesar laid aside⁸ the name of triumvir and amidst universal⁹ approbation assumed the consulship.

¹ 'To despair of': *desperare de*. ² *Dum* takes the Present, even in subordination to a past tense. ³ 'to let slip': *prætermittere*. ⁴ Say 'having delayed no longer.' ⁵ Use the Abl. Abs. ⁶ *Vel* attached to an Adj. or Part. has often the force of a Concessive clause: *vel medio die*, 'even though it be midday.'

⁷ 'joyfully.' Was it the manner of the attack, or the persons attacking, that were to be joyful? ⁸ 'to lay aside': *ponere*.
⁹ 'universal': say 'the approbation of all men.'

EXERCISE LXV.

(*The Ablative: Use of Participles.*)

1. Upon the instigation¹ of his own friends, and without any opposition² on the part of the plebeians, he abdicated the dictatorship. 2. In spite of my advice to the contrary, and though liberty had now been a thing unknown for more than twenty years, he determined to restore the republic upon its old footing³. 3. Their long-cherished hopes thus dashed to the ground⁴, the people suffered Caesar to gather all the functions of government into his own hand. 4. Amid universal despair, such a pitch of madness was at length reached that many men thought of⁵ abandoning Rome for good. 5. The gates having been burst open by force, and the citadel captured, we entered the city without opposition.

¹ 'To instigate': *urgere*. ² Use *repugnare* or *adversari*.

³ Say 'to restore the ancient commonwealth.' ⁴ Say 'cast down from (their) hope.' ⁵ 'thought of' means 'had the intention of': say 'had in their mind that.'

EXERCISE LXVI.

(*The Ablative: Use of Participles.*)

1. The temple of Jupiter of the Capitol was founded¹ in the reign of² Tarquin, but it was not

dedicated until³ the consulship of Brutus and Valerius. 2. When the people of Tarquinius⁴ attempted to restore the Tarquins by force, a great battle took place⁵, in which Aruns and Tarquinius perished, each by the hand of the other⁶. 3. Then Cicero, persuaded⁷ that Caesar would before long take possession of Rome, reluctantly⁸ departed from Italy. 4. After the overthrow of⁹ the monarchy, the whole of the royal powers,¹⁰ except such as were of a religious character,¹¹ were transferred to the consuls. 5. Then driving¹² the fugitives into a wood from which they could not escape, Pompey put them all to death. 6. With these words, he persuaded¹³ the people to put the prisoners to death without even granting them a hearing¹⁴. 7. It was by your advice, and in spite of my most vehement opposition¹⁵, that the senate agreed to the resolution proposed¹⁶ by Bibulus.

¹ *aedificari coeptum*. ² Use Abl. Abs. ³ Say 'was at length dedicated.' ⁴ Use the Adj. ⁵ Use the Historical Pres.: *fit pugna*. ⁶ Say 'perished by mutual wounds.' ⁷ Note that 'to be persuaded' here means only 'to know,' 'to be certain.' ⁸ *invitus*. ⁹ Say 'the kings having been expelled.' ¹⁰ Say 'the power of the kings.' ¹¹ Say 'religion excepted.' ¹² *compellere*. ¹³ *Persuadere* takes *ut* with the Subj. ¹⁴ Say 'unheard' (*inauditus*) or 'not even heard.' 'Not even' is '*ne . . . quidem*,' the word emphasised being placed between the *ne* and the *quidem*. ¹⁵ Say 'I in vain opposing.' ¹⁶ Say 'the resolution (*sententia*) of Bibulus.'

EXERCISE LXVII.

(*The Ablative and Dative: Participles.*)

1. In¹ the beginning, the plebeians did not possess the right of intermarriage² with the patricians³. 2.

At last, they acquired this right by the passing of⁴ the Canuleian Law in the year B.C. 445⁵. 3. The plebeians now gladly obeyed the advice of the tribunes to abstain from further violence against the patricians. 4. The patricians, on their part, forgave those who had favoured the new laws, and spared those whom they might have⁶ injured. 5. Thus did the leaders of the people⁷ teach them⁷ patience, and to believe that right was better than might; 6. and both orders were persuaded to practise⁸ kindness towards each other instead of hatred.

¹ 'In the beginning': *primo* or *a principio*. ² 'the right of intermarriage': *ius connubii*. ³ 'the patricians': *patres*. ⁴ 'by the passing of, &c.': say 'by the law passed.' ⁵ 'B. C. 445': say 'in the four hundred and forty-fifth year before Christ born.' Avoid a loose connection by the order of your words. ⁶ Use *possum*. ⁷ Do not express both 'the people' and 'them.' This would be clumsy. ⁸ *uti* with Abl.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

(*Ablative and various.*)

1. I had once to visit Russia in the character of envoy, an opportunity which¹ I thoroughly enjoyed. 2. In the general confusion² he was robbed of all his effects, his clothes only excepted. 3. My house is built of stone; but yours of brick. 4. By displaying³ courage and presence of mind⁴, he saved his own life and that of the others. 5. Having taken part in⁵ the blockade of the city, he razed it to the ground⁶ when taken. 6. I did cheerfully without⁷ many things for this reason, that my troops also were almost destitute of necessaries. 7. Everything will be his

who knows how to wait. 8. As often as⁸ I require⁹ your services I shall let you know. 9. The murder of Caligula was a blessing to the Roman world¹⁰.

¹ 'which opportunity.' ² Say 'in the ruin of all things.'
³ Use the Pres. Part. ⁴ *consilium*. ⁵ *interesse*, with Dat.
⁶ *solo aequare*. ⁷ Distinguish *careo* and *egeo*. ⁸ *quotiescumque*.
⁹ Say 'there shall be need of to me.' ¹⁰ What does 'world' here mean? Note the various meanings of that word in English.

THE GENITIVE CASE.

§ 91. The main use of the Genitive * is to define or qualify the meaning of the word to which it is attached; to indicate the *sphere within which* the idea or the action operates. When attached (as most commonly) to a Noun, it is thus often equivalent to an Adjective. When used Objectively (see below § 102) it stands to the governing word in exactly the same relation as an Acc. to a Transitive Verb.

The uses of the Genitive may be divided into:

- A. The Possessive Genitive;
- B. The Partitive Genitive;
- C. The Genitive of Quality;
- D. The Genitive of Definition;

* The word *Genetivus* means 'properly 'the Case of Origin' or 'descent,' and is apparently a mistranslation of the Greek term ἡ γενικὴ (sc. πᾶσις), i. e. the Case which gives the *genus* or Class to which a thing belongs. In Greek the Abl. was lost: the Greek Gen. does duty for both Cases. Note especially the distinction between the Gen. and the other cases, that while they originally and properly qualify the *Verb*, the Gen. properly qualifies the *Noun*.

E. The Objective Genitive; in addition, we have

F. Certain Special Uses.

A. The Possessive Genitive.

§ 92. The Genitive of the Author or Possessor :

Caesaris horti trans Tiberim sunt,
Caesar's gardens are beyond the Tiber ;
 Platonis libri ab omnibus leguntur,
Plato's works are read by every one.

Note.—Sometimes the word on which the Gen depends is omitted :

Verania Pisonis,
Piso's wife Verania ;
 Pugnatum est ad Spei,
A fight took place before the temple of Hope.

§ 93. This Genitive is used **predicatively** with the Verb *esse* to denote the ideas of duty, function, or sign; what is suitable to, or characteristic of, a thing:

Cuiusvis hominis est errare,
To err is the lot of every man ;
 Nihil est tam angusti animi quam amare divitias,
Nothing is so characteristic of a little mind as to love riches ;
 Iam vero illud cuius est audaciae,
Then what a mark of impudence is this !

B. The Partitive Genitive.

§ 94. This is used of any whole which is divided into parts.* It may follow any word, whether

* Some would resolve all Genitives into the Partitive Gen.: that term covering such meanings as 'forming part of'; 'coming under the head of'; 'in the matter of'; 'within the sphere of.' But this is to strain too far the meaning of the word Partitive.

Substantive, Adjective, Pronoun, or Adverb, which can mark off a part from a whole ; such words are called **Partitive words** :

(1) After Substantives :

Dimidium pecuniae,
One half of the money ;
Magna pars exercitus,
A great part of the army.

(2) After Numerals :

Mille equitum occisi sunt,
A thousand horsemen were killed ;
Multi militum evasere,
Many of the soldiers escaped.

(3) After Adjectives, esp. in the Comparative or Superlative Degree :

Maior Neronum,
The elder of the Neros ;
Fortissimus omnium,
The bravest of all men ;
Cuncta terrarum,
The whole world.

(4) After Pronouns, and Neuter Adjectives expressing quantity :

Uterque vestrum,
Both of you ;
Nemo mortalium,
No mortal ;
Sudoris nimium hic est, praemii parum,
Much cry, little wool.

(5) After Adverbs used as Substantives :

Satis eloquentiae,

Enough of eloquence ;

Res eodem est loci quo reliquisti,

The matter is exactly where you left it ;

Ubi terrarum sumus ?

Where in the world are we ?

Eo temeritatis ventum est,

Such a point of rashness was reached.

C. The Genitive of Quality.

§ 95. A Substantive may have attached to it another Subs. in the Genitive, together with an agreeing Adj., to denote some quality or attribute belonging to it. This is the **Genitive of Quality** or **Description**, the Gen. with its agreeing Adj. being together equivalent to an Adjective :

Non multi homo ioci, sed multi cibi,

*Not a man of much joke, but of much food : i. e. not
a very jocular, but a very greedy man ;*

Vir magni consilii et virtutis,

A very wise and virtuous man ;

Hoc non tanti est laboris quanti videtur,

This is not so laborious a job as it appears to be ;

Di me animi pusilli finxerunt,

The Gods have created me poor-spirited.

§ 96. Particulars of age, number, and dimensions are expressed by this Genitive :

Sedecim annorum puer,

A boy sixteen years old ;

Vir trium litterarum,
A man of three letters (i. e. fur, a thief);
 Fossa centum pedum,
A ditch one hundred feet deep.*

§ 97. Such words as *magni, parvi, maioris, minoris, plurimi, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, &c.* are used as **Genitives of value**† after Verbs of *estimating, buying, selling, &c.*

Voluptatem virtus minimi facit,
Virtue values Pleasure at a very small amount;
 Tanti est quanti est fungus putidus,
It is worth as much as a rotten fungus;
 Quanti emi potest minime?
What is the lowest price at which it can be bought?
 Rumoresque senum severiorum
 Omnes unius aestimemus assis,
And let us rate all the talk of crabbed old men
at one farthing's worth;
 Non flocci hunc facio,
I don't deem him worth a straw.

D. The Genitive of Definition.

§ 98. Sometimes the Genitive defines or explains the word to which it is attached, like a noun in

* Quality is also denoted by the Abl., above § 88.

† Mr. Roby holds that the so-called Gen. of Value is not a Gen. at all, but a survival of the old Locative Case. The use of such forms as *maioris, pluris, minoris*, which never can have been Locatives, is against his view: but he treats these as instances of false analogy, due to the fact that the true meaning of the form had been forgotten. The Romans, at any rate, treated them as Genitives.

Apposition. This construction is much rarer in Latin than in English * :

Mercedem gloriæ flagitat,
He demands the reward of glory (i. e. the reward which consists of glory) : He demands glory as his reward ;

Et domi quidem causam amoris habuisti,
And at home indeed you had the excuse of love (i. e. you had love as an excuse) ;

Opportunum remedium ignis oblatum est,
The opportune remedy of fire presented itself.

§ 99. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting take a Genitive of the charge brought ; the punishment is sometimes in the Gen., but usually in the Abl. :

Verrem Cicero repetundarum accusavit,
Cicero accused Verres of extortion ;

Maiestatis absoluti sunt permulti,
A large number were acquitted of the charge of treason ;

Veneficii parricidique condemnatus est,
He was found guilty of poisoning and of parricide ;
 Sisyphus longi damnatus est laboris,
Sisyphus was condemned to long labour.

§ 100. Many Adjectives and Verbs signifying want and fulness take a Genitive of that which constitutes the want or fulness † :

* Thus for 'the city of Rome' we must not say *Urbs Romæ* but *Urbs Roma* ; for 'the army of Rome' not *exercitus Romæ* but *exercitus Romanus* ; for 'the whole,' 'the middle,' 'the end,' &c. 'of the city' we do not use the Gen., but say *urbs tota, media, extrema*, &c.

† Similarly *potior* 'I get possession of' sometimes takes the Gen.

Hic vir plenus arrogantiae est,
This man is full of arrogance ;
 Indigeo tui consilii,
I stand in need of your advice.

E. The Objective Genitive.

§ 101. A Genitive is called **Objective** when it is the Object of the action or the idea implied in the Noun which governs it, that is, when it is **acted upon** ; it is called **Subjective** when the action or the idea proceeds from it, and **acts upon something** else. Thus if we say '*the love of God* passeth understanding ' we mean 'the Love which God bears to men,' i. e. the love of which He is the *Subject* : and the Genitive is a *Subjective Genitive*. But if we say 'the highest motive in life is *the love of God*,' we mean 'the love felt by man towards God,' i. e. the love of which He is the *Object* ; and the Genitive is an *Objective Genitive*.

§ 102. In Latin, the Genitive denotes the Object of Action in the following cases :

(1) After many Substantives, Adjectives, and Participles, especially those which denote *desire, love, hope, fear, knowledge or ignorance, skill, power, memory or forgetfulness, guilt or innocence* :

Permagnum habet studium litterarum,
He has a great love for books ;
 Belli magni timor impendet,
The fear of a great war is hanging over us ;
 Mens conscia recti,
A mind conscious of the right ;

Animus alieni appetens,
A mind hankering after others' property;
 Quae flumina lugubris ignara belli?
What rivers are ignorant of disastrous war?
 Huius iniuriae insons est,
He is innocent of having done this wrong.

(2) The Verbs *memini*, *reminiscor*, *obliscor*, usually take the Genitive, sometimes the Acc.; *recordor* almost always the Acc. :

Vivorum memini, nec tamen Epicuri licet oblivisci,
I remember the living, but I must not forget
Epicurus;
 Dulces reminiscitur Argos,
He remembers dear Argos.

(3) The Verbs *misereor*, *miseresco* take a Genitive; but *miseror*, *commiseror* an Acc. :

Aliquando miseremini sociorum,
Take pity at length upon our allies;
 Haec mulier se ipsa miseratur,
This woman is very sorry for herself.

(4) The Impersonal Verbs *miseret*, *piget*, *paenitet*, *pudet*, *taedet*, take an Acc. of the Person, with a Genitive of the thing felt for (see § 28) :

Sunt homines quos infamiae suae neque pudeat
 neque taedeat,
There are men who are neither ashamed nor annoyed
at their own dishonour;
 Tui me miseret, mei piget,
I am sorry for you, I am disgusted with myself;
 Ciceronem ad eum diem non vitae paenituerat,
Up to that day Cicero had not repented him of life.

(5) *Interest* and *refert* take the Genitive of the Person concerned ; but if a Possessive Pronoun be used, it must be in the Abl. Sing. Fem. :

Clodii intererat Milonem perire,
It was the interest of Clodius that Milo should perish ;

Quid tua id refert ?
Of what consequence is that to you ?

Cicero dicere solebat non tam sua quam reipublicae interesse ut salvus esset,
Cicero used to say that his safety was not of so great importance to himself as to his country.

Note 1.—The Personal Gens. *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, are used Objectively :

Rogo ut rationem mei habeatis,
I ask you to take account of me ;

Grata mihi vehementer est memoria nostri tua,
Your recollection of me gives me great pleasure.

Note 2.—A Gen. is often used with a Poss. Pron., in agreement with the Gen. implied in it :

Tuum, hominis simplicis, pectus vidimus,
We have seen your breast, (that) of a simple man ;

Meas praesentis preces non putas profuisse ?
Do you not think that the prayers of me present were of some avail ?

F. Special Uses of the Genitive.

§ 103. The so-called **Greek Genitive** is used by poets after various Verbs, especially Verbs of *ceasing, abstaining, &c.* It is also used after Adjectives,

especially by Tacitus, to signify 'in respect of,' 'in point of,' 'under the head of':

Desine mollium tandem querelarum,
Cease at length from unmanly complaints;

Nec longae invidit avenae,
*Nor was he grudging (in the matter of) long-husked
oats;*

Vetus militiae,
Experienced (in respect) of warfare;

Aeger animi,
Sick at heart;

Occultus odii,
Secret in (regard to) his hatred;

O seri studiorum !
O late (in the matter) of your studies !

§ 104. As seen above, the **Genitive** is apparently used as a **Locative** to denote the name of towns or small islands at which anything occurs, when the name of the place is of the 1st or 2nd Declension, and of the Singular Number :

Quid Romae faciam ?
What am I to do at Rome ?

Corinthi habitat,
He lives at Corinth.

Note.—In reality, as we have seen, the forms *Romae*, *Corinthi*, are remains of an ancient *Locative* Case in *i*: in other declensions, and in the Plural, this Case became merged in the Abl. The words *humī*, *domi*, *belli*, *militiae*, are probably old Locatives: perhaps also *Carthagini*, *ruri*, *vesperi*. See above § 77.

EXERCISE LXIX.

(*The Genitive : easy.*)

1. My father's horses are very swift. 2. Cicero's orations are of more value than his philosophical works. 3. It is a wife's duty to obey her husband. 4. It is the sign of a good man to spare his horse. 5. Ardour¹ is the attribute of youth², wisdom of old age. 6. He has but little prudence. 7. Too much knowledge is a dangerous thing. 8. A majority³ of the senate voted for Cicero's motion⁴. 9. Ten out of⁵ twenty jurors acquitted Publius of theft. 10. The taller of the brothers has just married Caia. 11. He is the silliest of all the men I know. 12. Half a loaf is better than no bread. 13. We have now reached such a point of⁶ wisdom that we wish to know everything.

¹ *Studium*. ² Say 'of young men.' ³ 'a majority': *maior pars*. ⁴ 'To vote for a motion': *in sententiam ire*. ⁵ Use *ex*.
⁶ 'such a point': use *eo*.

EXERCISE LXX.

(*The Genitive : easy.*)

1. This horse is long-legged and narrow-breasted, but he has great speed and endurance. 2. Married? I have a girl of sixteen years of age. 3. Yours is no doubt a very valuable horse; but do you value it more than mine? 4. He said so in the presence of several men of senatorial rank. 5. My mother's

cow is not so valuable as yours. 6. What price do you put upon it? 7. The fleet of Sparta was not to be compared with that of Athens. 8. Marius was accused by Tacitus of malversation¹. 9. Many of his supporters were condemned on a charge of bribery. 10. Verres was condemned on a capital charge. 11. He was always devising² some new thing³.

¹ *repetundae*. ² 'To devise': *meditari*. ³ Say 'something of new.'

EXERCISE LXXI.

(*The Genitive: easy.*)

1. The man that is full of courtesy, is full of craft. 2. He has a great desire for knowledge. 3. The Belgians have much skill in swimming. 4. He is entirely ignorant of Greek¹. 5. The man who forgives an injury does not necessarily² forget it. 6. The Eastern nations are very greedy of gold. 7. I have forgotten more law than you ever knew. 8. He who pities the poor in his youth lays up treasure for himself in his old age. 9. I have for a long time been weary of life. 10. Why always stay at home when you have means enough to visit foreign countries? 11. I was always very fond of hearing speeches, though myself ignorant of how to compose or perfect one.

¹ Say 'of Greek letters.'

² Say 'not all men who.'

EXERCISE LXXII.

(*The Genitive.*)

1. The people of Alba¹ had long been at war with² Rome, and the strength of both was well-nigh ex-

hausted with constant battles. 2. The Roman³ king Tullus was a man of great bravery and huge bodily strength, and deemed peace of less value than victory. 3. But the Alban leader had a gentle and wise spirit⁴: sending⁵ a messenger to the Roman camp, he demanded a conference with the king. 4. 'It is the part of good rulers,' he said, 'to spare their people⁶ as much as possible⁷: it is perhaps your interest to gain a victory over us, but is it equally the interest of your people?' 5. 'Let us rather choose three brave men out of each army, and decide our dispute⁸ by their contest with as little loss as possible to⁹ either people.'

¹ Use the Adj. ² Say 'there had been war to . . . with.'

³ Say 'of the Romans.' ⁴ Gen. of quality. ⁵ Note carefully the time of the sending. ⁶ 'their people': *sui*. ⁷ 'As much as possible': *quam maxime*. ⁸ Say 'the affair.' ⁹ Use the Gen.

EXERCISE LXXIII.

(The Genitive.)

1. Though anxious for battle, Tullus ventured not to resist advice so full of wisdom¹. 2. A little delay took place² while the chosen combatants on each side were preparing for the fight. 3. After a long and obstinate hand-to-hand³ conflict⁴, first one, then a second, of the Roman brothers fell: the third, as though lost⁵ to honour, and only anxious for his life, took to flight. 4. Having fled for a little distance,⁶ and perceiving that his enemies were

following at considerable intervals, he then turned suddenly upon them, attacked them with fury, and slew them one by one. 5. Amid the rejoicing of the whole army, Horatius was led back to Rome: his sister alone, who met him at the gate, was sorry for⁷ his victory.

¹ Say 'so wise.' ² 'took place': say 'there was.' ³ 'hand-to-hand': *cominus* or *consertis manibus*. ⁴ Say 'after it had been fought.' ⁵ 'lost to': say 'forgetful of.' ⁶ *aliquantum spatii*. ⁷ Use *paenitere*.

EXERCISE LXXIV.

(*The Genitive, &c*)

1. For she was about to wed one of the Curiatii who had been slain: and though she loved her brother, she could not be unmindful of her lover. 2. 'Away with thee!' ¹ cried her brother in a rage: 'as thou hast forgotten thy brothers and thy country, thou art worthy of a shameful death.' With these words he plunged his sword into her breast. 3. All pitied the hapless maiden, and were ashamed of a deed so cruel and unholy. 4. Then Horatius was arraigned for murder; but though all knew that he was guilty, he was acquitted of the charge out of admiration for his valour rather than from the justice of his cause.

¹ *Abi*.

EXERCISE LXXV.

(*The Genitive.*)

1. I valued his father very highly: himself not at all. 2. He put a high value upon his horses, but in

the end sold them for two hundred sesterces apiece. 3. Cicero brought an action against¹ Piso for extortion: he was found guilty of that crime² and capitally condemned. 4. We all of us repent of those crimes of which we have been proved guilty: how many are there³ who repent of those which are known to none but themselves? 5. It is both my interest and that of the nation that no man should be convicted of treason unheard. 6. It is of great importance what kind of friends a man makes⁴ for himself.

¹ 'To bring an action against some one': *aliquem reum facere*.

² Say 'of which crime.' ³ 'How many are there?': *quotus quisque*. See **Ex. L**, n. 10. ⁴ 'makes': use the Subj. (Indirect Question, see Part II).

EXERCISE LXXVI.

(*The Genitive and various.*)

1. After waiting for reinforcements at Veii for ten days in vain, he sent a despatch to the consuls at Rome, imploring them¹ to come to his help at once. 2. I pity all who have to live² during the winter at Tarentum, a city which I myself never desire to see. 3. The year after his departure from Italy he spent six months at Thebes: he was just getting weary of that place when³ he died, at the age of twenty-nine. 4. It is the duty of a magistrate to obey even an unjust law; but he can advise the people, when opportunity offers, to repeal⁴ it. 5. In spite of your absence, and the unwillingness of every one to

confer fresh distinctions on you, I did everything in my power⁵ to advance your interests and those of your family.

¹ Omit 'imploping them': use *qui* with the Subj. ² Use the Gerund, impers. ³ Note that 'when' in this idiom really marks the principal Verb: use the Indic. ⁴ 'To repeal a law': *legem abrogare*. ⁵ Say 'all things which I could.'

EXERCISE LXXVII.

(*The Genitive, &c.*)

1. How few kings¹ there are who really devote themselves to further the interests of their subjects!
 2. Is it not a sign of the highest folly to wish to injure an enemy even at the risk of sustaining a great loss oneself? 3. Is it a proof of prudence for² a general to inform an enemy of his plans? 4. He was a man devoted to learning, but most unskilled in the management of affairs. 5. Although advanced in years, he showed all the activity of a youth³; after marching twenty miles on foot he at once attacked the enemy, and gained a brilliant victory without the loss of⁴ a single soldier. 6. Do we value any of our friends more highly than those who have proved their fidelity over a course of⁵ many years?

¹ *Quotus quisque*. ² Say 'that a general should.' ³ Say 'a youthful activity'; or 'showed himself active as a youth.' ⁴ Use the Abl. Abs. ⁵ *per*.

EXERCISE LXXVIII.

(*Various constructions ; use of Pronouns ; see Pref. Notes to Exx. I. and XIX.*)

1. M. Manlius was accused of treason : so also was P. Clodius Pulcher. The former was condemned, but the latter was acquitted. 2. The saying of a certain philosopher is well known, that you cannot tell¹ whether a man is happy or not before he is dead. 3. Does any one stand for any public office unless he has deserved well of his country? 4. Some thought that Rome would never recover² from so great a disaster ; nor did any one imagine that within a few years she would be more powerful than ever. 5. Anything is enough for one who desires no more than what is necessary. 6. One of the consuls was distinguished for his eloquence, the other for his prudence : Fabius was the older of the two ; he was also the most popular. 7. Whosoever it was who first invented arms, he deserves the execration of mankind.

¹ Say 'that it cannot be affirmed.' ² 'to recover': *refici*.

EXERCISE LXXIX.

(*The Gerund and Gerundive : easy. See §§ 37-41.*)

Note.—Observe the following points :

(1) The Gerund may govern the same case as the Verb to which it belongs in the Abl. or Gen. ; but is not so used in the Acc. or Dat. Thus *colendo* (Abl.) *agros* ; *ars colendi agros* ; but not *ad*

colendum agros, or *utilis colendo* (Dat.) *agros*. In these Cases use the Gerundive: *ad agros colendos, utilis agris colendis*.

(2) The Gerund of an Intrans. Verb, or of a Trans. Verb used absolutely, may be used in any Case, but in the Acc. only after a Prep.: *ars amandi, utilis scribendo*, but *utilis ad scribendum, ante domandum feroces*.

(3) Note the frequent use of the Impersonal Gerund: *dolo utendum est, hostibus parcendum erit, beate omnibus vivendum est*.

1. It is by living virtuously that most men become happy. 2. Men are impelled to living virtuously by the hope of happiness. 3. He was desirous of hearing all the best speakers. 4. The desire of ruling is common to all men: but some men are born to rule, others to obey. 5. He has sent envoys to sue for peace. 6. Caesar brought upon himself his own death by favouring his enemies overmuch. 7. If we would¹ rise to greatness we must work strenuously and do without many pleasures. 8. You must use² all diligence and acquire many arts if you desire to become rich by cultivating land. 9. The very³ virtue of Cato tended to⁴ the destruction of the republic. 10. We must all consult the interests of Pompey. 11. He ought to have⁵ been despised by every one.

¹ Note that 'would' here is not Conditional: it indicates desire. ² Use Gerund Impers. ³ Use *ipse*. ⁴ Use the Gerundive either with *ad*, or in the Gen. ⁵ Use Gerund.

EXERCISE LXXX.

(*The Gerund and Gerundive: easy.*)

1. We must all die; bearing that in mind, you ought to have cultivated virtue and despised plea-

asures when young. 2. In the midst of the fighting he looked round; seeing what had happened, he chose to meet certain death for the sake of wrenching the standard out of the enemy's hand. 3. You must enjoy ease while you can: once engaged in battle you will have to provide for the safety of others, not your own. 4. Plans have been formed by many persons for the destruction of the city. 5. Fabius sent his colleague home to hold a meeting for the election of consuls. 6. It is only by reading the great orators that men can become eloquent. 7. He set out with a lightly-equipped force to pursue the enemy. 8. Ambassadors were sent to Carthage to declare war.

EXERCISE LXXXI.

(*Gerund and Gerundive.*)

1. It is not by storming cities, by laying waste whole countries, and by wholesale¹ slaughter of the inhabitants, that men earn for themselves true glory, but rather by ruling their own spirit, and setting bounds to their own passions. 2. Caesar assigned to all his veterans cities to inhabit and lands to till. 3. Men are loved by their friends in proportion to² their private worth; but a man often acquires popularity with the mob in proportion to² his recklessness and folly. 4. Whenever a new law was proposed the comitia had to be called together. 5. The art of governing a state is one of the noblest of all arts,

nor is there any which is more rare. 6. You ought to have written at once for the purpose of consoling your friends, who believed that you were dead.

¹ Say 'of all the inhabitants.' ² Use either *pro*, or one of the phrases *ut sunt*, *prout sunt*, with the Indic.

EXERCISE LXXXII.

(*Gerund and Gerundive.*)

1. Having thus seized the principal conspirators, he handed them over to the guardianship of the city praetor. 2. The dictator summoned the comitia for the election of consuls; then, handing over the government of the city to the praetor, he set out to pursue the enemy. 3. Whilst the general was thus drawing up his line of battle, the Gauls threw his ranks into confusion by hurling down huge stones from the top of the hill. 4. If we desire to conquer we must make use of every opportunity; we must spare the vanquished, but do battle to the death with those who still resist. 5. The matter you speak of must by no means be neglected; the people must at once decide whether this contest is one which tends to the preservation or the destruction of the constitution.

EXERCISE LXXXIII.

(*Gerund and Gerundive.*)

1. We must all learn. 2. He ought to have been loved. 3. We entrusted to the contractors the

building of the temple. 4. So long as I remain consul I shall endeavour to do my duty to all impartially¹, without yielding either to fear or favour; whatever command I give shall be executed. 5. When you return to the city you will hear that I have been acquitted of the charge of bribery. 6. As soon as my father has breathed his last, I shall return to Rome, for the purpose of standing for the praetorship. 7. Up to the middle of the day we might have escaped; but once the battle was over, the greatest confusion prevailed in the city, and it was no longer possible for us to leave the town.

¹ *pariter*.

EXERCISE LXXXIV.

(*The Supines : easy.*)

1. Messengers were sent by the Samnites to demand satisfaction¹. 2. The inhabitants came in crowds to congratulate Caesar. 3. These things are hard to tell, but very agreeable to hear. 4. Agamemnon was persuaded² that upon some pretext or other his daughter Iphigenia would be slain. 5. They came to see; they came that they themselves might be seen. 6. Augustus gave his daughter Julia in marriage to Agrippa. 7. Such things are very difficult to do; but when done I am confident that all men will be satisfied. 8. Such conduct is disgraceful to tell of: those who take part in such designs are on the way to ruin their country.

¹ Use the phrase *res repetere*. ² What does the phrase 'I am persuaded' really mean?

EXERCISE LXXXV.

(Numerals and Money.)

Note.—Observe the following :

(1) Numerals from one (*unus*) to one thousand (*mille* or *mile*) are treated as Adjectives, whether declinable or not: *duo pedes*, *ducentae naves*, *mille anni*.

(2) In compound numbers below 100, the smaller number may come first, in which case the Copula is used; in all other cases the larger number comes first, and no Copula is used: *tres et viginti*, *quingaginta quinque*, *sexcenti sexaginta sex*.

(3) The plural *millia* is a Subs., and is followed by a Genitive: *duo millia equitum*, *centum millia annorum*.

(4) Above 100,000, the Numeral Adv. *bis*, *ter*, &c., are used with *centum* (more usually *centena*) *millia*: thus *quater centena millia* = 400,000. For convenience, *centena millia* is usually omitted: thus *decies* by itself is 'a million' (= ten times 100,000); *vicies*, 'two millions'; *centies*, 'ten millions,' &c.

1. The emperor sent two hundred and fifty-three ships to his legate in Africa. 2. My son is three and twenty years of age. 3. My father-in-law died in his seventy-seventh year. 4. I have received in bequests more than ten million sesterces. 5. Five hundred and sixty-seven foot-soldiers were slain, three thousand of the cavalry were taken prisoners. 6. Numa reigned for forty-three years, Romulus for thirty-seven. 7. You say that Antony has embezzled seven hundred thousand sesterces of public money. 8. These goods, worth six million sesterces, were purchased for two thousand. 9. The battle of Cannae was fought in the five-hundred-and-thirty-eighth year after the foundation of the city. 10. The agreement was that they should pay three hundred pieces of money for each Roman, two hundred for

each of the allies, and depart with one garment apiece.

EXERCISE LXXXVI.

(Dates.)

Note.—Latin modes of dating are peculiar :

(1) In giving the *year* use the Ordinal, not the Cardinal number : 'this happened in the year B.C. 25,' *hoc anno ante Christum natum vicesimo quinto factum est.*

(2) The *months* were divided into three periods by the *Kalends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The *Kalends* were always on the 1st day of the month; the *Nones* were on the 5th, the *Ides* on the 13th, in all months except *March, May, July, October*; in these months the *Nones* were on the 7th, the *Ides* on the 15th.

(3) If an event happened on any one of the days given above, it was said to happen 'on the *Kalends*,' 'on the *Nones*,' 'on the *Ides*': e. g. *Kalendis Ianuariis, Nonis Septembribus, Idibus Maiis*; i. e. Jan. 1st, Sept. 5th, May 15th.

(4) If an event happened *between* any two of the points given above, it was said to happen 'the day before,' or 'so many days before,' the point next succeeding: thus *Feb. 4* = 'the day before the *Nones* of Feb. '; *July 12* = 'four days before the *Ides* of July' (we should say *three* days before, but the Romans counted *inclusively*, i. e. reckoning both the day *from* which, and the day *to* which, they counted); *Sept. 21* = 'the 11th day before the *Kalends* of October'; &c.

(5) The *forms* used may be illustrated as follows :

(i) *Kal. Ian., Non. Sept., Id. Mai.* = 'Jan. 1st,' 'Sept. 5th,' 'May 15th,' respectively.

(ii) *Prid. (i. e. pridie) Kal. Ian., Prid. Non. Sept., Prid. Id. Mai.* = 'Dec. 31st,' 'Sept. 4th,' 'May 14th,' respectively.

(iii) 'Jan. 2' is expressed *A.D. IV. NON. IAN.* (= *ante diem quartum Nonas Ianuarias*); 'Sept. 6th' is *A. D. VIII. ID. SEPT.* (= *ante diem octavum Idus Septembres*); 'Sept. 14th' is *A.D. XVIII. KAL. OCT.* (= *ante diem duodevicesimum Kalendas Octobres*); and so on. Note the curious attraction by which *ante diem quartum Nonas*, &c., is used instead of *tertio die ante Nonas*, i. e. 'on the fourth day before the *Nones*,' &c.

1. He came to the throne on July 19th, 1418. 2. Augustus left the city upon the 1st of August, and fought the battle of Actium on the 2nd of September, B. C. 31. 3. The tribunes of the Plebs used to enter upon their office on the 13th of December. 4. The first Decemvirs for the drawing-up of the laws entered upon office on May 15th, B. C. 451. 5. The Romans were defeated by the Gauls in the battle of the Alia July 16th, B. C. 390, according to the Roman Calendar. 6. The battle of Lake Thrasymene was fought upon June 23rd, B. C. 217; that of Cannae upon August 2nd, B. C. 216. 7. From the year 223 to 153 B. C. the consuls entered office upon the 15th of March; after the latter date, upon the 1st of January. 8. The feast of the Regifugium was held on the 24th of February, to celebrate the expulsion of the kings in the year of the City 244.

EXERCISE LXXXVII.

(Motion, Place, Time, and Distance: easy.)

Note.—Remember the fundamental rules:

(1) **Motion towards** must always be expressed by the **Accusative**;

(2) **Rest in a place** by the **Ablative** (except in the case of Singular names of towns of the 1st and 2nd Declensions);

(3) **Time how long, and space how great**, by the **Accusative**;

(4) **Difference of Measure**, whether of Time or Space, by the **Ablative**.

1. He has gone to bed. He has remained in bed full twelve hours. 2. He can walk four miles an hour

with ease. 3. My horse is much swifter than yours. 4. The sun is many times bigger than the moon. 5. Early to bed and early to rise, makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise. 6. Africa is half as large again as Asia. 7. Don't carry coals to Newcastle¹, nor burn your candle at both ends. 8. The wind is in the North. 9. There was a deep morass behind the Roman army. 10. Better be king at Gabii than courtier at Rome. 11. For ten whole days have I been expecting you: how long do you mean to stay here, where to go to next? 12. I would rather live one month at Athens than a year in Italy.

¹ The Latin proverb is 'to carry timber into a wood.'

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

§ 105. The Subjunctive Mood differs essentially from the Indicative. The Indicative states a thing positively, as a fact; the Subjunctive states a thing either as conceived or desired by the mind; or else in its relation to some other fact or idea, or to some other person's thought or statement.

§ 106. Hence, grammatically, the Subjunctive may be used in two ways:

(1) **In Independent Sentences**, when it expresses directly some conception of the mind;

(2) **In Subordinate Clauses**, when it is dependent, both in thought and grammar, upon a Principal Clause.

§ 107. The Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses

will be treated in Part II : in **Independent Sentences** it may be used with six distinct meanings :

(1) **Potential** ; when a doubtful or modified statement is made :

Velim hoc facias,

I could wish you to do this ;

Germanos indigenas esse crediderim,

I am inclined to believe that the Germans are indigenous ;

Dixerit (dicat) quispiam te in hoc errasse,

Some one may perhaps say that you have been mistaken in this.

(2) **Deliberative** ; when a person asks reflectively what he is to do, or should have done :

Quid Romae faciam ?

What am I to do at Rome ?

Quid tam loquaciter litigioso responderet ?

What was he to answer to so long-winded a litigant ?

(3) **Optative** ; expressing a wish :

Ne vivam, si scio !

May I perish if I know !

Utinam promissa liceret—Non dare !

Would that it were open to me not to give a promise !

Quod utinam ipse fecisset !

Would that he himself had done it !

(4) **Hortative** or **Jussive** (the term *Hortative* being specially appropriate to the 1st Person, the term *Jussive* to the 2nd and 3rd Persons) :

Moriamur, et in media arma ruamus,
Let us die and run into the thick of the fight ;
 Sit gravis oratio, nec infaceta,
Let your language be dignified, but not dull ;
 Davus sis comicus atque—Stes capite obstipo,
Be the Davus of comedy, and stand with bent head ;
 Ne dixeris * hoc ulli,
Don't tell this to a soul.

(5) **Conditional** ; with a Subordinate or *if*-clause (*protasis*) expressed or understood :

Amasses eum si cognosses,
You would have loved him had you known him ;
 Crederes mortuos,
You would believe them to be dead (i. e. if you saw them).

(6) **Concessive** ; where an hypothesis is granted for argument's sake :

Fuerit Lucilius, inquam,—Comis et urbanus,
Granted, I say, that Lucilius was a gracious and refined writer ;
 Sed haec omnia falsa sint atque inania,
But granted that † all these charges be false and groundless.

* Remember that in Prohibitions the Perf. Subj. is the proper tense to use : the Imper. only to slaves or children, or in poetry : the Pres. Subj. also is poetical. Note however that the usual mode of forbidding is to use some periphrasis, such as *noli facere, cave ne facias*, &c.

† Such clauses are *practically* Subordinate, as they require an apodosis to complete the sense : ' Granted these things are false : *what then ?* ' There is little real distinction between the Concessive and Jussive senses.

Note.—We may put these six uses shortly thus : (1) **Potential** : *hoc dicat*, ‘he may say this.’ (2) **Deliberative** : *quid dicam* ? ‘What am I to say?’ (3) **Optative** : *hoc dicat*, ‘may he say this!’ (4) **Hortative** : *hoc dicat*, ‘let him say this.’ (5) **Conditional** : *hoc dicat*, ‘he would say this (if . . .).’ (6) **Concessive** : *hoc dicat*, ‘granted that he says this (. . . what then?)’

EXERCISE LXXXVIII.

(*Subjunctive used independently.*)

1. What was I to do? Was I to pronounce him innocent, when I knew he had been guilty of the gravest crimes? 2. What am I to say? I can scarcely affirm that he is mad, but I do assert that his acts are the acts of a madman. 3. I would do anything rather than disbelieve the evidence of my own eyes. 4. Granted that Hannibal was a general of consummate ability; are we on that account to forget Alexander, Hamilcar, Camillus, and the other great commanders whom various countries have produced? 5. Let us rather die with honour than fall into the hands of a perfidious enemy. 6. Under all circumstances you should study moderation, and avoid ever the ‘too much,’ whether in word or deed. 7. Would that we had shown courage at the time when it was most needed! May we even now learn to bear our misfortunes with equanimity!

EXERCISE LXXXIX.

(*Subjunctive used independently.*)

1. Are we to believe everything we hear? Is there to be no end put to lying and slandering?

Better be condemned at once than die by degrees of weariness and despair. 2. 'To whom was I to turn?' asked Cicero: 'I am not the man to be diverted from my enquiry by difficulties; but I could wish that you, the injured persons, had afforded me more assistance.' 3. I would rather that this had not been done. 4. Would that I had consulted only my own interests when I might have done so with impunity! 5. May I perish if I do not think you would rather be consulted by Caesar than by me. 6. Would that the Roman people had but one neck! 7. Let us hope for what we wish, but let us endure whatever happens. 8. Do not cross the Iberus; have nothing to do with the Romans. 9. You may escape by flight those evils which you cannot bear. 10. May they all be well and flourish: may they all obtain whatever they desire!

Recapitulatory Exercises upon Part I.*

EXERCISE XC.

(*Easy.*)

1. My youngest daughter is blind of one eye. 2. Do you not think very little of his wife? 3. He has taught his sons all the arts. 4. I struck him on the head with a stick of his own, six feet long. 5. Having loved tenderly all his life, he himself

* The Recapitulatory Exercises are so framed as each to contain illustrations of the whole of Part I.

died beloved. 6. I used one of his swords; have you kept one for yourself? 7. One must not trust everybody. 8. He buried the killed; those wounded he tended carefully. 9. He would run ten miles every day on an empty stomach. 10. Seeing is better than believing. 11. The richer a man is, the greater are his cares. 12. The rich are envied by none but foolish persons. 13. The sooner you oppose the enemy the more certain will be your victory.

EXERCISE XCI.

(Easy.)

1. Talking and doing are two different things. 2. Having been appointed to his province, Caesar set out for Gaul with all speed, and arrived there in four days. 3. Are we to believe everything we hear? 4. Is there to be no end to the false and malicious slanders of wicked men? 5. Give me a little water. 6. Do you prefer town to country? 7. Is there any place which conduces¹ more to sleep and appetite than the bright little town of Baiae? 8. You would have thought that those left on the field were all killed. 9. I could wish that my sons were a little taller. 10. It does not appear that Livy had any opinion of² the good faith of the Carthaginians. 11. Between the two camps ran a river very difficult to cross. 12. You ought to have pardoned your old comrade in arms.

¹ Use *inducere*.

² Use *admirari*.

EXERCISE XCII.*(Easy.)*

1. Why not send Labienus to the proconsul's assistance? 2. Let us fly now that all hope of safety has been lost. 3. The censors let out the building of the basilica to contractors. 4. He was a man of undoubted talent and great goodness of heart; he died only three months before his eldest son. 5. Having been appointed to the command of the army, he chose Titus for his lieutenant. 6. Would that you had told me that fact as soon as you were informed of it yourself! 7. The more you saw of him the less you liked him. 8. Never put a sword in a madman's hand. 9. Everybody's business is nobody's business. 10. Every time you forgive a man, you weaken him, and strengthen yourself. 11. O that you would give me these fields to till! 12. What was he to say, what was he to do? Who would pity him in the absence of all his friends?

EXERCISE XCIII.

1. Remus claimed the kingdom for himself on account of the six great vultures that he had seen first. 2. But Romulus, the other brother, being eager for rule, resisted Remus because a greater number had appeared to him. 3. Thus it was that the Senate made Romulus king; and Remus, having asked his brother for forgiveness, envied him no more. 4. It is no disgrace to a brave man to have been defeated; but all the best men prefer death to dis-

honour. 5. Having marched for fifteen days across the Alps by most difficult roads, Hannibal arrived in Italy ten days sooner than Scipio. 6. Deeming safety of more importance than victory, he set out to lay waste the plains, his army being divided into three portions. 7. 'If you remain longer at Miletus,' says he, 'you will have to perish by disease; at Athens you can maintain yourself by writing books.' 8. Verres having been accused of bribery, Cicero was advised by his friends to go to Sicily to find witnesses against him.

EXERCISE XCIV.

1. The people of Rome were ruled by Tarquin the Proud for many years, and gave him almost unlimited power. 2. Proud in spirit, he spared no one who opposed him, and thought of nothing but his own interest. 3. Fearing resistance from the people of Gabii, he sent them his son Sextus as governor, who by means of great severity taught them obedience. 4. 'I have a fair daughter,' said he: 'she shall marry that man, whoever he may be, who shall show himself worthy of my favour.' 5. Within a space of two days, all the noblest men flocked to Gabii from the country: but forgetting his promises, he shut all of them up in prison. 6. Some of their number he accused of treachery; others, indifferent to his promise and to everything but his own security, he put to death without a trial. 7. The rest, in pity or from remorse, he released. These said, 'We must now resist the tyrant at any price.'

EXERCISE XCV.

1. That man only is wise who in all circumstances obeys the voice of reason. 2. Of the three Curiatii, one was slain while running, the second was transfixed by Horatius, the third yielded himself up to the conqueror. 3. When you have taught me wisdom, I shall call you the wisest of all men, Socrates himself not excepted. 4. Sick at heart, anxious for repose, I stayed five months at Thurii, and returned to Rome quite well. 5. Whosoever is kind to his own kindred, that man can be trusted by everyone. 6. Rich in money, but poor in spirit, he was unworthy of any honour, and was justly condemned to death. 7. After having led his army two hundred and thirty-five miles, he sold them for a big price to the enemy. 8. The consuls having heard the news of the defeat, convened a meeting for the election of praetors, with the approbation of all good citizens.

EXERCISE XCVI.

1. I have two sisters, one of whom is tall, but the other is very small of stature. 2. Have you any money? If you have not got any, I will ask my father for ten gold pieces. 3. He is a person of great bodily strength, but weak in mind, and altogether destitute of common sense. 4. Having stopped three months at Rome, he was just going to leave for Athens when he took ill of fever. 5. He who spares the rod spoils the child; the wisest men all

bring up their sons on this principle. 6. Evil must always be resisted with all our strength ; better die than yield to our own evil inclinations. 7. Having been chosen by his father to command the army after the consul's death, he gained six victories in a space of thirty days. 8. Eager for fame, generous of heart, and well fitted by nature for ruling men, he ascended the throne in spite of the opposition of his enemies.

EXERCISE XCVII.

1. The people of Gaul has always been at enmity with that of Germany ; the latter is the braver people, but the former the more impetuous and eager for glory. 2. We must always love those that love us ; those unfriendly to us we ought to pardon and assist as far as possible. 3. Most men prefer pleasure to duty ; there are some who think only of themselves, but there are others to whom it is a pleasure to consult their neighbours' interests. 4. Daring in spirit, of great personal beauty, and indifferent to discomfort ¹, he was the darling of his own soldiers and the terror of his enemies. 5. Whenever the Romans established a new colony, they would send out three or four commissioners to draw up laws and divide the land amongst the colonists. 6. These tales are painful to tell, and difficult to believe ; but if the women are found guilty of the crimes laid to their charge, be sure that they will be despised by every one. 7. Having sailed for Sicily in early spring, he remained at Syracuse for the entire summer, and

arrived in Rome on the 10th of October, A. D. 1890. 8. The fair stall-holders² asked money of every one ; some good things they offered for sale cheap, many bad things dear : when the account was finally cast up, it was discovered that they had made up a sum of three million six hundred and seventy-five thousand sesterces.

¹ *mala.* ² Use *mercatrix*.

EXERCISE XCVIII.

1. A certain miser who had lived many years at Athens, when dead and buried, arrived at the banks of the Styx in company with many other souls. 2. Desirous of being ferried over the river with the rest, he presented himself to Charon on the third day, and asked for a passage across. 3. But Charon, who was evidently a gentleman of much worldly wisdom, and as anxious for gain as the miser himself, demanded of him his fare. 4. Upon this the miser, desirous of avoiding payment, threw himself into the river, and in spite of all clamour and opposition, made straight for the other bank by swimming. 5. Thereupon all Hades rose in tumult ; and the miser having been caught and convicted of impiety, each of the judges was asked his opinion as to what punishment would best fit so heinous a crime. 6. One said one thing, one another : at last Minos spake forth : ' Let us invent,' says he, ' some new and unheard-of penalty : let this impious man be sent back to earth to see what use his heirs are making of his riches.'

PART II.

The Compound Sentence.

§ 108. A Simple Sentence, as we have seen, consists of one Subject and one Predicate—or it may be more than one of each linked together by Co-ordination—without any Subordinate Clauses.

A Compound Sentence is one in which the main Sentence (or Principal Clause, as it is termed) has one or more Subordinate Clauses, i. e. Clauses grammatically dependent upon it, each with a Subject and Predicate of its own.

§ 109. Subordinate Clauses may be of three kinds:

- A. Adjectival Clauses;
- B. Substantival Clauses;
- C. Adverbial Clauses.

§ 110. An Adjectival Clause is one which qualifies some Noun or Pronoun exactly in the same way as an Adjective qualifies the Noun with which it agrees. Thus if we say

Savages *who eat men* are called cannibals;

the Clause *who eat men* is manifestly equivalent to an Adjective qualifying the Noun *savages*; and

the Adjective *man-eating* might be substituted for it. Similarly, the sentence

The man *who is merciful* spares his beast,
is exactly equivalent to

The *merciful* man spares his beast.

An **Adjectival Clause** is therefore simply an **expanded Adjective**, used for variety or emphasis, or to express some quality too complex to be expressed by a single word. It must be introduced by a Relative, or by some word such as *unde*, *ubi*, *quando*, &c., which is equivalent to a Relative.*

§ 111. A **Substantival Clause** is one which stands to a Verb in the relation of a Substantive, either in the Nom. or in the Acc.; i. e. either as Subject, or as Object, to the Verb. If we say

Rotundam esse tellurem omnibus notum est,
(*The fact*) *that the world is round is known to all*;

it is clear that the clause *rotundum esse mundum* (= 'the roundness of the world') is equivalent to a Subs. in the Nom., being the Subject to the Verb *notum est*. So in the sentence

Factum est ut omnes interficerentur,
The result was that all were killed;

* In German, whole sentences may be made into Adjs. by placing an Article at the beginning with its Substantive at the end: as in the telegram *bitte die am zehnten Juni in Ihrem Hotel unter dem Kopfkissen in Numero Zwölf hinterlassene Uhr nach Genf zu schicken*, 'Please send to Geneva the-on-the-10th-June-in-your-hotel-under-the-pillow-in-number-12-left-behind-watch,' i. e. 'the watch which was left behind on the 10th,' &c.

the clause *ut omnes interficerentur* is the Subject to the Verb *factum est*, the whole clause being equivalent to 'the killing of all resulted.'

If again we say

Sensit se in hostes delapsus esse,

He perceived that he had fallen amongst enemies ;

or

Effecit ut omnes interficerentur,

He caused them all to be put to death ;

it is plain that the clauses *se in hostes delapsus esse*, and *ut omnes interficerentur*, are equivalent to Nouns in the Acc. case, being Objects to the Transitive Verbs *sensit* and *effecit* respectively.

§ 112. An Adverbial Clause is one which qualifies a Verb in the same way as an Abverb does, i. e. by stating some of the attendant circumstances of its action, especially *the purpose, the result, the cause, the time, or some condition, contrast, or comparison*. Such clauses are necessarily introduced by some Subordinating Conjunction appropriate to the meaning to be conveyed ; or by the Relatives *qui, unde, ubi, &c.* which, by a special idiom, may be used not merely as Relatives, but so as to convey, in addition, the Adverbial meanings of *purpose, result, cause, or contrast*. (For this use of the Relative, see below § 154.)

A. Adjectival Clauses.

§ 113. **Adjectival Clauses** present no difficulties of construction. They must be introduced by *qui*, or by some other Relative word. The Verb will be in the Indicative, unless the Subjunctive be required by some cause outside the clause itself, i. e. by the meaning of the Principal Clause on which it depends. The Tense will be as in other sentences; the only difference from English is that an Adjectival Clause dependent on a Fut. Verb has its own Verb in the Future. Thus *ibunt qui poterunt*, 'they will go who can'; *rogabo quos videro*, 'I shall ask those whom I see.'

Note.—The main difficulty with Relative Clauses in Latin is to distinguish merely Adjectival Clauses—where *qui*, *ubi*, *quando*, &c. simply mean 'the person who,' 'the place where' or 'the time when'—from those cases in which the Relative carries with it the additional meaning of *purpose*, *result*, or *cause*. These latter clauses are in fact not Adjectival, but Adverbial Clauses.

EXERCISE XCIX.

(*Adjectival Clauses: easy.*)

1. The man who hesitates is lost.
2. That man who is¹ the first to enter the city will receive a golden crown.
3. He will see all those who desire to see him.
4. Caesar never forgot any one who had done him a service in his younger days.
5. As often as he went to Athens, he would listen to Zeno's lectures.²
6. Whenever he wanted to know anything, he would

go to those who had special knowledge on the subject.

7. I laid down my purse in the very place where you have found this one. 8. I can count on my fingers the persons whom I wish to injure. 9. Persons who flatter are seldom to be believed.

¹ Remember that a Verb subordinate to a Fut. Verb must itself be Fut. Exactly so in French: *je viendrai quand je pourrai*, I shall come *if I can.*' Similarly, like Latin, the French use the Fut. Perf. where English (incorrectly) uses the Present or the Perfect: 'I shall call on him when I have arrived' (or '*when I arrive*'), *Je lui ferai une visite quand j^e serai arrivé.* See Ex. VI, n. 9.

² Omit 'the lectures.'

EXERCISE C.

(*Adjectival Clauses.*)

1. Tarquin died at Cumae, to which town he had betaken¹ himself upon the defeat of the Latins at Lake Regillus. 2. Never having been instructed in the principles of² philosophy, he could not with patience hear the Stoics, who held that virtue was superior to happiness. 3. Those men who take the greatest pains to secure³ happiness are generally less successful in the search than those who think only of the good of⁴ others. 4. As the Romans began to retreat at that point, M. Valerius, who was in command of the left wing, put⁵ spurs to his horse and came up to support the wavering line. 5. I can forgive young men for being reckless⁵; I cannot forgive old men who stir up one war after⁶ another. 6. The Romans captured the enemy's camp with the same rush which⁷ had burst through their line. 7.

Why did you impel him to use language ⁸ which has stirred up odium not only against him, but against our principles and our order as a whole ⁹?

¹ 'To betake oneself': *se conferre*.

² Say 'philosophy.'

³ Say 'follow with the greatest zeal.'

⁴ 'To think of the

good of': *consulere*, with Dat.

⁵ 'for being reckless': use

either a Noun, or *quod* with the Indic.

⁶ Use *ex*.

⁷ Say

'with which they.'

⁸ 'To use language': *ea dicere*.

⁹ 'as

a whole': say 'all,' or 'the whole of.'

EXERCISE CI.

(Adjectival Clauses.)

1. He was buried on the same hill and close to the very spot in which his distinguished father lies. 2. On seeing the faces of those killed when fighting against him, Caesar repented that he had involved his country in war ¹. 3. Some of those ² who joined Caesar were senators, some were philosophers and men of letters; but the greater number belonged to the dregs of the people. 4. During all the years that ³ the English pursued a conquering career in India, not a single able native general arose to withstand ⁴ the foreigner. 5. Does yonder monster, pray, appear to you to be more worthy of this great honour than those who send you out to colonies with gifts of lands and houses? 6. The wounded of whom there was still some hope ⁵, he ordered to be tended carefully; those at the point of death he left where they were upon the field of battle.

¹ Say 'brought war upon.'
Abl. rather than the Gen.

² 'of those': use *ex* with the

³ Note what 'that' stands for

here.

⁴ 'to withstand' has here a sense either of *purpose*

or *consequence* : use therefore *qui* with the Subj. ⁵ If a definite, known number of wounded are referred to, the clause is Adjectival : if the meaning is general, = '*such wounded as seemed likely to recover*,' &c., the Clause is Consecutive and requires the Subj. See below § 154.

EXERCISE CII.

(*Adjectival Clauses.*)

1. Turning to Publius, who stood near him, he remarked : 'If all your countrymen are such as these whom I have fought to-day¹, I shall do well if I return home without disaster.' 2. He cut down as many poppies as there were notable men in the city, and said, 'Go, deal with your enemies in the same way as I have treated these poppies.' 3. The tribunes had weighed out as large a sum of money as had been agreed upon²; nevertheless, the Gauls were by no means satisfied. 4. There are some who³ do not possess riches; there is one who does not care to possess them. 5. The persons whom you saw to-day are not of a kind to desire to have as friends. 6. This Gaul is not of a kind to be terrified by threats: he is a man of the same spirit as those who fell in battle yesterday.

¹ Did he refer to a certain definite number whom he had fought, or to men 'of such distinction as' he had fought? Fix your Mood accordingly. The same distinction is illustrated in each of the sentences of this Ex. ² 'Had been agreed upon': use *constare* or *convenire* Impers.

³ The phrase *sunt qui* usu. takes the Subj. because it refers, not to definite individuals, but to a class who have some common characteristic: 'there are persons of a kind to'. But if definite individuals are referred to, the Indic. must be used.

B. Substantival Clauses.

§ 114. A **Substantival Clause**, as defined above, is one which stands to a Verb in the relation of a Substantive, either as Subject or as Object; it may also stand in Apposition to a Pronoun.

The following examples show how the same clause may stand to a Verb in these three relations:

Potest fieri *ut ille creetur consul* (**Subject**);

Efficiam *ut ille creetur consul* (**Object**);

Id certe efficiam, *ut ille creetur consul* (**Apposition**).

§ 115. There are four kinds of Substantival Clauses:

I. Clauses which contain an Accusative with the Infinitive, and stand as Object (or as Subject) to a Verb of Saying or Thinking (**Oratio Obliqua** or **Indirect Statement**);

II. Clauses which are introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun or Conjunction (such as *quis*, *ecquis*, *an*, *cur*, &c.), and which stand as Object (or as Subject) to a Verb of Asking (**Indirect Question**);

III. Clauses introduced by *ut* or *ne* followed by the Subjunctive, which stand as Object (or as Subject) to a Verb of *Commanding* or *Entreating* (**Indirect Command** or **Desire**);

IV. Analogous to III, Clauses introduced by *ut* or *ne* (after certain Verbs and phrases of *decreeing*, *advising*, *permitting*, *striving*, *effecting*, *fearing*, and

the like*); also, Clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne* or *ut non*, with the Subjunctive (sometimes by *quod* with the Indicative), which stand as Subject to certain Impersonal Verbs of *happening*, *resulting*, &c., or to various impersonal phrases expressive of facts or states. Amongst the more common of these are : *evenit ut*, *accidit ut*, *contingit ut* ; *fieri posse ut* ; *tantum abest ut* ; *reliquum est ut*, *restat ut* ; *aequum*, *iustum*, or *necesse est ut*, &c.

Note.—It is commonly stated that the *ut* (or *ne*) introducing Clauses under the heads III and IV given above is the same as *ut Final* ('in order that') or *ut Consecutive* ('so that'). But this is not so : certainly not in all cases. In these Substantival Clauses *ut* has a special defining force, standing for 'namely that,' or 'the fact that,' and should be called the *ut* of Definition, or *ut Definitive*. Thus :

Fieri potest ut iratus dixerit,
It may be the case that he spoke in anger ;

Non committam ut tibi insanus videar,
I will not commit (the fault of) appearing mad to you ;

Ego vero istos tantum abest ut ornem, ut effici non possit
quin eos oderim,

I am so far from complimenting those gentlemen, that I
cannot help hating them : lit. the fact that (Definitive)
I adorn those men is so far removed that (Consecutive)
I cannot help hating them.

So with *statuo ut*, 'I determine (the fact) that' ; *metuo ut*, 'I have fears (as to the fact) that' ; *suadeo ut*, 'I give (this) advice, namely

* Some Verbs with the above meanings take the Infinitive Prolatively (see § 27), such as *conor*, *cupio*, *iubeo*, *patior*, *sino*, *volo*, and often *prohibeo*, *statuo*, *veto*. It is one of the nicest points in Latin to know exactly with what Verbs the Infin. may or may not be used.

that'; *reliquum erat ut fugeremus*, 'it remained that we should flee': in none of these cases is the Final or Consecutive meaning appropriate. The same meaning is (rarely) expressed by *quod* with the Indicative:

Quod rediit (Subject) nobis mirabile videtur,
The fact that he returned seems strange to us;

Addo quod (Object) idem—Non horam tecum esse potes,
Add the fact that you cannot remain identical with yourself
for a whole hour together.

I. ORATIO OBLIQUA, OR INDIRECT STATEMENT.

§ 116. The essence of the *Oratio Obliqua* is that it gives a statement (or a thought), not in the words actually used by the speaker, but as reported either by himself or by another. In this case, the Statement or Thought must be introduced by a *Verb of stating or thinking* (one of the *Verba Sentiendi et Declarandi*), whether expressed or understood, such as 'He said that' or 'He thought that'; and the Statement or Thought itself forms grammatically an Object-Clause, equivalent to a Noun in the Accusative after such Introducing Verb.

§ 117. If a man, Caius, says, 'This is a fine day'; or 'I have and I hold'; he uses the *Oratio Recta*, and one who reports these sayings may, if he chooses, reproduce the speaker's exact words by *quotation*: '*Hic dies,*' *inquit** *Caius,* '*pulcher est*'; or *Ait*

* Obs. that in quoting any one's words Latin usually employs the Verb *inquam*, placing it *after* the first or second word in a sentence. Cf. our 'quoth he.'

Caius, 'habeo et teneo.' When a speech is thus given in the speaker's own words, it is said to be given in **Oratio Recta**.

§ 118. But if a person reports a saying **indirectly** or **obliquely**, he does not use the words actually spoken by the speaker; he must use the Tenses and the Pronouns appropriate to his own point of view, in relation to the person, and the time, when the speech was made.

Thus the above sentence 'This is a fine day' (**Oratio Recta**) becomes

- (1) If reported in the Present,

He says that it is a fine day;

- (2) If reported in the Past,

He said that it was a fine day.

The sentence 'I have and I hold' becomes

- (1) In the Present,

He says that he has and holds;

- (2) In the Past,

He said that he had and held.

All such indirect reporting, whether of speech or thought, is called **Oratio Obliqua**.

Some of the changes involved in the use of **Oratio Obliqua** are essential to the sense, and are common to all languages; some are peculiar to Latin. In Latin, Pronouns Moods and Tenses undergo the following changes.

Pronouns in Oratio Obliqua.

§ 119. The Pronouns and Adverbs of Time in Oratio Obliqua **must be altered** to suit the altered relations of the persons represented as speaking, or being spoken to. As a rule (but see Note below) speeches are reported in the 3rd Person : hence all Pronouns are usually in that person. In Latin,

Ego, meus, nos, noster, become *se, suus* (in the Nom. *ipse*) ;

Tu, vos, tuus, vester, become *ille, illi, illius, illorum*, &c. ;

Hic and *iste* become *ille* and *is* ;

Nunc becomes *tum*. Thus

- { ‘Non **ego nunc** pauper sum’ (*Recta*) ;
- { *Dixit se tunc* pauperem non esse (*Obliqua*) ;
- { ‘Non **hic** quidem sed **iste** errat’ (*Recta*) ;
- { *Puto non illum* quidem, sed **eum** (*or eum alterum*)
- { errare (*Obliqua*).

These changes are a matter of common sense ; they are as necessary in English as in Latin. But Latin has this great advantage, that by means of the Reflexive *se, suus*, it can show whether the 3rd person refers to the person speaking, or to some one else. Thus the confused English sentence, ‘*He* said that *he* would follow *him*,’ becomes perfectly clear in the Latin *Dixit se eum* (*or illum*) *secuturum esse*.

Note.—It is commonly said that the 1st and 2nd Persons disappear entirely from Oratio Obliqua : but this is not so. A speech may be reported *by* the person who made it, and *to* the persons to whom it was originally addressed. In this case the Pronouns remain unaltered. A general says to his troops,

'I order *you* to abstain from plunder.'

Next day he reminds them,

'Remember that *I* have ordered *you* to abstain from plunder.'

The speech is now in the Oratio Obliqua, but the Pronouns are not changed, as the persons speaking and addressed are the same as before.

Mood in Oratio Obliqua.

§ 120. In the Oratio Obliqua the Indicative disappears entirely; no Mood can be used except the Infinitive and the Subjunctive. The rule is as follows:—

In changing from the Oratio Recta to the Oratio Obliqua, every Verb of a Principal Clause must be put into the Infinitive; every Verb of a Subordinate Clause must be put into the Subjunctive.

Thus

{	Habeo et teneo, <i>I have and I hold;</i>
	Dicit se habere et tenere,
{	<i>He says that he has and holds;</i>
	Qui hoc putant errant,
{	<i>Those who think so are wrong;</i>
	Dicit eos qui hoc putent errare,
{	<i>He says that those who think so are wrong.</i>

Tenses in Oratio Obliqua.

§ 121. In regard to Tense, we must carefully distinguish between Principal Clauses and Subordinate Clauses.

Tenses in Principal Clauses.

§ 122. In Principal Clauses the Tense depends not upon the absolute time of the state or action

indicated by the Verb, **but on the time relatively** to that of the Introducing Verb. The rule is :

(1) If the Verb in Oratio Obliqua denotes *the same time as* that of the Introducing Verb, it must be in the Present Infinitive, whether the action itself be in the Past, the Present, or the Future. Thus :

- (a) Dicunt (dixerunt) Caesarem aegrotare,
They say (have said) that Caesar is ill;
- (b) Dixerunt (dicebant, dixerant) Caesarem aegrotare,
They said (were saying, &c.) that Caesar was ill;
- (c) Dicent Caesarem aegrotare,
They will say that Caesar is ill.

In (a) the illness is spoken of as Present ; in (b) as Past ; in (c) as Future : yet in all three cases alike **the Present Infinitive** must be used **because the illness, and the statement about the illness, are contemporaneous.**

(2) If the Verb in Oratio Obliqua denotes *a time previous to* that of the Introducing Verb, it must be in the Perfect Infinitive :

- (a) Audio (audivi) multos periisse,
I hear (have heard) that many have perished;
- (b) Audivi (audiebam, audiveram) multos periisse,
I heard (was hearing, &c.) that many had perished;
- (c) Audiām multos periisse,
I shall hear that many have perished.

In each case **the Perfect Infinitive** must be used **because the perishing is stated as taking place previous to the hearing.**

(3) If the Verb in Oratio Obliqua denotes *a time subsequent to* that of the Introducing Verb, it must be in the Future Infinitive :

- (a) Negat (negavit) te rem bene gesturum esse,
He says (has said) that you will not succeed;
- (b) Negavit (negaverat, &c.) te rem bene gesturum esse,
He said (had said) that you would not succeed;
- (c) Negabit te rem bene gesturum esse,
He will say that you will not succeed.

In each case **the Future Infinitive** must be used **because the failure** is spoken of as being **subsequent to the statement** about it.

EXERCISE CIII.

(*Oratio Obliqua in Principal Clauses : easy.*)

1. He says that the consul is living. He says that the consul has died. He says that the consul died yesterday at four o'clock. He says that the consul will die. 2. He believes that the king is alive. He believes that the king was alive. He believes that the king has been alive. He believes that the king will be alive. 3. There is a report that the emperor is being killed. There is a report that the emperor has been killed. There is a report that the emperor was killed by his own son. There is a report that the emperor will be killed¹. 4. There was a report that the emperor would be killed; others said that he had been killed already. 5. Men assert that the world is round. Men will assert that the world is

round. Men have asserted that the world is round. Men asserted that the world was round. 6. We believed that the consul was being slain. We believed that the consul was slain. We believed that the consul had been slain. We believed that the consul would be slain. 7. Caesar declared that he was conquering the enemy. Caesar declared that he would conquer the enemy. Caesar declared that he had conquered the enemy. 8. All men will think that he is telling the truth. All men will think that he has told the truth. All men will think that he will tell the truth.

¹ Instead of the Fut. Infin. Pass. it is more usual to employ the periphrasis *fore ut* or *futurum esse ut*, with the Subj. Similarly the English 'would have been', when it has to be expressed in the Infin., must be translated by *futurum fuisse ut*, lit. 'that it had been about to be that.' See § 124.

EXERCISE CIV.

(*Oratio Obliqua in Principal Clauses: easy.*)

1. Nothing is more desirable ¹ than virtue. Socrates declared that nothing was more desirable than virtue. 2. One day ² the good will be separated from the evil. We all of us believe that one day the good will be separated from the evil. 3. Rome was not built in a ³ day. Has any one asserted that Rome was built in a day? Be sure that no one will ever assert that Rome was built in a day. 4. I have often thought that the jurors ⁴ condemned Socrates against their will ⁵. Certainly the Athenians never thought

that he would be condemned; nor did they ever assert that he had been punished justly. 5. Men think that the consul must yield⁶. Men think that the consul ought to have yielded. Men thought that the consul would have to yield. 6. I think you ought to have done what your father wished. All men will think that he ought to tell the truth.⁷ All men will think that he ought to have told the truth.

¹ Use *optabilis* or *expetendus*. ² 'One day' means 'at some time or other': *aliquando*. ³ Note that 'a' here is emphatic. *Die*, by itself, would mean 'by day' as distinguished from 'by night.' ⁴ 'jurors': *iudices*. ⁵ Use *invitus*. ⁶ To express the idea 'must,' 'ought to have,' 'would have to,' use the Part. in *-dus* Impers., changing the tense of the Verb *sum* to be used with it. ⁷ Not *veritas*, which is Truth in the Abstract: say 'true things.'

Tenses in Subordinate Clauses.

§ 123. The Rule which usually governs the Tense of Verbs in Subordinate Clauses—whether Substantival or Adverbial—is, that **Primary Tenses** (i. e. *Present*, *Present-Perfect*, and *Future*) are **Subordinate to Primary Tenses**, and **Historical Tenses** (i. e. *Imperfect*, *Perfect* and *Pluperfect*) to **Historical**.* This rule applies to all Subordinate Clauses in Oratio Obliqua. Thus

(1) If the Subordinate Verb denote *the same time as* the Introducing Verb, we must use the Present in Subordination to the Present or Future; the Imperfect in Subordination to the Past:

* For qualifications to the general rule of the Consecution of Tenses, see below, § 157.

- (a) Putat
Putavit } eos qui id dicant errare,
Putabit }

He thinks
He has thought } *that those who say so are wrong;*
He will think }

- (b) Putabat
Putavit } eos qui id dicerent errare,
Putaverat }

He was thinking
He thought } *that those who said so were wrong.*
He had thought }

(2) If the Subordinate Verb denote a time previous to that of the Introducing Verb, we must use the Perfect in Subordination to the Present or Future; the Pluperfect in Subordination to the Past:

- (a) Putat (putabit) eos qui id dixerint errare,

He thinks (will think) that those who have said so are wrong;

- (b) Putabat (putavit, putaverat) eos qui id dixissent errare,

He was thinking (thought, had thought,) that those who had said so were wrong.

(3) If the Subordinate Verb denote a time subsequent to that of the Introducing Verb, we must use the Participle in *-rus*, combined with the Present Subjunctive of the Verb *esse*, in subordination to the Present and Future; the same Participle combined with the *Imperfect* in subordination to the Past:

- (a) Putat (&c.) eos qui id dicturi sint errare,

He thinks (&c.) that those who will say so are wrong;

(b) Putabat (&c.) eos qui id dicturi essent errare,
He thought (&c.) that those who would say so (lit. were about to say so) were wrong.

The Periphrasis with the Future Participle.

§ 124.—The use of the Fut. Part. in *-rus* in combination with the Verb *esse* to supply a Fut. to the Infin. and to the Subj. (illustrated above in § 122 (3), and § 123 (3)) is extremely simple, but calls for explanation.

The combination *amaturus sum* is properly a Present Fut., ‘I am in the position of one about to love,’ or ‘I am about to love’; and differs from the simple Fut. *amabo*, ‘I shall love,’ nearly in the same way as the Present Perf., ‘I have loved,’ differs from the Perf., ‘I loved.’

But in the Infin. and Subj. this special sense is lost: and the form *amaturus* in combination with *esse* or *fuisse*, is used simply to supply a Fut. and a Fut. Perf. to the Infinitive.

Similarly, the Fut. Part. in combination with *sim*, *essem*, *fuero*, or *fuissem* (as the case may be), is used to form a Present, an Imperfect, a Perfect, or a Pluperfect, when the construction requires that the sense of the Future should be combined with that of the Subjunctive.

Now when the sense of the Fut. Infin. or Subj. is thus broken up, as it were, into two parts, it must be noted that the *Futurity* is wholly expressed by the Participle, the *Mood and Tense* are wholly supplied by the Auxiliary Verb. The latter therefore must obey the rules laid down above in § 122 (1) and (2), and § 123 (1) and (2), and are in no way affected by the fact that the Participle carries a Future meaning along with it.

If this be understood, it will be apparent that the rules given above in § 122 (3), and § 123 (3) are superfluous: every Principal Clause in Oratio Obliqua must in fact obey the rules laid down in § 122 (1) and (2); every Subordinate Clause (including Indirect Questions) must obey the rules of § 123 (1) and (2). A comparison of the following examples will make this clear:

Oratio Obliqua (Principal Clause).

- (a) Dicit se *amaturum* esse,
Dicit se *amabilem* esse ;
(b) Dixit se *amaturum* fuisse,
Dixit se *amabilem* fuisse.

Oratio Obliqua (Subordinate Clause).

- (a) Putat eos qui *Stoici* sint insanire,
Putat eos qui *abituri* sint insanire ;
(b) Putavit eos qui *Stoici* essent insanire,
Putavit eos qui *abituri* essent insanire.

The construction in all the above pairs of sentences is the same. The Future meaning of the Participle has no effect upon the construction : it is treated exactly as any other Predicative word would be. Exactly the same rule is followed in **Indirect Questions** (see below, § 126) :

Compare the following pairs :

- (a) Rogo cur *tristis* sis,
Rogo cur *abiturus* sis ;
(b) Rogavi cur *tristis* esset ;
Rogavi cur *abiturus* esset ;
(c) Rogavi cur *tristis* fuisset,
Rogavi cur *abiturus* fuisset (*or fuerit*),

I asked him why he had been about to depart, i. e. why he would have departed.

These forms are important, as they supply the means for turning Conditional Clauses into Or. Obliqua. (See below, §§ 148, 149.)

EXERCISE CV.

(*Oratio Obliqua in Subordinate Clauses ; easy.*)

Note.—The Rules above given as to Mood and Tense of Subordinate Clauses in Oratio Obliqua are sometimes apparently departed from. Thus

(1) Sometimes an Adj. Clause which states some absolute fact may be transferred as a whole into Oratio Obliqua without a change of Mood :

Viri qui heri morte puniti sunt innocentes erant ;
Constat viros *qui morte heri puniti sunt* innocentes esse.

The Indic. is here allowed to remain because the fact is indisputable, and is in no way affected by the change from Orat. Rect. to Orat. Obl.

(2) Some authors—notably Tacitus—vary their tenses in Orat. Obl. and use a Pres. or a Perf. in Subordinate Clauses where the Rule demands an Imperf. or Pluperf. This is done for variety and liveliness: the author *pro tem.* writes as if his introducing Verb had been Present; then reverts again to the construction suitable to a Past Tense. And, *vice versa*, an Historical Present is often treated as a Past Tense, with a Past sequence after it. In neither instance is there any real violation of the Rule.

1. The city which he loves best of all is Athens. He says that the city which he loves best of all is Athens. 2. Those who say so are wrong. He says that those who say so are wrong. He says that those who have said so are wrong. 3. Those who said so were wrong. He asserted that those who said so were wrong. He asserted that those who had said so were wrong. He said that those about to say so were wrong. 4. Those who go¹ to Athens will become philosophers. He says that those who go to Athens will become philosophers. He says that all who have gone to Athens have become philosophers. He said that all who had gone to Athens had become philosophers. 5. That is a poor² house in which there are not many things to

spare.³ Horace says that that is a poor house in which there are not many things to spare. Horace said that that was a poor house in which there were not many things to spare.

¹ Note the Tense. ² *exilis*. ³ Use *superesse*, 'to be in abundance,' or 'to be superfluous.'

EXERCISE CVI.

(Oratio Obliqua with Subordinate Clauses: easy.)

1. As soon as he reached¹ the summit of the hill, Hannibal pointed out to his soldiers the plains of Italy. Polybius relates that as soon as Hannibal reached the top of the hill he pointed out to his soldiers the plains of Italy. 2. Hannibal told his troops that they would have abundance of good things, and that they would carry all before them, as soon as they should descend² into Italy. 3. Whilst³ Hannibal was watching the fight near the river, a picked body of Gauls charged down upon the cavalry from the mountain. Livy relates that while Hannibal was watching the fight near the river, a picked body of Gauls charged down on the cavalry from the mountain. 4. As the cavalry were emerging from the defile, the enemy charged down from the mountain. Hannibal believed that as the cavalry were emerging from the defile, the enemy would charge down from the mountain. He thought that the enemy would have made their attack before his own men emerged from the defile.

¹ What tense does the sense require? ² Note especially the difference of idiom between English and Latin. English says

'He *promised* (Pasttime) that as soon as his troops *should descend* or *descended* (at a time then Future) they would, &c.' In such cases Latin invariably uses the Plupf. where English usu. employs the Imperf.: 'He promised that as soon as his troops *had* (or *should have*) descended, they would, &c.' That is, in the case of a contingency future to a Verb in the past, Latin contemplates the contingency from a time *after* its occurrence, not from the time of the Principal Verb. Thus the English, 'I believed that, if I should see (or saw) him, I would recognise him,' becomes in Latin, *credidi me eum, si vidissem* (Plupf.) *agniturum esse*. See § 150, Note. ³ *Dum* here should take the Indic. because the charging of the Gauls occupied only *a portion* of the time during which he was watching. Had the charging filled up *all the time* of the watching, the Imperf. would be used. See § 143, Note.

EXERCISE CVII.

(*Oratio Obliqua* : various.)

1. I am persuaded¹ that the longer a man lives, the more certainly will he hold that honesty² is the best policy, both in public and in private affairs. 2. He was the first to neglect the auspices before engaging the enemy, for he thought that they must fight that day at any hazard. 3. She said that she had seen the enemy, and that they were taking the city. 4. He wrote to his friends that he had been seriously ill until the spring arrived, but that he was now well again, and would reach London in a week. 5. He told his soldiers that he could be saved from such a disgrace only by their valour; let them therefore all determine with one heart to attack an enemy whom they had already beaten in the field and stripped of his camp. 6. I am satisfied that he would never³ have made use of such language if he

had known that Caesar was present. 7. I believe now that he would ask your pardon if he thought that you would grant it. 8. Cicero always maintained that Pompey would not have been¹ defeated if he had not listened to so many counsellors. 9. I am rather inclined to believe that the reason of the indignation of the soldiers was that their general had given them no booty.

¹ There is no real 'persuasion' here: 'I am persuaded' really means 'I strongly believe.' ² 'honesty': *quod honestum est*; 'expediency': *quod utile est*. ³ 'would never have.' Say 'had never been about to.' ⁴ 'would not have been': use the periphrasis *futurum fuisse ut*, 'that it had been about to be that.'

Virtual Oratio Obliqua.

§ 125. It is to be noted that the *Oratio Obliqua* is not always openly introduced by an ordinary Verb of saying or thinking. A writer or speaker may pass almost unconsciously from the statement of a fact, to the indication of some person's words or thoughts. In English, the transition might escape undetected; but in Latin, the use of the Subjunctive enables a writer to indicate exactly whether he is stating a thing as a fact, or which he believes to be a fact, or whether he is presenting it as having passed through the mind of another.* Thus the sentence *Meletus accusavit*

* The Eton Latin Grammar (New Edition) calls this 'Described Speech,' as distinguished from 'Reported Speech' (*Orat. Obl.*), and 'Speech by Quotation' (*Orat. Recta*). But Dr. Kennedy's term 'Virtual' is to be preferred. The speech or thought is *implied*, rather than *described*, in the English; in the Latin it is clearly marked by the use of the Subj. It might be called *undetected Orat. Obliqua*, to which the Latin Subjunctive supplies the clue.

Socratem quod iuventutem corrumpibat, would mean that the accusation of corrupting the youth was, in the writer's opinion, a fact; *quod iuventutem corrumpere* would mean 'because, as he (Meletus) alleged, Socrates was a corrupter of youth.'

Similarly, in the sentence, *Laudat Panaetius Africanum quod fuerit abstinens*, the use of the Subj. *fuerit* shows that the reason assigned is that of Panaetius, not merely that of the writer.

In all such cases, the rules of ordinary Oratio Obliqua must be followed. The only difficulty lies in ascertaining whether the English states the thing as a fact, or as an opinion or statement of some person other than the writer. For example: a statesman appoints an unworthy relative to some important post. The public say, 'He gave so-and-so this post because he was his son-in-law' (*quod* with the Indic.). 'Oh no,' say the statesman's friends, 'he appointed him because he deserved it' (*quod* with the Subj.): i. e. because (the statesman believed or asserted) he was a deserving man.' Here the Latin marks the distinction, the English does not.

EXERCISE CVIII.

(*Virtual Oratio Obliqua.*)

1. It would more often occur to me to complain of my mode of life¹ than to be glad that I was alive.
2. Most writers praise Socrates for having brought down philosophy from the clouds, and for busying himself² with the life of man.
3. He congratulated me on having saved my country from a great peril,

and upon being the most eloquent speaker of my time. 4. The Sicilians complained of Verres because (as they asserted) he had put several Sicilians to death without a trial³. 5. All feel that one who confesses to having slain a man ought not to gaze upon the light of day. 6. He told me that the man whom I saw yesterday died of some sudden illness this morning. 7. They asserted that there was no street in which a house had not been hired⁴ for Otho. 8. He ordered the chickens to be thrown into the water that they might drink at least, as they would not eat. 9. He dismissed his legates unjustly, and in spite of my remonstrances, on the ground that they had mismanaged the affair. 10. Cicero reproached Antony with having acted towards him in an unfriendly manner, inasmuch as he had read a letter of his aloud⁵ in open court.

¹ 'my modê of life': say 'that I so lived.' ² 'To busy oneself with': *versari in*.

³ Say 'unheard' or 'their cause having been un-pleaded' (*indictus*).

⁴ 'To hire': *conducere*.

⁵ 'To read aloud': *recitare*.

II. INDIRECT QUESTION.

§ 126. An indirect question is a Subordinate Clause containing a question, introduced by some Interrogative word (Pronoun or Conjunction), and dependent upon some Verb of asking, or other suitable meaning.

'Am I mad?' 'Who are you?' 'What o'clock is it?' are **Direct Questions**; and have accordingly

a mark of interrogation after them. But 'He asked me whether I was mad'; 'I wonder who you are'; 'I wish I knew what o'clock it is', are statements which contain the same questions put Indirectly, in the form of Subordinate Clauses, each introduced by a Verb towards which they stand in the relation of a Substantive.

§ 127. In Latin, any Question can be put indirectly, as a Substantival Clause, subject to the following rules :

(1) The Clause containing the question must be introduced by some Interrogative word (such as *quis, ecquis, qualis, quando, cur, ubi, unde, &c.*);

(2) The Verb must always be in the Subjunctive Mood;

(3) The Tense follows the rules laid down above § 123 and § 124 for Subordinate Clauses in Oratio Obliqua. Thus

- | | | | |
|---|---------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| { | (a) Rogo | } | quid agas, |
| | Rogavi | | |
| | Rogabo | | |
| { | <i>I ask</i> | } | <i>what you are doing,</i> |
| | <i>I have asked</i> | | |
| | <i>I will ask</i> | | |
| { | (b) Rogabam | } | quid ageres (egeris), |
| | Rogavi | | |
| | Rogaveram | | |
| { | <i>I was asking</i> | } | <i>what you were doing (did);</i> |
| | <i>I asked</i> | | |
| | <i>I had asked</i> | | |
- { (a) Rogo (rogavi, &c.) quid egeris,
 I ask (have asked, &c.) what you have done;

- { (b) Rogabam (&c.) quid egisses,
I asked (&c.) what you had done.
- { (a) Rogo (rogabo) quid acturus sis,
I ask (will ask) what you will do;
- { (b) Rogabam (rogavi, &c.) quid acturus esses,
I asked (&c.) what you were going to do (or would do);
- { (c) Rogabam (&c.) quid acturus fueris (or fuisses*),
I asked what you were going to do (i. e. what you would have done).

EXERCISE CIX.

(Indirect Question : easy.)

1. I ask how much¹ money he has. I ask how much money he had. I ask how much money he has had. I ask how much money he will have. I ask how much money he would have had². 2. I asked why he was leaving³ Rome. I asked why he had left Rome. I asked why he was going to leave Rome. I asked him why he would have left⁴ Rome. 3. I will ask him what kind of life he is leading⁵. I will ask him what kind of life he has led. I will ask him what kind of life he will lead. I will ask him what answer he gave to his father yesterday. 4. I have asked him what he thinks. I have asked him what he thought. I have asked him what he will think. I have asked him what he would have thought.

¹ Use either *quantum* followed by the Gen. or *quantus* agreeing with the noun. ² 'would have had': say 'was (Aor.)

* *Fuisses* is logically the correct tense; but *fueris* is that usually employed. See below §§ 150 and 157 (5) (d).

about to have.' ³ What does 'to leave' mean? ⁴ Say 'had been about to leave.' Yet frequently the Perf. is used in these cases where we would expect the Plupf.: see § 148, Note. ⁵ 'To lead' in this sense, *agere*.

EXERCISE CX.

(*Indirect Question: easy.*)

1. Can you tell me where in the world ¹ we are? 2. It is quite uncertain in what city he was born. 3. Many questions have been asked about him, from what country he is, who was his father, what brought him here ², and what he is going to do here. 4. It is doubtful whether he or his father was the first to offer to turn informer ³. 5. I should very much like to know whether you are telling the truth ⁴ in this matter, or whether I have been misinformed ⁵. 6. It is extraordinary ⁶ to see ⁷ how men are wont to worship the rising sun ⁸. 7. Can you tell me whether his companion has gone out? 8. Please inform me to what all this is tending ⁹. 9. Who can count how many stars there are in the sky? 10. Philosophers can tell us how big the earth is, and how much bigger is the sun; how far ¹⁰ the sun is distant from us, and at what speed we travel round it; some even pretend to know how many thousands of years it has been blazing in the sky, and in how many thousands more it will go out like a candle.

¹ Use *ubinam*, or *ubinam gentium*. ² Remember that the word 'brought' implies motion. ³ Say to 'offer evidence' or 'information' (*indicium*). ⁴ See Ex. CIV, n. 7. ⁵ Say

‘that I have been taught false things.’⁶ Use *mirandum* or *mirabile*.⁷ Omit ‘to see.’⁸ If you use a metaphor, or quote a proverb, not acclimatised in Latin, use some apologetic or explanatory phrase, such as *quasi, velut, ut ita dicam, ut aiunt, &c.*⁹ ‘To tend,’ in this sense, *spectare*.¹⁰ Use *quantum*.

EXERCISE CXI.

(*Indirect Question : easy.*)

1. Brutus summoned the consuls and asked¹ them what they intended to do about the election of praetors. 2. Antony asked why Cicero was not more grateful to him, seeing that he had spared his life at Brundisium. 3. He had sent messengers to ascertain whether the barbarous tribes on the way would favour him. 4. Cicero enquired whether there was any person at Messina who desired to give evidence against Verres. 5. Tell me whom you have captured, and I will tell you whom you ought to spare. 6. He wanted to know for what offence I had struck him, and when I would give him an opportunity of returning the blow². 7. You perceive in what direction the suspicion of the jury points³, and you can with certainty predict what verdict⁴ they will give. 8. He could not tell who he was, whence he had come, or what he was about to do. 9. It is of no consequence to a philosopher whether he rots in the earth or in the sky.

¹ ‘Summoned . . . and asked; use only one Finite Verb.

² What does ‘returning a blow’ mean? ³ *tendo* or *specto*.

⁴ ‘To give a verdict’: *iudicare*; ‘a jury’: *iudices*, or sometimes collectively, *consilium*.

EXERCISE CXII.*(Indirect Question.)*

1. Upon the murder of Caēsar, Antonīus addressed the multitude, and asked them why their imperator had been slain. With one voice they replied that it was because he loved the people. 2. Had Caesar been slain at that time, it is uncertain whose leadership the people would have followed; certainly not that of¹ Antony. 3. He was anxious to know what we thought of his plan, and on what day we would inform² him of our decision. 4. I have often before now observed, Romans, how much the patricians despise you, how often they have deemed you unworthy to be³ in the same city, and enclosed by the same walls as themselves. 5. I shall ask them whether they mean to prevent a plebeian from living next door to a patrician, or standing in the same forum with him. If they say *no*,⁴ I shall ask for what reason they are seeking to annul all marriages between patricians and plebeians. 6. I beseech you, Publius, to tell us where our legions are, whether you have been deserted or have yourself deserted your commander and your army; whether we are this day conquerors or conquered; whether we are about to acquire a new province, or to fight for our own country.

¹ How must 'that of' be translated? ² 'would inform him' is equivalent to 'were about to inform him.' ³ Use *qui*: See § 154 (2). ⁴ 'To say no': *negare*.

EXERCISE CXIII.

(Indirect Question.)

1. Paradox¹ as it may seem, it is impossible to say whether Cicero or Cato contributed most to the downfall² of the republic. 2. The question at that time was³ whether Carthage should be⁴ destroyed, or be handed over unharmed⁵ to the Carthaginians. 3. Even the most strong-minded⁶ people are sometimes uncertain what to seek for, what to avoid⁴. 4. Some one or other⁷ asked Caesar why he paid so much attention to Cicero. 'You had better tell me,' he replied, 'why some animals are caught by grain, and some by chaff.' 5. Being uncertain how far the Gauls might push⁸ their advantage⁹, he gave it as his opinion¹⁰ that they should pitch their camp where they were, and await events¹¹. 6. It can be of no consequence¹² to you whether I am in pain or not. 7. There is much room for doubt¹³ as to what course we ought to take, but I will explain to you at once my own feelings¹⁴ in the matter.

¹ A 'paradox' is that which is contrary to received opinion, or to what is apparently true. ² Use *perdere*. ³ 'The question was': use the Verb *quaerere* or *agere*. ⁴ Note that when a Delib. Subj. is turned into an Indirect Quest., the Subj. of Deliberation (so to speak) is lost; one Subj. only survives. See § 157 (7). ⁵ *incolumis*. ⁶ Use *constans*. ⁷ *Nescio quis*. Note that *nescio quis* (like *mirum quantum*, *immane quantum*, *valde quam*, &c.) is treated as one word, and has no influence on the construction. ⁸ What does 'push' mean? Use *exercere* or some similar word. ⁹ *victoria*. ¹⁰ 'To give it as one's opinion' is always *censere*. ¹¹ Say 'what should happen.' ¹² Use *interesse*. ¹³ Use the verb *dubitare*. ¹⁴ Use *sentire*.

EXERCISE CXIV.*(Indirect Question.)*

1. The next day he met¹ Antony in the street; Antony asked him why he had left his province. 'To raise the price of votes² at Rome,' was his rejoinder.

2. A young gentleman, desirous of getting a character for³ wit, once⁴ asked a barber whether he had ever shaved a monkey. 3. The barber replied that he had not, but that if he would be pleased to sit down, he would see what he could do in that direction.

4. A lady of an excitable temper once asked William Whiston why it was that woman had been made out of the rib of man. 5. 'I do not know,' said he, 'whether the reason assigned to me will be agreeable to you, but I have been informed by those who know that the rib is the most crooked⁵ part of the body.'

6. I remember once seeing a very curious inscription on a tombstone. It ran⁶ thus: 'Under this stone James Burnett lies: Nobody laughs nor nobody cries: Where he's gone, and how he fares, Nobody knows nor nobody cares.'

¹ 'To meet': *obviam ire* with Dat. ² Say 'that votes may sell the dearer.' Use *veneo* (= *venum eo*). ³ Say 'who desired to be thought.'

⁴ Beware of using *semel*, which means 'once' as opp. to 'twice,' &c. ⁵ *pravus*. ⁶ What does 'it ran' mean?

EXERCISE CXV.*(Oratio Obliqua.)*

1. It has been often said that there is only one

thing which a man cannot pardon in¹ a woman. 2. He will allow her² with indifference³ to be more beautiful, to sing better, and to be more prettily dressed ; 3. but he considers that intellect has always been man's peculiar⁴ province. 4. If she show learning⁵ in her conversation, he will declare she is talkative ; if wit, he will pronounce her ill-natured. 5. There are some, indeed, who think every beautiful woman clever—at least, so long as she preserves⁶ her beauty and her youth.

6. Even Madame de Stael admits that she perceived, as she grew old⁷, that men were not able to discover that same wit in her at fifty which she had possessed at five-and-twenty ; 7. yet she was the wittiest of her sex, and every one knows that the attractions of her person were not equal to those of her mind.

¹ 'in' : say 'to.' ² Say 'will confess that she is.' ³ The Latin equivalent for 'indifferent' is *securus* : lit. 'without care' (*sine cura*). ⁴ Use *proprius*, with the proper Case. ⁵ Say 'show herself learned' : *se praeberere* or *praeestare*. ⁶ Say 'so long as she remains beautiful' : use the Subj. Every Dependent Clause in Orat. Obliq. must have its Verb in the Subj. See § 120.

EXERCISE CXVI.

(*Oratio Obliqua.*)

1. A certain man was accused of having broken a kettle¹ which he had borrowed² from a friend. 2. The counsel³ who was defending his case⁴ informed the judge before⁵ whom it was being tried⁶ that he had three pleas to advance⁷. 3. For, in the first place, he declared that the kettle was cracked when

his client⁸ had received it; 4. in the second place, that it was whole⁹ when he had returned it; 5. and lastly, that he had never had it at all.

¹ *olla*. ² 'To borrow': *mutuari*; of money, *pecuniam mutuam sumere*. ³ 'counsel': *patronus*. ⁴ Use the phrase *causam agere*. ⁵ *apud*. ⁶ See n. 4. ⁷ *proferre*: use the Subj. Or use the phrase *excusare aliquid*, 'to allege something as an excuse.' ⁸ *is cuius causam agebat*: the defendant in a civil suit may also be called *is unde petebatur*. ⁹ 'Whole' meaning 'uninjured' is *incolumis*. *Integer* also might be used.

Continuous Speeches in Oratio Obliqua.

§ 128. When a speech of any length is put into the Oratio Obliqua, two peculiarities have to be observed:

(1) Questions asked by the speaker in the 1st and 3rd Persons are not treated as single Indirect Questions, but are put into the Infin. as if they were statements; questions asked in the 2nd Person are always put into the Subj.:

Quid se exulem extorrem, pro inimico paene habitum, pro illis omnia atque antiqua patria ausum esse? Quid illi omnia pro se audere vellent?

(2) Similarly, the Relative *qui*, when used as equivalent to *et is*, to subjoin some new remark about a person or thing already mentioned, takes the Infinitive as if it were a Demonstrative Pronoun:

Nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositam esse barbaris, apud quam iam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium.

In all other respects continuous Oratio Obliqua follows the rules already given.

Let the student study carefully the following examples :

English.

Oratio Recta.

The envoys thus spoke :

(a) *Return to your country, to your houses, and to your wives, and may all blessing and good fortune attend upon you and upon the commonwealth ! Go to the Aventine, whence you set out : in that spot of good omen where you first entered upon your liberties, you will choose tribunes of the plebs : the High Priest will be in attendance to hold the election.*

Oratio Obliqua.

The envoys then urged them to return to their country, to their houses, and to their wives, praying that all blessing and good fortune might attend upon them and upon the commonwealth. Let them go to the Aventine whence they had set out ; in that spot of good omen, where they had first entered upon their liberties, they would choose tribunes of the plebs ; the High Priest would be in attendance to hold the election.

Latin.

Oratio Recta.

(a) *Quod bonum faustum felixque sit vobis reique publicae, redite in patriam, ad penates coniugesque vestras. In Aventinum ite, unde profecti estis ; ibi felici loco, ubi prima initia inchoastis libertatis vestrae, tribunos plebi creabitis ; praesto erit pontifex maximus qui comitia habeat.*

Oratio Recta.

(b) *Melioribus meis' inquit, 'vestrisque rebus reservate ista de me iudicia : nec mihi filia*

Oratio Obliqua.

Quod bonum faustum felixque esset illis reique publicae, redirent in patriam, ad penates coniugesque suas. In Aventinum irent, unde profecti essent ; ibi felici loco, ubi prima initia inchoassent libertatis suae, tribunos plebi creaturos : praesto fore pontificem maximum qui comitia haberet.

Oratio Obliqua.

Melioribus suis ipsorumque rebus reservarent ea de se iudicia : nec sibi filiam in-

Oratio Recta.

inulta honorem ullum iucundum esse patitur, nec in perturbata re publica eos utile est praeesse vobis qui proximi invidiae sint. Si quis usus mei est, nihilo minor ex privato capietur.

Oratio Obliqua.

ultam honorem ullum iucundum esse pati, nec in perturbata re publica eos utile esse praeesse illis qui proximi invidiae essent. Si quis usus sui esset, nihilo minorem ex privato captum iri (*or fore ut nihilo minor ex privato caperetur*).

EXERCISE CXVII.

(*To be turned into Oratio Obliqua, (1) After a Present Tense, (2) After a Past.*)

‘Quid expectabitis, patres conscripti? si decemviri finem pertinaciae non faciunt, ruere ac deflagrare omnia passuri estis? quod autem istud imperium est, decemviri, quod amplexi tenetis? tectis ac parietibus iura dicturi estis? non pudet, lictorum vestrorum maiorem prope numerum in foro conspici quam togatorum aliorumque? quid, si hostes ad urbem veniant, facturi estis? quid, si plebs mox, ubi parum secessionem moveatur, armata veniat? occasune urbis vultis finire imperium?—atqui aut plebs non est habenda, aut habendi sunt tribuni plebis: nos citius caruerimus patriciis magistratibus quam illi plebeiis.’

EXERCISE CXVIII.

(*To be turned into the Oratio Recta.*)

Quanto opere illos contemnerent patres se et ante videri animadvertisse, tum tamen maxime quod adeo atroces in eas rogationes coorti essent. Ecquid sentirent in quo contemptu viverent? quod spirarent, quod vocem mitterent, patres indignari, quin etiam nefas dicere esse consulem plebeium fieri. Dum nullum fastidiretur genus in quo eniteret virtus crevisse imperium Romanum: si quidem nemo post reges exactos de plebe consul factus esset, nullamne rem novam institui debere? et quod nondum esset factum, id ne si utile quidem esset, fieri oportere?

EXERCISE CXIX.

(*Oratio Obliqua.*)

There was nothing, he declared, which the Carthaginian general at that moment feared less, than that they, besieged and attacked as they were, should make an attack on his camp. Let them dare to do what the enemy believed to be impossible. The task was easy from the very fact that it seemed most difficult. He would himself lead them out in the third watch; he had ascertained that the enemy kept no proper guard, and with the first assault they would capture his camp. If they attacked then, there was some hope of success: they had already tested their

own strength, and that of their enemy. If they remained where they were, what hope, what refuge, was left for them? If they retreated, who would come to their assistance? Must he tell them once more that in an enemy's country the one chance of safety lay in some immediate success? The enemy had one army near, two more not far away; let them therefore wait for nothing but the opportunity to be afforded by the night following. Let them away, and take some rest, that they might burst fresh into the enemy's camp, and with the same spirit with which they had guarded their own.

EXERCISE CXX.

(To be translated into Oratio Recta.)

I believe that this law¹, which has been brought forward² to cement peace, will but be the cause of fresh dissensions. It will tear asunder two nations which have been joined together for six hundred years; it will break the ties of a common patriotism which, in spite of all the errors of the past, were being surely, if slowly, formed. You will say that³ the Irish have broken the law, because it was not of their own making, and that they will observe⁴ no laws which are not made by themselves. If this indeed be so, the fate of the measure now before you is doomed⁵ already: you are but adding one more to the laws made by you only to be broken by them. I prefer to ask, is the law, as it now stands, just in

itself? If it be not just, it is our duty to amend it; but if it be a just law, it is no less our duty to enforce it⁶, and to hand down to our children unbroken the inheritance⁷ of our forefathers.

¹ A law was called *rogatio* while under discussion, = 'a Bill.'

² Use *ferre*. ³ *At* or *atenim* are used in a speech to anticipate objections: 'but you will say that.' ⁴ Say 'obey': *obtemperare* or *parere*. ⁵ Use some equivalent phrase. ⁶ Use *valere*: *valent leges*, 'the laws are enforced.' ⁷ Say 'what we have received from.'

EXERCISE CXXI.

(*The English of Ex. CXX. to be translated into the Oratio Obliqua, (1) After a Past Tense, (2) After a Present.*)

III. INDIRECT COMMANDS, ENTREATIES, AND PROHIBITIONS;

IV. OTHER SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY UT, NE, UT NON, ETC.

§ 129. These all follow the same rules, and may be treated together.

The Verb must always be in the Subjunctive, after *ut* (or *ne*). This use of *ut* is analogous to that of *ut* Final or *ut* Consecutive, but is distinct from them: *ut* so used should be called **ut Definitive**, meaning 'to the effect that,' 'namely that.' See note to § 115.

The Tense follows the ordinary rule laid down

in § 123, that **Primary Tenses** are **Subordinate to Primary**, and **Historical Tenses** to **Historical**: see further § 157. Thus:

(1) **With Commands or Prohibitions:**

(a) Impero } tibi ut hoc facias;
Imperabo }

(b) Iubebam } ne hoc faceres.
Iussi }
Iusseram }

(2) **With Verbs of advising, entreating, &c.:**

(a) Suadeo (suadebo, &c.) ut (or ne) hoc facias;

(b) Persuadebam (persuasi, &c.) ut (or ne) hoc faceres.

(3) **With Verbs of effecting, &c.:**

(a) Efficio (efficiam) ut te amet;

(b) Efficiebam (&c.) ut te amaret.

(4) **With Verbs of Fearing:**

(a) Vereor (&c.) ne cadat,
I am afraid lest he fall;

(b) Verebar (&c.) ne caderet,
I was afraid lest he should fall.

Note.—Obs. particularly that *vereri ne, metuere ne*, mean ‘to be afraid that a thing *will* happen’: *vereri ut, metuere ut*, mean ‘to be afraid that a thing will *not* happen’ (lit. ‘to have fears as to its happening’). *Ut* here perh. means ‘how.’

EXERCISE CXXII.

(*Indirect Commands, Entreaties, &c.*)

1. He orders¹ his soldiers to attack the town. He

ordered his soldiers to attack the town. He will order his soldiers to attack the town. He has ordered his soldiers to attack the town. 2. I am afraid that he is² unwell. I am afraid that he has been unwell. I am afraid that he was unwell. I was afraid that the enemy would depart. I shall be afraid that the enemy depart. 3. I fear that these waters are not doing you good. I feared that these waters were not doing you good. I fear that these waters have not done you good. I fear that these waters are not likely to do you good. There will be a danger of the enemy making an assault upon the city. 4. He is advising the people to obey the law. He has advised the people to obey the law. He will advise the people to obey the law. He advised the people to obey the law.

¹ Use *imperare*. ² Remember *vereor ne*, *metuo ne*, mean 'I fear that a thing *will* happen' ; *vereor ut*, &c. 'that it will *not* happen.' See § 129, Note.

EXERCISE CXXIII.

(*Various Substantival Clauses with ut, ne, &c.*)

1. The senate passed a decree that the consuls should see that the state suffered no harm¹. 2. I was persuaded that he would come: for I had begged him not to forget his old associates, and he had promised that he would come if possible. 3. He caused the jury to acquit² his brother of the charge of bribery: for he had ordered some soldiers to stand at the door and ask each juror how he intended to

vote. 4. It has often happened that the best candidates have been rejected³ by the people out of ignorance⁴ of the public services which they have rendered. 5. The dictator ordered the master of the horse not to leave the camp till he himself should return. 6. I have ordered the tribunes to send for the fugitives and bring them back.

¹ The technical form in which the *decretum ultimum* or *supremum* was passed was, *videant consules ne quid detrimenti res publica capiat*.

² After Verbs of *causing, happening, &c.* the Imperf. is used, even of a single event. ³ Use the Imperf. See § 157. ⁴ Note that the ignorance belongs to the people.

EXERCISE CXXIV.

(*Substantival Clauses with ut, ne, &c.*)

1. A soothsayer warned Caesar not to go to the senate that day. 2. He prayed Dolabella to set out for Macedonia. 3. I am so far from yielding to the enemy that I have conquered them. 4. I am still of the opinion that we should do nothing but what seems agreeable to Caesar. 5. Our long friendship, and your unfailing kindness towards me, have encouraged¹ me to write and tell you what I considered at once conducive² to your safety, and not inconsistent³ with your self-respect. 6. On the first day in which the senate was consulted, it decreed that a double tribute should be imposed that year. 7. He proposed a motion to the people that no soldier should be prejudiced⁴ in consequence of having taken part in the secession.

¹ *Hortari* only of *persons*. ² Use either *utilis* or the Verb *conducere ad*. ³ 'To be inconsistent with': *abhorrere ab*.

⁴ Use the phrase *fraudi* or *vitiō esse alicui*.

EXERCISE CXXV.

(*Substantival Clauses with ut, ne, &c.*)

1. A law was passed forbidding any one in future to hold a meeting of the comitia outside the city. 2. He begged me to defend him against his own father, should he claim from him five million¹ sesterces. 3. If anything new² occurs, I shall take care to inform you of it. 4. He was so far from conciliating his enemies that he did not satisfy even his friends. 5. Pompey hastened to be present when the whole people congratulated me on my return from Cilicia. 6. It seldom happens that a man recovers if attacked by disease after his seventieth year. 7. Let us therefore grant this to the philosophers, that the wise man is always happy. 8. So far was he from desiring to have the province of Macedonia allotted to him³, that we could scarcely prevail upon him to leave Rome when he had obtained it.

¹ See Pref. Note to Ex. LXXXV. ² Put 'new' in the Gen.

³ Say 'that he should gain by lot' (*sortiri*).

Substantival Clauses after Impersonal or Passive phrases.

§ 130. Such Clauses are introduced by *ut, ne, or ut non* with the Subjunctive, sometimes by *quod*

with the Indicative. They are fully explained above in § 115 (4), **Note**. The rules are precisely the same as those laid down above in § 129.

{ (a) Fieri potest (poterit) ut victor evadas;
 { (b) Fieri poterat (potuit, &c.) ut victor evaderes.

{ (a) Reliquum est (erit) ut victori cedamus;
 { (b) Reliquum erat (fuerat) ut victori cederemus.

{ (a) Tantum abest ut nostra miremur, ut nobis non
 { satisfaciat ipse Demosthenes;
 { (b) Tantum abfuit ut nostra miraremur, ut nobis
 { non satisfaceret (*or* satisfecerit) ipse Demosthenes.

Note.—Obs. that in the last example the first *ut* (*abest ut*) is *ut Definitive*, defining what it is that is absent; the second *ut* is a *Consecutive ut* after *tantum*, ‘to such an extent that.’

EXERCISE CXXVI.

(*Substantival Clauses, various.*)

1. It is quite impossible that I can forgive a man who has inflicted on me so great an injury. 2. It has never happened to me to be accused of ingratitude, and this circumstance is a very great consolation to me at the present moment. 3. Orders were given not to spare a single person who had been present at the burning of the city. 4. It frequently happens that men are ungrateful to those who have heaped upon them the greatest benefits. 5. It frequently happened that Caesar attacked his enemies before they were aware that he was on the march. 6. I will cause you to repent bitterly of having abused

one who has hitherto shown himself to be your best friend. 7. I will cause you to repent of your ingratitude towards me.

C. Adverbial Clauses.

§ 131. An Adverbial Clause, as explained above in § 112, qualifies a Verb in the same way as an Adverb does ; that is, it gives the *why*, or the *when*, or some of the other attendant circumstances which explain or qualify its action. **There are seven distinct ways in which this can be done ;** hence Adverbial Clauses are of the following seven kinds :

I. Final Clauses ; i. e. Clauses which state the **End** or **Object aimed at** by the action, introduced by 'in order that,' or, if Negative, with 'lest' (= 'in order that not').

II. Consecutive Clauses ; i. e. Clauses which state the **Consequence** or **Result** accomplished, introduced by 'so that.'

III. Causal Clauses ; i. e. Clauses which give the **Cause** or **Reason** why the action has taken place, introduced by 'because,' 'inasmuch as,' 'seeing that,' 'since,' &c.

IV. Concessive Clauses ; i. e. Clauses which grant or suppose the existence of some **Opposing Reason**, or state some **Hindrance** to the action of the Verb, introduced by 'granted that,' 'although,' &c.

V. Temporal Clauses; i.e. Clauses which state something about the **Time** when the action takes place, introduced by 'when,' 'while,' 'as soon as,' 'as often as,' &c.

VI. Conditional Clauses; i.e. Clauses which state some **Condition**, real or imaginary, upon which the action is made to depend, as when we say 'if,' 'provided that,' &c.

VII. Comparative Clauses; i.e. Clauses which institute some **Comparison** between the action of the Verb and some other action, as when we say 'as,' 'as if,' 'like as,' &c.

§ 132. Every **Adverbial Clause**, of whatever kind, is linked on to the **Principal Clause** by a **Subordinating Conjunction** suitable to the meaning to be expressed; and it is of the utmost importance to note the meanings of the several **Conjunctions**, together with the **Mood** which is appropriate to each. Some always take the **Subjunctive**; some usually take the **Indicative**; some take the **Indicative** or the **Subjunctive** according to the precise meaning intended to be conveyed.

§ 133. By a peculiar idiomatic use (see § 112), the Relative *qui* and its derivatives (*qua*, *quando*, *quare*, &c.), also the Relative words *ubi* and *unde*, can, in addition to their own **Adjectival** meaning, take the place of **Conjunctions** signifying (1) *Purpose*, (2) *Consequence*, (3) *Cause*, (4) *Concession*, and so

introduce Adverbial Clauses of the kind numbered **I, II, III, and IV**, in § **131**. This use will be further explained and illustrated in § **154**.

I. FINAL CLAUSES.

§ **134**. A Final Clause states the End or Object aimed at by the action of the Verb on which it depends.

The Final Conjunctions are **ut**, 'in order that,' **quo** (lit. 'whereby'), 'in order that'; and Negatively, **ne**, 'lest,' **ut ne**, and **quominus** (lit. 'by which the less'), 'that not.' These all require the Subjunctive Mood.

Note.—English often expresses Purpose by 'to': 'They came to see'. *Never use the Infinitive to express Purpose in Latin.**

§ **135**. The Tense in Final Clauses follows the general law laid down in § **123**. Strictly speaking †, only two Tenses can be used; the Present in Subordination to the Present, Present Perfect, or Future; the Imperfect in Subordination to a Past Tense:

- (a) Edo (edam) ut vivam,
I eat (shall eat) in order that I may live;

* Note that Purpose can be variously rendered in Latin. The sentence 'I send an envoy to ask for peace' might be expressed as follows: (1) *(nuntium mitto) qui pacem petat*; (2) *ut pacem petat*; (3) *pacis petendae causa*; (4) *pacem petendi causa*; (5) *ad pacem petendam*; (6) *pacem petitum*; (7) *pacem petiturum*.

† Sometimes (but rarely) the Perfect (or Pluperfect after a Past Tense) is used to signify a purpose as to a *completed action*: *ne frustra rogaverit*, 'that he may not have asked in vain.'

- (b) Edebam (edi, ederam) ut viverem,
I was eating, &c. in order that I might live.

In Negative Sentences :

- (a) Cave ne haec illi noceant,
Beware lest these things hurt him ;

- (b) Haec fecit ut earum rerum vis minueretur, neu *
 nocerent ponti,
*This he did that the force of those objects might be lessened,
 and that they might not hurt the bridge.*

Or with the Relative *qui* :

- (a) Misit nuntium qui veniam roget,
He has sent an envoy to ask for pardon ;
- (b) Miserat nuntium qui veniam rogaret,
He had sent an envoy to ask for pardon.

EXERCISE CXXVII.

(*Final Clauses : easy.*)

1. He forgives his enemies in order that he may be praised by good men. 2. He has forgiven his enemies in order that he may be praised by good men. 3. He forgave his enemies in order that he might be praised by some, and not hated¹ by others. 4. It is said that he left Rome in order that he might not be accused of theft. 5. He has returned to the city in order that he may neither be deprived of his property, nor accused of treason, in his absence².

* Obs. that *neu* or *neve* is always used after *ne*, not *nec* or *neque*; *ne quis* for 'that no one,' not *ut ne*. So *ne quid*, *ne ullus*, *ne umquam* for 'that nothing,' 'that none,' 'that never.'

6. He promised to return that no one might be able to say that he had failed to help a friend in danger³.
 7. I have spared many evil men whom I might have slain, in order that my own crimes may be forgiven.
 8. The Carthaginians will arrive here to-morrow with all their forces to⁴ besiege our city.

¹ 'To be hated': *odio esse*, with the Dat. ² What does 'in his absence' mean? ³ Use the Part. of *periclitari*, 'to be in danger.'

⁴ Remember the Latin Infin. never denotes purpose.

EXERCISE CXXVIII.

(*Final Clauses: easy.*)

1. There is no doubt that¹ he made that speech to please those worthless friends of yours. 2. He praises his friends before their face in order that he may never be abused by them in his absence. 3. I shall return to the city at once to put an end to the calumnies of my enemies. 4. He returned to the city without orders to stand for the consulship². 5. I think you should write to him to make him return the more quickly³ to his home. 6. Cicero went to Sicily for the purpose of⁴ enquiring into the charges raised against Verres. 7. In short⁵, I have nothing to write to you in return, but pray send me one line to say⁶ how you are. 8. I have sent letters to him entreating⁷ him to return and clear himself of the charges brought against him. 9. A doctor gives medicine to the sick that they may live the longer, even though he knows that they cannot recover altogether.

¹ *Non dubium est quin* (with the Subj.). ² Translate this in all the different ways in which Purpose can be expressed in Latin, whether with *ut*, or by the Gerund, Gerundive, Supine, or Fut. Part. ³ When a Comparative is used, Purpose is expressed by *quo* (= *ut eo*) 'in order that by that': *hoc dixi quo eum plus ames*, 'I have told you this that you may love him the more.' ⁴ To express a Purpose or intention emphatically, say *eo* (*hoc*) *consilio ut*, *ideo ut*, *idcirco ut*, *eo animo ut*, *ea causa ut*, &c. ⁵ 'In short': *ne longus sim*, *ne plura dicam*, *denique*, may all be used. ⁶ In Latin, a letter cannot 'say.' ⁷ Was it the letters that 'entreated'? Use *qui* with the Subj. in this and preceding sentence. See § 154.

EXERCISE CXXIX.

(*Final Clauses.*)

1. He used always to praise those of his scholars who answered well, that they might become more ¹ fond of reading. 2. To tell the truth ², I remained for two years abroad after I had fulfilled my term of office ³ to avoid being overmuch praised by my countrymen on my return. 3. He would not refuse favours even to ⁴ his enemies, that no one might be able to reproach him with ingratitude ⁵. 4. It is commonly reported that he forgave his enemies that no one might be able to reproach him with cruelty. 5. Most men will say that he has left the city to avoid saluting the new consul. 6. I will never bring myself ⁶ to say what I know is not true in order to please the dictator. 7. I know not what to think about these things, much less ⁷ can I write about them. 8. But to return to the point from which I started, I

made that speech with the express object of enabling him to make an apology⁸ to me.

¹ See last Exercise, n. 3. ² *Ut vera dicam.* ³ Use the phrase *fungor officio*. ⁴ 'Not even' is *ne . . . quidem*: remember the emphatic word must always be placed between the two words. ⁵ Say 'of an ungrateful mind.' ⁶ Say 'never will be brought.' ⁷ 'much less': *nedum*, either with a single Noun, or with a Verb in the Subj. ⁸ 'To make an apology': *satisfacere*.

II. CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 136. A Consecutive Clause states the Consequence or Result of that which is stated in the Principal Clause: in English the meaning is marked by 'so that.'

The Consecutive Conjunctions are *ut*, *ut non* * (not *ut ne*); after certain negative expressions, *quin*; after phrases of *hindering*, *prohibiting*, &c., *quominus*; *qui* also, and other Relative words, may have a Consecutive force. (See § 154.) All these require the Subjunctive Mood.

§ 137. The Consecution of Tenses is not so simple in Consecutive as in Final Clauses. A Consequence may take place subsequently to its Cause, as well as at the same time with it: it may be a single momentary result, or it may be a continuous act or state. Thus all the following combinations are possible:

* Similarly *ut nemo*, *ut nihil*, *ut nullus*, &c.

(1) The Cause may be Past, and the Effect a continuous state in the Past (*Past Tense followed by Imperf. in Subordinate Clause*);

(2) The Cause may be Past, and the Effect a momentary condition in the Past (*Past Tense followed by Perf.*);

(3) The Cause may be Past, and the Effect a state in the Present (*Perf. followed by Pres.*);

(4) The Cause may be Past, and the Effect Future (*Perf. followed by Fut.*);

(5) The Cause and Effect may both be Present (*both Verbs in the Pres.*);

(6) The Cause may be Present, and the Effect Future (*Pres. followed by Fut.*).

The following sentences illustrate each of the above combinations :

(1) Ita me gessi ut me tibi approbarem,
I so conducted myself as to gain your approval;

(2) Ita me gessi ut me populus consulem fecerit,
I so conducted myself that the people made me consul;

(3) Ita me gessi ut me omnes ament,
I so conducted (or have so conducted) myself that all men love me;

(4) Ita se gessit ut mihi semper odio futurus sit,
He so conducted (or has so conducted) himself that I shall always hate him;

(5) Facere non possum quin ad te mittam,
I cannot help sending to you (quin being equivalent to ut non);

- (6) *Se ita gerit ut omnibus displiciturus sit,*
He is behaving so that he will disgust everybody.

The following combinations with the Fut. Part. fall under the same rule as Nos. (1) and (2) given above (see § 124):

- (7) *Tantus erat pavor ut omnes abituri essent,*
So great was the panic that all were about to depart ;
 (8) *Tantus erat pavor ut omnes abituri fuerint,*
So great was the panic that all would have departed.

EXERCISE CXXX.

(*Consecutive Clauses : easy.*)

1. He forgave his enemies so generously¹ that he is praised by good men, but not loved by the evil. 2. The army left the camp so hurriedly that they had not even² time to pack up their effects³. 3. He has attacked⁴ the consuls so bitterly as to rouse the indignation of⁵ all just-minded men. 4. He is learned indeed, but in such a way that⁶ he has no knowledge whatever of public affairs. 5. He is so unstable that no one⁷ can trust him. 6. The top of the mountain was so far off that I could not see whether it was covered with snow or not. 7. He has been so unwell for many months⁸ that he never leaves the house. 8. Your plan is expedient perhaps, but⁹ it pleases nobody.

¹ *Ita* alone is sufficient. ² See last Ex. n. 4. ³ *vasa colligere* (of an army). ⁴ ' To attack with words : *invehi in*.

⁵ Use the Dat. ⁶ The phrase *ita . . . ut* is constantly used in a *restrictive* sense, or to balance clauses against one another: *Ita dives est ut nihil umquam ulli det*, 'he is so rich (i. e. not to such an extent rich, but rich in such a manner) that he never gives anything to anybody,' i. e. 'He is rich indeed, but he never . . .' *Das quidem certe, sed ita ut nulli umquam prosis*, 'You give indeed, but in such a way that no one is ever the better of it.' ⁷ Remember that while in Negative Final Clauses you must use *ne, ne quis, ne ullus, ne umquam*, &c., in Consec. Clauses you must always use *non, ut nemo, ut nullus, ut numquam* &c. ⁸ When an event has being going on in the past, and still continues, what Tense must you use? ⁹ See above, n. 6.

EXERCISE CXXXI.

(Consecutive Clauses.)

1. There is no swiftness which ¹ can compare ² with that of the mind. 2. Indignation is such an affection of the mind as causes a man ³ to hate what is evil. 3. He has conducted himself in such a manner that he cannot be held to be in possession of his senses ⁴. 4. The infantry charged with such ⁵ impetuosity, that, had not night come on, they would have captured ⁶ the camp. 5. He may indeed tell the truth, but ⁷ no one believes him even on his oath. 6. He left so suddenly that, had not his wife informed me of his intention, I should never have seen ⁸ him again in life. 7. The matter has turned out so badly that I shall displease those whom I particularly ⁹ wished to serve. 8. So little ¹⁰ did he succeed in gaining popularity that he alienated even his best ¹¹ friends.

¹ Use *qui* in a Consec. sense: see § 157. ² What does 'compare' here mean? ³ Use the 2nd Person Subj. = our 'one.' ⁴ *compos sui* or *mentis*. ⁵ Say 'so great': the English 'such' is ambiguous. ⁶ Say 'were about to capture.' ⁷ Use *ita . . . ut*: see last Ex. n. 6. ⁸ Say 'I was not about to.' ⁹ Say 'above all others,' *potissimum*. ¹⁰ Say 'So far from . . . was it that he.' ¹¹ What does 'his best friends' mean?

EXERCISE CXXXII.

(Consecutive Clauses.)

1. There is no difficulty so great that it¹ cannot be surmounted by patience. 2. Verres having been found guilty of extortion², Cicero was so pleased with his success that he never ceased to tell people how great eloquence he had shown. 3. I have nothing more to say; I write this that you may not think that I have forgotten you, but I am so ill that I cannot write without pain. 4. For a long time past the conditions of our life and of public affairs have been such as to exclude³ all hope for the future. 5. What resources have you in your own homes, I ask, to make up⁴ for the losses you have sustained? 6. He is not a man⁵ to be an example to us, who love our country. 7. The army of the Gauls was indeed formidable in appearance, but⁶ in reality it was more like an undisciplined rabble than an army.

¹ Use *qui* Consec. ² *repetundae*. ³ Say 'that there is no hope remaining.' ⁴ *reparare*. ⁵ Use *is qui*. ⁶ 'was indeed . . . but.' Use here *ita . . . ut*, but note the difference between *ut* of Comparison and *ut* Consec. *Ut fortes sunt, ita sunt fideles*, 'they are as loyal as they are brave': but *ita fortes sunt ut mortem dedecori antepoñant*, 'they are so brave that they prefer death to dishonour.'

EXERCISE CXXXIII.*(Consecutive Clauses.)*

1. Nothing will prevent me from ¹ taking an interest in ² philosophy. 2. They deemed any course more safe to take than that of ³ establishing their innocence. 3. He will never establish his innocence so completely as to be ⁴ able to stand for a public office. 4. He was prevented by the presence of the enemy in great force from crossing the river at the point which he had chosen. 5. Of all the generals that I have ever known, he was the one most fitted to win the favour of his soldiers. 6. Since Caesar's power now extends so far that it has embraced the whole world, would you not rather be safe ⁵ at home than unsafe abroad? 7. A merchant cannot become bankrupt ⁶ without ⁷ involving many other persons in his ruin.

¹ Use *quin* or *quominus*. See § 155. ² Use *studere*. ³ Say 'than that they should.' ⁴ Use *ita ut*. ⁵ Distinguish the different words meaning 'safe': *tutus* is 'guarded', 'protected from danger'; *securus* is 'without care or apprehension,' 'indifferent to danger': *incolumis* is 'unharméd.' ⁶ 'To become bankrupt': *decoquere*; 'a bankrupt,' *decoctor*. ⁷ Say 'in such a way that he does not.'

III. CAUSAL CLAUSES.

§ 138. A Causal Clause states the Cause or Reason of that which is stated in the Principal Clause.

The Causal Conjunctions are *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quandoquidem* (or *quando*), *quatenus*, *siquidem*,

corresponding to 'because,' 'since,' 'seeing that,' 'inasmuch as,' &c. **All these (as a rule) take the Indicative**, because they indicate the true Cause.

But **cum** and **qui**, with a **Causal Sense**, always **take the Subjunctive**, because they refer to a Reason apprehended by the mind, rather than to a Cause existing in fact.

Similarly, **quod**, **quia**, &c., may take a **Subjunctive** when the writer, instead of stating the Cause as a fact, refers it to some person's thought or statement; in other words, when they are used in **Actual** or in **Virtual Oratio Obliqua**.

Gratias tibi agam quod me vivere coegisti,
I will thank you for having compelled me to live;

Obicite Platoni quod petierit pecuniam,
Reproach Plato (if you will) with having grasped at money;

Quae cum ita sint, ad maiora transeamus,
This being so, let us pass on to more important matters;

Non potuit aliis ignaviam exprobrare, qui ipse ex acie fugisset,

He could not reproach others with cowardice, seeing that he himself had run away.

Note.—Hence *non quod* (or *non quo*) with the Subj. states the false or rejected reason, *sed quia* with the Indic. gives the true cause :

Ingemescent pugiles non quod doleant, sed quia profundenda voce omne corpus intenditur, venitque plaga vehementior.

IV. CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.

§ 139. A **Concessive Clause** grants or concedes something, in spite of which the assertion of

the Principal Clause is made: in other words, it states an objection, or a reason why that assertion might be regarded as improbable. The usual sign in English for such a Clause is 'although.'

If the point conceded, or the objection assigned, be a really existing thing, **the Indicative must be used, with** one of the Conjunctions, **etsi, quamquam, tametsi**; if the point be imaginary or hypothetical, **the Subjunctive must be used, with quamvis, licet, or ut.**

Note.—The distinction in meaning between these Conjunctions is plain, and corresponds to the difference of Mood.

Quamquam means 'however much,' 'to however great an extent,' a thing *is* so; **etsi, tametsi**, 'even along with the fact that'; 'even in spite of the fact that.' Hence the Indic. follows.

Quamvis means 'however much you choose'; **licet (ut)** 'it is allowed that'; **ut** 'supposing the case that'. The meaning of each being hypothetical, the Subj. naturally follows.

§ 140. The Relative **qui** may have a Concessive sense (see § 157); and as the Concessive sense is fundamentally the same as the Causal, the Context alone can decide which meaning is intended:

Admiror te qui tam sapiens sis,
I admire you because you are so wise;

Admiror te qui nihil sapias,
I admire you although you are a fool.

So too, **cum**, which often means 'since,' may also mean 'although':

Non poterant tamen, cum cuperent (*though they wished it*)
Antonium imitari.

Qui and **cum**, with a Concessive sense, always take the Subj.

EXERCISE CXXXIV.*(Causal and Concessive Clauses : easy.)*

1. I have written to you because you asked me to do so. 2. He feared to pursue the Gauls further because woods and marshes lay between¹. 3. Since you have said so, I cannot help believing that it is true. 4. Since these things are so, I will not say a word more. 5. Since he could not sleep, he used to walk about at night. 6. My mother was angry with me for not returning. 7. In fact, however, I had kept away² not because I did not wish to come, but because I was not very well at the time³. 8. The people hated Tiberius for his neglect of Germanicus. 9. Although I had determined to advance, I changed my mind on receipt of this news. 10. Though you should implore me with tears⁴, I will not grant your request. 11. As to his having failed⁵ in Asia, I deem that of no importance.

¹ 'To lie between': *intercedere*. ² What does 'to keep away' mean? ³ The Eng. phrase 'at the time' means 'at that time.'

⁴ Use a Part. ⁵ 'To fail': *rem male gerere*.

EXERCISE CXXXV.*(Causal and Concessive Clauses : easy.)*

1. Even though I be innocent, I shall be condemned all the same. 2. My reason for joining Caesar was that the cause¹ of the Republic was lost. 3. Though his disasters are hurrying him to

destruction², he yet threatens us all with death.
 4. However troublous³ the times be, he remains calm and dauntless. 5. Though I should die for it, I must tell the truth. 6. In spite of the unendurable cold, and difficulties of every description⁴, Hannibal carried his army safely over the Alps.
 7. Although the Public Land belonged to the whole people, the patricians occupied the whole of it for⁵ themselves. 8. What a simple man⁶ he is, that he hides nothing from us! 9. Though entering upon⁷ the military profession late in life, Caesar became the greatest general of antiquity⁸.

¹ Omit 'the cause of.' ² Use *ruo*, intrans. : 'is hurrying to.'
³ *turbidus*. ⁴ Say 'though all things were adverse.' ⁵ Omit 'for.'
⁶ Use *homo*. ⁷ 'To enter upon' : *attingere*. ⁸ Use a concrete term.

V. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.

§ 141. A Temporal Clause states something about the Time, absolute or relative, of the Principal Verb.

The principal Temporal Conjunctions are :

cum, *quando*, *ubi*, 'when ;'

dum, *donec*, *quoad*, *quamdiu*, 'while,' 'as long as,' 'until' ;

antequam, *priusquam*, 'before that' ;

postquam, 'after that' : *quoties*, 'as often as,'
simulacque, 'as soon as.'

The rule as to Mood is this : If the Conjunction refers to Time, and Time only, without convey-

ing any additional idea of Cause, Purpose, or Consequence, **it is followed by the Indicative** ; if there be added any idea of Cause, of an End waited for, a Result aimed at or prevented, by the Subjunctive.

§ 142. Special care must be taken in the use of *cum*. If it be *purely temporal*, 'at the time when,' or 'during which,' it takes the Indic. ; not only with the Present and Future, but also with the Historic Tenses. But the sense of *post hoc* is so often associated with that of *propter hoc*, that the tendency of Roman writers was to use the Subjunctive with the Imperfect and Pluperfect Tenses, even when no distinct sense of causation had to be expressed. Hence it is a good Rule : **Always use the Subj. when *cum* is followed by Imperf. and Pluperf. Tenses.**

Zenonem cum Athenis essem, audiebam frequenter ;

Meridie cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones misisset, repente hostes ex omnibus partibus advolaverunt.

Note.—But remember that when *cum* bears the meaning 'since,' it *always* takes the Subj. with *all* Tenses.

§ 143. *Dum, donec, quoad*, take the Indic. when they mean only 'as long as,' 'until': but if the meaning be 'provided that,' 'until such time as,'* they take the Subj. :

Oderint dum metuant,

Let them hate me, provided only they fear me ;

Dum te reficis morabor,

I shall wait while you are recovering ;

* Or, as Prof. Sonnenschein puts it, 'when the action is marked as merely contemplated, or in prospect, and not as a fact.'
—*Latin Syntax*.

Dum te reficias (*or* refeceris) morabor,
I shall wait until such time as you recover or have re-
covered.

So with **antequam, priusquam, &c. :**

Priusquam lucet, adsunt,
They are there before the dawn ;

Hominem aggrediar priusquam ad portam veniat,
I will address the fellow before he can reach the gate.

Note.—By a peculiar idiom, *dum* is used with a Present even in subordination to a Past Tense: *dum veniunt amici, solus inambulavit*. The rule is apparently this: when *dum, donec, quoad*, refer to an action which fills *the same time* as that of the Principal Verb, the Past Tense is used: when the *dum*-clause includes a longer period, during a part of which the action of the Principal Clause occurs, the Present is used. Thus *dum dormio, crumena mihi erepta est*, ‘my purse was taken from me while sleeping’: but *dum haec scribebam, ille dormiebat*, ‘while I was writing this, he was sleeping.’

Note further that ‘while’ in English has sometimes an Adversative force, ‘while . . . so’: for this sense *dum* must never be used. Say *ut . . . ita* (with Indic.); or *cum . . . tum* (almost = ‘both . . . and’); or *quamquam . . . tamen*, or some such expression, according to the exact meaning to be conveyed.

EXERCISE CXXXVI.

(*Temporal Clauses: easy.*)

1. When you are gone, I shall have no friends here. 2. Since you came to the bar¹, you have always been ready to help² everyone in trouble³. 3. When⁴ Caesar perceived that all were of one mind⁵, he gave up his own opinion. 4. At the time when

Italy was being devastated by Hannibal, the Senate determined to carry the war into Spain. 5. When this news had been brought to him, he exclaimed that it was all over with ⁶ the Carthaginians. 6. Before I read your letter, I had determined to come here. 7. Before I answer about the other things, I will say a few words about our friendship. 8. He resisted as long as he could. 9. I waited until his strength should fail.

¹ 'To come to the bar': *forum attingere*. ² *praesto esse*. ³ 'Persons in trouble': *calamitosi*. ⁴ *Ubi* may be used with the Indic. to indicate merely a point of time. ⁵ *idem sentire*.
⁶ 'To be over with': *actum esse de*.

EXERCISE CXXXVII.

(*Temporal Clauses: easy.*)

1. Antony left the city before hearing that Caesar had returned. 2. Antony had the wisdom to ¹ leave the city before Caesar could return. 3. Whilst these things were going on, news was brought that Hannibal had crossed the river. 4. The consul waited for a whole day till Hannibal should cross the river. 5. He was not brave only, but beautiful as well ². 6. Forbear to ask the question until he has recovered from his illness. 7. Am I to remain inactive before Athens till my whole army be destroyed? 8. This being the case ³, I beg you not to come here until his anger has cooled down ⁴. 9. Provided only the fact remains, let them fashion phrases as they will.

¹ Say 'was wise in this that.' ² 'Not only . . . but also' is freq. expressed by *cum . . . tum*, with the Indic. ³ The common phrase *quae cum ita sint*, 'since which things are so.'
⁴ *defervesco*.

EXERCISE CXXXVIII.

(*Temporal Clauses.*)

1. Perhaps you are waiting till he speak. 2. As soon as he heard this, he took the field, that he might bring on an engagement¹ before the citizens should repent of having declared war. 3. He determined to advance so soon as he should hear that the enemy had landed. 4. Before learning that there were not sufficient soldiers left to guard the city, he had determined to use the utmost caution. 5. Whenever² he heard a man blaming his friends and praising his enemies, he would ask him in which category he placed himself. 6. No sooner had he been made aware of the defeat of the enemy than he proposed that the senate should ordain a public thanksgiving³. 7. Let them do what they like, provided only they do not betray a man who has deserved so well of his country.

¹ Say 'that it might be fought.' ² When *cum* is used in a frequentative sense (= 'each time that') the Indic. is used. ³ 'A public thanksgiving': *supplicatio*.

EXERCISE CXXXIX.

(*Temporal Clauses.*)

1. He did not enter upon political life¹ until the death of his father² enabled him to espouse openly

the cause which he had long secretly favoured. 2. Ten days had not yet elapsed when³ that other infant son was put to death. 3. They kept turning their eyes and faces in every direction to which the weeping of women and the crash of falling houses attracted them. 4. The war with Veii did not come to an end until the Alban Lake was drained, in accordance with the divine command. 5. I admire you both⁴ in many other respects⁵, and in this most of all, that⁶ you are no boaster. 6. During the course of the battle of Thrasimene, an earthquake took place, unperceived by either of the armies. 7. He confined himself to the city so long as the Parthians were in the province.

¹ 'To enter upon political life': *attingere rempublicam*. ² Use Abl. Abs. ³ Note that in this sentence, the construction is inverted, the *cum*-clause containing the real apodosis. When this is so, the Indic. must be used, or *cum* placed with its proper clause. ⁴ See *Ex. CXXXVII*, n. 2. ⁵ Say 'admire many other things in you.' ⁶ *quod* with the Indic.

VI. CONDITIONAL CLAUSES.

§ 144. A Conditional Sentence consists of a Principal Clause, with a Conditional or *If*-Clause, introduced by *si* or *nisi* (sometimes *si non* *), dependent upon it. The Subordinate Clause (or *Protasis* as it is called) states the Condition; the Principal Clause (or *Apodosis*) states the Result which (1) *did*, *does*, or *will* follow; or which (2) *would have* followed,

* *Si non* is used to negative a single word; *sin* introduces a fresh *If*-clause adversative to the first: 'but if.'

would or *may* follow, upon the fulfilment of the Condition.

§ 145. Thus Conditional Sentences are divided into two classes :

Class A. Those in which the *If*-Clause is so put as to make no implication whatever as to whether the condition has been, or will be, fulfilled, and which merely assert, as a fact, that the result will follow upon its fulfilment ;

Class B.—Those in which the *If*-Clause is so put as to imply that the Condition has not been fulfilled, or if still in the Future, is doubtful of fulfilment ; and in which the Principal Clause (or Apodosis) asserts what *would have* taken place, or what *would* take place, were the facts other than what they are*.

In Class A, the Indicative is the proper Mood, both for Protasis and Apodosis ; in Class B, the Subjunctive must be used for both.

Conditional Clauses. Class A.

§ 146. Those Sentences, in which the Indic. is used both in the Protasis and Apodosis, are, properly speaking, not Conditional Sentences at all. They state, as an absolute fact, that *if* (or *when*) one thing happens, or happened, another thing happens also : there is nothing hypothetical about them. They may be in *Past*, *Present*, or *Future* time.

* Or as Mr. Bayfield puts it (Class. Rev. iv. p. 202), 'the sentences marked B differ from those marked A only in that they present the hypothetical statement less positively.'

Thus the sentences, 'If I saw one man, I saw a hundred'; 'If you acquit the one, you must acquit the other'; 'If you refuse this offer, you will repent it all your life,' are Conditional in form only. Nothing is implied in them as to the likelihood or otherwise of the *If*-Clause; they merely state, as a fact, that one fact, or set of facts, carries another along with it.

Similarly, in Latin we may say :

Si Publium vidisti, stultum hominem vidisti,
If you saw Publius, you saw a fool;

Si me amas, abi hinc dierecte,
If you love me, go off at once;

Si me adiuvabis (adiuveris), ego te adiuvabo,
You claw me and I'll claw you.

Greek has precisely the same constructions :

εἰ πράσσει τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει,
Si hoc facit, bene est;

εἰ ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔχει (εἵχεν, ἔξει),
Si hoc fecit, bene est (erat, erit);

εἴ τι ἔξεις, δώσεις (δός):
Si quid habebis, dabis (da).

Conditional Clauses. Class B.

§ 147. In purely Conditional Sentences, the Condition may be spoken of as in the Past and impossible of fulfilment; or as in the Present or Future, and of doubtful fulfilment.

There are in all three usual cases :

(1) **Condition and Result alike may be in the Past** (*Pluperfect both in Protasis and Apodosis*):

Si hoc fecisset, bene fecisset,
If he had done this, he would have done well;
 εἰ ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔσχευεν οἱ εἶχεν.

(2) Condition and Result may both refer to the Present (*Imperfect in Protasis and Apodosis*):

Si hoc faceret, bene faceret,
Were he doing this (now), he would be doing well (now);
 εἰ ἔπρασσε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν εἶχεν.

(3) Condition and Result may both refer to the Future (*Present in Protasis and Apodosis*):

Si hoc faciat, bene faciat,
If he were to do this, he would do well;
 εἰ πράσσοι τοῦτο, καλῶς ἂν ἔχοι.

Once again :

- (1) Haec si vidisses, lacrimas non tenuisses,
If you had seen these things, you would not have refrained from tears ;
- (2) Haec si videres, lacrimas non teneres,
If you were (now) seeing these things, you would not be refraining from tears ;
- (3) Haec si videas, lacrimas non teneas,
If you were to see these things, you would not refrain from tears.

Note.—But Obs. the following :

(1) The time of the Protasis and of the Apodosis need not necessarily be the same :

Medico si paruisses, nunc valeres,
If you had obeyed your doctor, you would now be well.

(2) Sometimes even (though rarely) the Protasis is in the Subj., the Apodosis in the Indic. or Imper. :

Si fractus illabatur orbis,—Impavidum ferient ruinae.

(3) Tacitus, and occasionally other authors, use the Indic. (*Imperf.* or *Plupf.*) for the Subj. in the Apodosis to show how very near the result was of happening :

Ferrum a latere diripuit, *deferebatque* in pectus, *ni* proximi prensam dextram vi *adtinuissent*.

(4) Obs. also that Clauses apparently Conditional in English, with the Verbs '*might*,' '*could*,' '*should*,' &c. may often be expressed by the Indic. of Verbs like *possum*, *debeo*, *oportet*, &c., whose own meaning, as Modal Verbs, expresses *possibility*, &c. ; while '*would*' may be expressed by the Indic. with the Fut. Part. :

Hoc facere potuisti, si voluisses,

You might have done this had you wished ; lit. 'it was in your power to do it.'

Hoc facere debuisti, si licuisset,

You ought to have done this had you been allowed ; lit. 'were bound to do this.'

Hoc facturum fuisti, si licuisset,

You would have done this had you been allowed ; lit. 'were about to do this.'

EXERCISE CXL.

(Conditional Clauses : easy.)

1. If you do this you will be hated by all men.
2. If you know of any precepts better than mine, impart them to me ; if not, use these along with me.
3. If you were at home at the time, I did not know of it ; write and tell me what you are about.
4. If you come to Rome, you will repent it.
5. If he saw a rose, he would¹ think that the spring had arrived.
6. If he had asked my pardon, I should have forgiven him.
7. If he were asking my pardon, I should be forgiving him.
8. If he were to ask my

pardon, I should not forgive him. 9. If he had said so, I would not have believed him. 10. If he were to say so on oath², I would not believe him.

¹ Obs. 'would' here is not Conditional. ² A person 'on oath' is *iuratus*.

EXERCISE CXLI.

(Conditional Clauses : easy.)

1. The whole army would have been destroyed if the consul had pursued the fugitives. 2. The whole army might¹ have been destroyed had we pursued the fugitives. 3. He will die unless he changes his mode of life. He will die if he does not² change his mode of life. 4. Whether he were to ask my pardon or not, I should not forgive him. 5. He would never have accused Verres at all unless he had hoped by so doing to win the favour of the people, and to be elected consul. 6. Had the Senate passed a wise decree, the Republic would have been saved, and all would now be well³. 7. If I were to be asked what is my opinion of Hannibal, I should say that he was the first general of antiquity, even Alexander the Great not excepted.

¹ Use *possum*. ² Distinguish between *nisi* and *si non*. ³ 'To be well' : *bene esse*.

Conditional Clauses in Oratio Obliqua.

§ 148. The conversion into Oratio Obliqua of the Sentences given above under Class A (§ 146) occasions little difficulty. They follow, except in one particular, the ordinary rules for Oratio Obliqua : thus the sentence

Si hoc facis, bene est,
becomes in Orat. Obl. :

- (a) *Dicit* (*dicet*) si hoc facias, bene esse;
 (b) *Dixit* si hoc faceres, bene esse.

The one exception is that if the Protasis contains a Future, the meaning of Futurity disappears altogether in the conversion into Orat. Obl. : thus

Si quid habebis, dabis
becomes in Orat. Obl. :

- (a) *Dicit* si quid *habeas*, te id daturum esse,
 (b) *Dixit* si quid *haberes*, te id daturum esse ;

Si quid feceris, errabis,
becomes

- (a) *Dicit* si quid *feceris* (Subj.), te erraturum esse ;
 (b) *Dixit* si quid *fecisses*, te erraturum fuisse.

Note.—In the last two examples one would have expected, for logical correctness, *si quid habiturus sis*, and *habiturus esses* ; *si quid factururus sis*, and *si quid factururus fueris* or *fuisse* : but that is not the Latin idiom.

There is no obscurity, however, as to the sense ; the *si* preserves the Conditional meaning, the *Subj.* marks the Orat. Obl.

§ 149. But with true conditional Sentences (**Class B.** § 147) there is this difficulty, that both Protasis and Apodosis are in the Subj. to begin with. The Protasis remains unchanged (as in the examples given above in § 148) except in the matter of Tense ; but the Apodosis, being the Principal Clause, must now be put into the Infin., to indicate that it is in the Orat. Obl. The problem is, How can this be done, without sacrificing the Conditional sense, to express which the Subj. is essential ? The device resorted to is the use of the Fut. Part. to express the *Conditional* part of the sense, combined with the Verb *esse* to represent the *Infinitive* (see above § 124).

Thus, breaking up the meaning ‘ I would go ’ into its equi-

valent 'I was about to go,' we have the Verb 'I was' to be placed in the Infin., the Fut. Part. 'about to go' to express the Condition.

Similarly, breaking up 'I would have gone' into 'I had been about to go,' we have the Verb 'I had been' to put into the Perf. Inf., with the Fut. Part. to express the Condition. If this be understood, the conversion of Conditional sentences into Oratio Obliqua is perfectly simple :

(a) Si id dicas, erres,

If you were to say so, you would be wrong :

Dicit } si id dicas, te erraturum esse ;
Dicet }

Dixit si id diceres (dixisses), te erraturum esse.

(b) Si id diceres, errares,

If you were saying so, you would be wrong :

Dicit } si id diceres, erraturum esse ;
Dicet }

Dixit si id dixisses (dixeris), erraturum esse.

(c) Si id dixisses, errasses,

If you had said so you would have been wrong :

Dicit si id dixisses erraturum fuisse ;

Dixit si id dixisses erraturum fuisse.

Where the Passive is needed in the Apodosis, the phrases *fore ut* (*futurum esse ut*), and *futurum fuisse ut*, are used with the appropriate Tenses :

Putat, si pugnam committat, fore (or *futurum esse*) ut multi occidantur,

He thinks that if he joins battle many will be killed ;

Putavit, si pugnam commisisset, fore ut multi occiderentur ;

Putat } si pugnam commisisset, futurum fuisse ut multi
Putavit } occiderentur.

EXERCISE CXLII.

(*Conditional Clauses in Oratio Obliqua.*)

1. If I say so, I am wrong. I know that if I say so I am wrong. I knew that if I said so, I was wrong. 2. Most men believe that if Brutus had not been defeated at Philippi, the commonwealth would not have¹ been overturned. 3. The dictator declared that if Hannibal would give him a fair opportunity, he would engage him immediately. 4. I cannot say what he would do were you to offer him money. It is impossible to say what he would have done if you had offered him money. 5. If Caesar were to conquer Pompey, the commonwealth would be overthrown. Cicero declared that if Caesar were to conquer Pompey, the commonwealth would be overthrown. 6. If Pompey had not left Italy, Rome would not have fallen. Cicero declared frequently that if Pompey had not left Italy, Rome would not have fallen. All men are now of opinion that had not Pompey left Italy, Rome would not have been captured.

¹ Use the periphrasis *futurum fuisse ut*.

EXERCISE CXLIII.

(*Conditional Clauses in Oratio Obliqua.*)

1. It is certain that unless the English retreat, they will be cut off to a man. It was certain that unless the English had retreated, they would have been cut

off to a man. 2. Do you suppose that if Pompey had been victorious he would have spared you alone? Acknowledge that if he were now to return you would be the first to pay the penalty. Acknowledge that if he had returned you would have been the first to pay the penalty. 3. He announced that he would give a crown of gold as a prize to the man who should first enter the city. 4. I ask what you would do if you were in my place now; and what you would have done had you seen the enemy entering the city. 5. I was so closely connected with Caesar that, if he had been slain in his attack on the city, I should have fallen with him.

Conditional Clauses Subordinate to Consecutive Clauses, &c.

§ 150. In exactly the same way, if a Conditional Sentence becomes itself Subordinate to a Consecutive *ut*, or forms part of an Indirect question, the same periphrasis of the Fut. Part. with the Subj. of *esse* must be used :

He was so bold that he would have attacked the enemy alone, had I not forbidden him,

Tam audax erat ut solus in hostem impetum facturus fuerit nisi ego prohibuissem ;

I asked him what he would do if no one should come to his assistance,

Rogavi quid facturus esset (or fuerit) si nemo ei subvenisset ;

I asked him what he would have done if I had not arrived,

Rogavi quid facturus fuerit si ego non advenissem.

Note.—Mark especially that in the last example but one the Latin has *subvenisset* where the English has the Imperf. ‘should come.’ Note too that the Fut. Perf. in Or. Recta becomes Pluperf. in Or. Obl. after a Past Tense.

EXERCISE CXLIV.

(Conditional Clauses subordinate to Consecutive Clauses, &c.)

1. I would not have been willing to do what you asked had I not feared that worse things would have befallen¹ me if I had refused. 2. He is so bold that if you were to order him to attack the enemy with a single legion, he would obey you. 3. I envy you your present happiness; but I love virtue so much that if you were to be convicted of treachery, I should envy you no more. 4. Be sure that if the senate had permitted Caesar to stand for the consulship in absence, all these senators would not have been slain, and the Republic would still be standing. 5. He was so far from being a true patriot, that he would have attached himself to Caesar if he had offered him the province of Asia.

¹ Say 'were about to befall me.'

VII. COMPARATIVE CLAUSES.

§ 151. A Comparative Clause contains some comparison, whether of resemblance or the opposite, with that which is predicated in the Principal Clause. Such Clauses, again, naturally fall into two Classes :

A. The Comparison may be to something stated as a fact : in that case the Indicative Mood is used.

B. The Comparison may be to something imaginary, stated only as a conception of the mind : in that case the Subjunctive must be used.

§ 152. Appropriate to Class A (comparisons to existing things) are the Conjunctions *ut*, *sicut*, *quemadmodum*, *quam* (corresponding to *tam* or *contra*, or to Comparatives); and the Relative Adjectives *quantus*, *quot*, *qualis*, &c.

After Adjectives and Adverbs that denote likeness or difference (*similis*, *dissimilis*; *par*, *pariter*; *aeque*, *perinde*; *alius*, *aliter*; *contrarius*, *contra*, *secus*, &c.), the English 'as' or 'than' is expressed by *ac* or *atque* (not by *quam*).

The idea of Proportion is expressed by *quanto* . . . *tanto* ('by how much . . . by so much'); *quo* . . . *eo* ('by what . . . by that'); or by *ut* . . . *ita* ('as . . . so.')

Non ut iniustus in pace rex ita dux belli pravus fuit,
He was not as bad a general in war as he was an unjust king in peace;

Ita vivam ut te amo,
May I live as I love you (truly);

Simulacrum Iovis, contra atque ante fuerat, ad orientem converterunt,

They turned the statue of Jupiter to the East, opposite to what it had previously been;

Pumex non aequè aridus atque hic est senex,
A pumice-stone is not so dry as this old man is.

Note 1.—By a peculiar idiom, *ut* in the Subordinate Clause may state a general characteristic to which some particular instance of it in the Principal Clause is compared:

Atque ille, ut semper fuit apertissimus, non se purgavit,
And he, with his usual extreme candour, did not attempt to clear himself.

Note 2.—Obs. that when two Adjs. or Advs. are contrasted in the Comparative Degree with *quam*, Latin uses the Comparative with both :

Non acrior quam pertinacior fuit impetus Romanorum,
i. e. *was not more fierce than stubborn.*

§ 153. The Conjunctions appropriate to Class B—those which make comparisons to non-real things—are **quasi, tamquam (si), velut (si), ut si, ac si, quam ut.** These all require the Subjunctive :

Salutaverunt istum, tamquam si consul esset,
They saluted him as if he were consul ;

Metus patres cepit, velut si iam ad portas hostis esset,
Panic seized the senators, as though the enemy were at the gates ;

Humanior est quam ut (or quam qui) iniuriarum memor sit,
He is too high-minded to remember wrongs.

EXERCISE CXLV.

(Comparative Clauses : easy.)

1. He behaved very differently from what I had expected. 2. Go on as you have begun. 3. These exiles talk as if they had led honest lives. 4. Your slaves are more careful about your affairs than if you were yourself at home. 5. They act always just as if you were present. 6. Just as if Asia were shut up, I get¹ no news. 7. My sons are not as big as his. 8. He has conducted himself just as I expected. 9. With his usual timidity² of disposition, he has abandoned his candidature. 10. The troops fought well, considering³ the odds⁴ against them. 11. So

may the Gods help me, as I tell the truth. 12. I did the best I could, considering the difficulties of the case. 13. I collected about⁵ a million sesterces. 14. Philosophy boasts herself as though she were the parent of all the arts.

¹ Say 'none are brought to me.' ² Use *ut*: 'just as he was by nature timid.' ³ Use *ut*. ⁴ Use the phrase *in impari re*. ⁵ *quasi*, used Adverbially.

EXERCISE CXLVI.

(Comparative Clauses.)

1. However guilty a man may be, a jury ought to hear all that can be urged in his defence. 2. He acted just as if he had obtained my consent. 3. Alpine flowers are just as beautiful as² they are rare. 4. He is not only wise in counsel, but also brave in action. 5. They are distressed for many other reasons, but for this most of all, that they feel themselves to be despised by the Romans. 6. They were too wary to be caught by such a bait. 7. He is more cunning than wise. 8. I trust that you will reward every man as he has deserved of the state. 9. The more a man knows, the less does he appear to himself to know. 10. Whilst a statesman's³ life is at all times uncertain, so now I am utterly unable to see what I ought to do. 11. He is too rash a man to trust.

¹ Say 'as if I had permitted.' ² 'as beautiful as' may be variously rendered. Use in this exercise *ita . . . ut*, or *tum . . . quum* where you can. ³ 'statesmen': *ei qui in republica versantur*.

tanto

Qui with the Subjunctive.

§ 154. As already stated (§ 113, Note), when *qui* introduces a purely Adjectival Clause, the Verb is in the Indicative.

Similarly, the Indicative follows *qui* when it is merely equivalent to *et is*, and introduces what is practically a Co-ordinate Clause :

Errare malo cum Platone ; quem quanti facias scio,

I prefer to go wrong with Plato ; and I know how much you value him.

But by a peculiar idiom, *qui* (with its Derivatives) has the power of carrying with it, in addition to its meaning as Relative, a further meaning of (1) *Purpose*, (2) *Consequence*, (3) *Cause*, or (4) *Concession* (see § 133). Thus

(1) It may carry the meaning 'in order that' (Final) :

Litteras mitto quibus te placem,

I send a letter by which I may appease you (i. e. in order that by it I may appease you).

(2) It may carry the meaning 'so that,' 'of such a kind that' (Consecutive) :

Non is est qui facile corrumpatur,

He is not a man (of a kind) to be easily corrupted ;

Inventus est scriba quidam qui cornicum oculos confixerit,

There was found a certain scribe (of such a kind as) to pierce the corbies' eyes ;

Sunt qui beatam vitam in voluptate ponant,

There are persons who deem happiness to consist in pleasure.

Note.—In the above examples *inventus est qui confixit* would mean 'a man was found who (as a fact) did pierce' ; *sunt qui ponunt* would mean 'there are certain particular persons who.' After Negatives *quin* may stand for *qui non* : *curiosus nemo est quin sit malevolus*.

(3) It may carry the meaning 'since he' (Causal):

Amo te qui tam benevolus sis,
I love you for being so generous.

(4) Or the analogous meaning of 'although he' (Concessive):

Romani, qui bis in praeliis victi essent, de republica
tamen non desperabant,

The Romans, though twice beaten in battle, nevertheless did not despair of the republic.

EXERCISE CXLVII.

(Qui with the Subjunctive: easy.)

1. He at once despatched a messenger to inform his father of his situation. 2. The men who were condemned yesterday ought not to be forgiven. We ought not to forgive men who do not repent of the injury which they have done us. 3. It is useless to address a multitude so great that no human voice can possibly reach it. 4. He was not the man to allow himself to be injured with impunity. 5. I will send you a letter to inform you how I am, and on what day I intend to arrive at Mantua. 6. There are many nations who deem themselves invincible; there is but one which never has been conquered. 7. He had no place on which to set his foot. 8. He was unworthy of being raised to the throne.

EXERCISE CXLVIII.

(Qui with the Subjunctive: easy.)

1. One of the legions was given to Fabius to be led against the enemy. 2. How unfortunate I was

not to have been present on that occasion ! 3. He is too wise to go to Rome to stand for office. 4. He is just the man to conquer a savage enemy with a small force. 5. I hope that you will give me something to do. 6. They do not now seem worthy to be free : but formerly many of them were found to venture on taking up arms. 7. Their prayers were such as could not be resisted. 8. There will soon remain no house in which you can take refuge. 9. I was not surprised at this, considering that I knew him to be a man of consummate ability.

EXERCISE CXLIX.

(Qui with the Subjunctive.)

1. Caesar complained bitterly of my vote, as he had already seen Crassus at Ravenna, and had there been incensed by him against me. 2. A certain scribe was found to publish the calendar to the people, and filch the learning of the lawyers from them. 3. There are some who think that a man cannot become a good orator unless he knows all sciences. 4. Those also are to be deemed mean persons who buy goods from merchants with the object of selling them immediately. 5. I commend Publius to you for his father's sake, though he has always shown himself a most bitter enemy to me. 6. Those who had escaped, seeing that their only hope lay in reaching some place of refuge before daylight, made straight for Athens. 7. How fortunate I deem myself to have heard Cicero in his best days ! for though I am

no orator myself, I cannot bear to listen to commonplace speakers ¹.

¹ *mediocris.*

Quin and Quominus.

§ 155. **Quin** is a compound of the old Abl. *quî* and *ne* (for *non*): it thus properly means 'Why not?' as *quin conscendimus equos?* 'why don't we mount our horses?' *Quin* thus used had originally a peremptory force: 'why not?' Hence, when its original meaning was forgotten, it came to be used with the Imperative: *quin abi*, 'come now, get off!'

It is generally used **Relatively**, sometimes in Consecutive Clauses (= *qui non*), more often after expressions of *doubting*, *hindering*, or *preventing*, &c., but only after **Negative or Interrogative sentences**:

Non dubium est quin uxorem nolit filius,

There is no doubt the son does not want a wife;

Nulla causa est quin me condones cruci,

There is no reason why you should not present me to the gallows.

§ 156. **Quominus** (lit. 'that by that the less') is used in a similar way, after expressions of *preventing*, &c., usually of a Negative or Interrogative character:

Non prohibebo quominus (or ne) proficiscaris,

I will not prevent you from setting out;

Per Afranium stetit quominus dimicaretur,

Afranius was the cause of no battle being fought.

EXERCISE CL.

(*Quin and Quominus.*)

1. There is no doubt that the Romans had no just ground for war with the Carthaginians. 2. It is quite impossible that you do not love me, con-

sidering that you have always preferred to obtain for me an honour rather than to get it for yourself. 3. I could not but accuse Marius, seeing that the Africans had shown me such kindness when I was amongst them. 4. There is no one who does not think that he is guilty. 5. So convinced were the jury of his guilt, that they could scarcely be restrained from condemning him unheard. 6. He was very near meeting his death on that day: had he not been protected by an armed force, nothing would have prevented the mob from tearing him to pieces. 7. The more silent a man is, the wiser he is generally esteemed.

The Consecution of Tenses in Subordinate Clauses.

§ 157. The General Rule laid down in § 123 that **Primary Tenses are Subordinate to Primary, and Historical to Historical**, must be regarded as the fundamental Law of Sequence; but it must not be pressed too far. That Rule expresses the natural, normal sequence of ideas; but it is liable to be modified when the sense requires it, or by some peculiarity of Latin idiom. In the former case, common sense will be our guide: in the latter, observance of the best usage.

The following points should especially be noted:

(1) **The Present Perfect** (or Perfect Absolute) is by no means always followed by a Primary Tense: on the contrary, *unless it is absolutely equivalent to a Present it is usually followed by an Imperfect*, both in Final and Consecutive Clauses*:

* This point has been established by Professor G. S. Sale, *Classical Review*, III. p. 6.

Huc ecfugi foras ut ne viderem misera exempla,
I have fled out of the house that I should not see . . . ;
(ut Final) ;

Ita contracta res est et adducta in angustum ut omnis caritas aut inter duo aut inter paucos iungeretur,

The matter (i. e. the sphere of friendship) has been so narrowed that affection can only be formed between two, or between a few persons (ut Consecutive) ;

Sempronius hoc in imperio consecutus est, ut tam carus esset militibus,

Sempronius has achieved this in his command, namely that he should be so popular with the soldiers (ut Definitive).

The above Consecution is perfectly natural. The result aimed at and achieved may be always regarded as *beginning* at the time of the past action ; and the Latins, not having two forms to express Perfect and Aorist meanings, were perhaps hardly conscious of the difference. See §§ 147 (2) and 157 (6).

(2) The Perfect Aorist may follow a Present :

Concedant ut hi viri boni fuerint,

Let them grant that these were (Aorist) good men.

(3) The Present may follow the Perfect Aorist :

Sic quantum in bello fortuna possit cognosci potuit,

Thus it could be learned how great in war is the power of fortune.

(4) In Consecutive Clauses (see above § 137), the Rule of Sequence hardly exists, except just so far as the sense requires it. Each Clause, in fact, Principal and Subordinate, takes its own time. Even in Final Clauses we should perhaps say that 'The Present Tense denotes present purpose, the Imperfect past purpose.'*

(5) It has been held by some that the Perf. Subj. (*amaverim*)

* So Prof. W. G. Hale.

never has an Aoristic meaning, but is always a Present Perf. : there is no foundation for this idea. As a matter of fact, the Perf. Subj. is frequently used as an Historic Tense. Thus

(a) In Indirect Questions :

Ille ego, **qui fuerim**, tenerorum lusor amorum,
Quem legis, ut noris, accipe Posteritas,

i. e. *hear what sort of man that former I, etc. was*
(Aorist) ;

(b) In Consecutive Clauses :

Eo facto sic doluit nihil **ut tulerit** gravius in vita,
i. e. *that he never took* (Aorist) *any thing worse ;*

(c) Where a person's words are caught up and repeated, partly in Oratio Recta, partly in Orat. Obliqua :

'Apud exercitum' inquit 'tam diu fueris?'

'What' says he : 'you were all that time with the army, were you?' (i. e. 'You say that you were all that time with the army, do you?')

(d) Note especially the use of the Aoristic *fuerim* (quite correctly) in Conditional Clauses dependent on *ut* Consecutive :

Ita aeger eram **ut, nisi** medicus advenisset, moriturus fuerim,
I was so ill that had not the doctor arrived, I was (at the time mentioned) *about to die*' (i. e. 'would have died') ; sometimes (not so correctly, and apparently by analogy) in Conditional Clauses in Past Time in Indirect questions. Thus the Latin idiom for 'I asked what he would have done,' is *rogavi quid factur^{us} fuerit*. The sense here really requires *fuisse*, not *fuerit* ; for the true equivalent to 'I asked him what he would have done,' is 'I asked him what he *had been* about to do' (*fuisse*), not 'I asked him what he *was* about to do' (*fuerit*). But in these cases the more correct Plup. is also used : Liv. 10. 45 and 28. 41.

(6) Nevertheless, the Imperf. remained the favourite Tense for Subordinate Clauses in the Past, and is often used,

especially in Consecutive Clauses, where one would expect the Present, or the Aoristic Perfect :

Ita a maioribus constituti sumus ut omnia ad virtutem referremus,

We have been so trained by our ancestors as to refer all things to virtue.

The Imperf. is perhaps preferred in such cases because 'it has more of a modal* than a temporal character'; because it dwells less upon the fact, and more on the logical relation to the principal Verb: 'we have been *so* constituted *as to refer*.' The Aor. Perf. would mean 'so constituted that we *did* refer'; the Present 'that we *are now* referring.'

(7) Note that when the Deliberative Subjunctive (§ 107, (2)) is put into the Indirect form, one of the two Subjunctives is lost: thus *non scio quid faciam* may mean either 'I know not what to do' or simply 'I know not what I am doing.' Similarly *nesciebam quid facerem* may mean either 'I did not know what to do,' or 'I did not know what I was doing.'

Recapitulatory Exercises on Part II.

EXERCISE CLI.

1. Hiero sent corn to the city of Rome to gain the friendship of the Roman people. 2. The Roman army having remained at Capua for three months was not inclined to spare the Carthaginians. 3. Cicero declared that he had served the republic when he was young, and that he would not desert it now that he was old. 4. Piso asked of what crimes he had been accused, who was his accuser, and what

* So Mr. F. A. Kirkpatrick, *Classical Review*, IV. no. 8, p. 345.

would be his punishment if he were condemned.
5. Were he to give me this answer now, I should be content ; would that he had said the same thing yesterday ! 6. He was so ill yesterday that he could not speak ; I have therefore sent to him my own doctor that he may tell us exactly how the case stands.

EXERCISE CLII.

1. He thought that if things went well, he would return to Rome in six weeks at furthest. 2. The enemy were so terrified by the wild looks and savage cries of the barbarians that they fled for ten miles without stopping. 3. When asked what he thought of the courage and discipline of the Gauls, Caesar replied that they were not inferior to his own soldiers in any respect. 4. He added that he would never have believed that they would fight so well had he not seen them fighting with his own eyes. 5. Though he was yesterday found guilty of theft, there is no doubt that he is full of confidence to-day.

EXERCISE CLIII.

Cicero went to Sicily to enquire into the charges raised against Verres. Heius informed him that Verres had robbed him of some small statues which had been for many generations in his ancestral chapel. Upon that answer being given, Cicero asked Heius why he had consented to form one of

the deputation sent to praise Verres at Rome. 'I would not have consented,' said Heius, 'had I not feared that worse things would befall me had I refused.' 'Whom then am I to believe?' rejoined Cicero; 'I am not the man to be diverted from my enquiry by difficulties: but you, the injured persons, must help me.'

EXERCISE CLIV.

After taking Saguntum, Hannibal marched from Spain with a large army to attack the Romans in Italy. He had great difficulty in crossing the Alps, and when he reached Italy he was met by the Romans near the river Ticinus. Here a battle was fought, and the Roman consul Scipio would have been killed if his son had not rescued him from danger. Other writers say that it was a Ligurian slave who saved the consul; but Livy would prefer that the story was true of the son. After this Scipio was unwilling to fight with Hannibal; but his colleague Sempronius could not be prevented from risking a battle, especially since he was successful in a cavalry skirmish.

EXERCISE CLV.

A young Greek having gone to Alexandria to study medicine, saw, amongst other things, eight boars roasting whole in Antony's kitchen at the same time. Upon this he was mightily surprised, and thought

that there must be a vast number of guests coming to sup that night. So he asked one of the officers present what this meant, how many guests there were to be, and why Antony had invited so large a company. The officer could scarcely forbear from laughing; and informed him that though eight boars were being cooked, there were not more than eight persons in all coming to supper.

EXERCISE CLVI.

‘For it frequently happens,’ he said, ‘that Antony, after having ordered his supper, enters into conversation with some one, and forgets that he has ordered it. The order must, of course, be obeyed; but if, after finishing his conversation, he were to find his supper cold, he would perhaps order the cook to be put to death. Only last night,’ he added, ‘I thought that he would have died of passion because his supper was served up one minute later than he had expected. What was I to say in excuse for such a crime, and to such a prince? Better have twenty boars wasted, rather than incur the anger of so unreasonable a tyrant.’

EXERCISE CLVII.

There was once an ancient University in which the youth of the nation were instructed in all good learning. Of those there assembled, some were wise and some were foolish; there were some who

deemed honour the highest good, there were others who cared only for their bodies. These last kept asking of what good was it to know what was the colour of the Trojan horse; and what harm would happen to a man who did not know the name of the nurse of Æneas? Let them learn something new and useful; or better still, let them have no work at all to do. So, in order to debate this whole matter, a great meeting was called, and every student individually was asked what he thought.

EXERCISE CLVIII.

It turned out that the votes were exactly equal: one half asked that they might have more work to do, the other half that they might have less. At this the authorities were puzzled, knowing not how to satisfy both these wishes at once: till a wise physician, skilled in student-nature, declared that he could settle the whole matter satisfactorily. 'I am sure,' he said, 'that those who work would not have asked for more work unless they had worked too much already; nor would the others have asked for less work unless they were doing no work at all. Let us build therefore a new Temple, to be dedicated to the God *Labor Lusor*, and to be called a *Union*: in which work shall be made pleasant to the idle, and pleasure not unprofitable to the worker.'

EXERCISE CLIX.

Many centuries ago there was a great country

which was governed by wise laws, and in which all the magistrates were appointed by popular election. Now it happened that one Marcus desired to be elected a magistrate, and sued the people for their votes. He told them that he had been asked by many of their number to come forward, and that, if elected, he would do his best to serve them, and to make their country great and prosperous. But this did not satisfy the citizens ; so they asked him a number of troublesome questions. Amongst other things, he was asked what he would do with a certain large and turbulent island ; to which he replied that he would allow the inhabitants to manage their own affairs.

EXERCISE CLX.

Some thought this answer wise and good ; but there were others who feared that, if this were done, things would be worse than ever. ‘Before we can give these islanders this boon,’ these said, ‘let them cease from their turbulence ; they have not shown that they are worthy to be made into a nation by themselves.’ Much was said on both sides ; and it is not certain whether Marcus would in the end have been elected or not, had he not followed the advice of a very clever friend. ‘First show me by your votes,’ said he to the people, ‘what the greater number of you desire : whatever the majority desire must be right, and that I promise I will do.’ So Marcus gained all their votes, and was thought a very great statesman ever afterwards.

EXERCISE CLXI.

It was then that Alexander, being discouraged by so vigorous a defence, debated seriously whether it would not be better for him to raise the siege and go into Egypt. For after having overrun Asia with prodigious rapidity, he found his progress unhappily retarded, and lost, before a single city, the opportunity of executing many projects of infinitely greater importance. On the other hand, he considered that it would be a great blemish to his reputation, which had done him greater service than his arms, should he leave Tyre behind him, as a proof to the world that he was not invincible. So he resolved to make a last effort with a greater number of ships : manning these with all his finest troops, he fought a second naval engagement, and forced the enemy to draw off their whole fleet to the city. Resistance was now impossible. The Macedonians spared no man that came in their way ; for the king had given orders to kill all the inhabitants (those excepted who had sheltered themselves in the temples) and to fire Tyre on every side.

EXERCISE CLXII.

The Spaniards, who disliked Sixtus the Fifth, used to tell a story that he had sold himself to the Devil in the following manner. Wishing to live to be old, and to enjoy himself while he lived, he promised to surrender himself voluntarily to the

Devil if he would allow him to enjoy his office for six years. Now it happened that a young man, aged 19, had committed a murder at Rome, and was condemned to death by the judges. But, though the youth was guilty, the judges said that he could not be executed, because the law did not permit anyone under 20 years of age to be put to death. Thereupon the Pope, vexed that justice should be defeated, answered, without thinking, that if this was the only obstacle, he would lend the youth one of the years of his own life. At the end of five years the Devil appeared, and reminded Sixtus of the promise he had made on the execution of the young man. In vain Sixtus protested that only five out of the six years had passed; he was carried off at once.

EXERCISE CLXIII.

The meeting of Senate took place in the Curia of Pompey. Caesar had been advised to be on his guard on the 15th; on that morning his wife had a dream which terrified her, and she begged him to stay at home. But he went all the same; the conspirators awaited him; and when he came into the Senate House, Tillius Cimber approached, and laying hold of his robe pretended that he had a favour to ask. Thus thrown off his guard, Casca gave him the first blow; the rest then fell on him; and the great Caesar fell, pierced by three and twenty wounds.

EXERCISE CLXIV.

Old age, which renders others talkative, imposes silence upon me. In my youth I wrote many long letters, at present I write very short ones, and those only to particular friends. With respect to you, whom I have never seen, whom I know little but love much, I shall write only this:—That your book pleases me, and that I am very grateful for your good opinion. I know that I am unworthy of your praises; but you must indeed love virtue much if you value its shadow so highly! If you now treat me so generously, what kindness would you not have shown a man who had in very truth proved himself to be virtuous?

EXERCISE CLXV.

When the report of the Senate's action reached Caesar, without losing a moment he addressed his soldiers. He told them what the Senate had done to him, and why they had done it. 'For nine years he had served his country loyally; he had driven the Germans across the Rhine, he had made Gaul a Roman province; instead of thanking him for all this, the Senate had insulted the tribunes who had spoken in his defence; they must now reap what they had sown, and, before many days were past, they would repent bitterly of their rash and unpatriotic conduct.' With these words the enthusiasm of the

soldiers was roused to the uttermost. They all promised to follow whithersoever he might lead them ; and out of the whole army, only one officer proved false.

EXERCISE CLXVI.

Anaxagoras of Clazomenae was famous, not only for his wealth and for the nobility of his birth, but also for the greatness of his mind. In order that he might study philosophy, he repaired to the city of Athens, the nurse of literature in those days. Having there made the acquaintance of Pericles, a young man of great eloquence, and very rich, he instructed him carefully in all the doctrines of philosophy, foreseeing his future greatness. One day he thought that Pericles had treated him with scant respect ; upon this he went home, took to his bed, and declared that he would starve himself to death. Pericles, having heard the circumstances, ran and with tears besought his master to live, and preserve for the world all that learning. Anaxagoras said nothing in reply but this, that those who have need of a lamp must feed it with oil.

APPENDIX.

SUMMARY OF HINTS FOR ELEMENTARY LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION.

For writing correct Latin Prose, three things are needed:—

I. The proper Latin words and phrases must be used, so as to express adequately the sense of the English;

II. The words must be put into their proper Construction;

III. The words must be placed in the proper Latin Order.

These three points must be carefully observed in translating the Exercises contained in Parts I and II of this book, however simple. They are the indispensable preliminary to the formation of a good Latin style. The higher art of writing Latin, not with correctness only, but with force, with point, with elegance, and with regard to harmony and melody of sound, can only be developed by the practice of Continuous Prose, such as is contained in Parts III and IV, and by careful study of the best Latin models. And the great value of Latin Prose, so studied, consists in this, that it forms an

unrivalled discipline for acquiring the art of clear thinking and clear writing—the art of using one's own or any other language with accuracy, with force, with brevity, with logical arrangement, and artistic beauty—the art, in short, of writing well.

I. CHOICE OF LATIN WORDS AND PHRASES.

1. Be sure that you understand the English perfectly before you begin to translate it. Read it all over carefully, as a whole, two or three times. Don't be satisfied with knowing the meaning of the words separately; grasp the essence of the idea to be expressed, and put it into its simplest English form, stripped of all ornaments, metaphors, and redundancies. If you do not know the Latin equivalents for any words or phrases, you will generally find that if you turn them first into their simplest English form, you will know some Latin word or phrase which will serve your purpose.

2. If the English words and ideas are themselves simple, you can translate them literally—always bearing in mind the proper Latin order. The words for simple objects, for simple states or actions, are necessarily simple in all languages. Every language has simple words to express such things as 'a dog,' 'a house,' 'a town,' 'a mountain,' 'a battle'; such ideas as 'green,' 'big,' 'heavy,' or as 'love,' 'strength,' 'bravery'; such actions as 'to run,' 'to kill,' 'to make'; such states as 'to live,' 'to sleep,' 'to lie.'

3. But as soon as we get beyond the region of simple ideas like these, English (like other modern languages) abounds in metaphorical and artificial phrases of all kinds—many of them with long histories of their own, which have carried them far from their original meaning—quite foreign to the genius of Latin; it abounds, too, in refined and com-

plex ideas, which the Latins never could have thought. Sift all such phrases, and analyse them into their simplest form. Try both to think, and to write, as a Latin would have thought and written. To attain this—

(a) **Translate the thought, rather than the words, of the English,** and use an English-Latin Dictionary as little as possible.

(b) **Avoid metaphorical expressions,** unless you know that the particular metaphor is used in Latin. Thus for 'I have not the remotest conception,' you will say *omnino nescio*; for 'he was a paragon of wisdom,' say *sapientissimus fuit*; for 'and now death stared him in the face,' say *iam periturus erat*; for 'he ascended the throne,' say *rex factus est*; and so on.

(c) **Avoid abstractions;** where a concrete thing is meant, use a concrete word. For '*the world* is censorious,' say '*men* are censorious'; for '*Virtue* is its own reward,' say '*virtuous men*,' etc.; for 'the opinion of *antiquity*,' say 'the opinion of *the ancients*'; for 'highly pleased with *this concession*,' say 'pleased *because this had been granted*'; for 'it is a *common frailty* to envy,' say '*most men* envy'; for '*Caesar's election* to the consulship,' say '*Caesar* elected consul'; and so on.

4. Note especially the different meanings, and uses, of the English words '**That,**' '**To,**' and of words ending in **-ing**.

5. The word '**That**' may be used as follows :

(a) It may be equivalent to the **Demonstrative Pronoun** :

That *man*, *Ille* vir;

We speak that we do know,

Id quod scimus, dicimus.

(b) It may be equivalent to the Relative Pronoun, *qui, quae, quod* :

Those that think so are wrong,

Qui ita putant, errant.

Uses (a) and (b) are combined in the following sentence :

That, that that *gentleman has advanced, is not that that he should have proved to you.*

(c) It may introduce a Substantival Clause, to be translated by the Accusative and Infinitive,

As Object to a Verb :

He says (thinks) that all men are liars,

Dicit (putat) homines omnes mendaces esse ;

As Subject to a Verb :

That *you hate your own children is not probable,*

Te tuos odisse liberos haud verisimile est.

Uses (a), (b), and (c) all occur in the following :

I know that that, that that gentleman did, is wrong.

(d) It may introduce a Clause denoting Purpose, = 'in order that,' (*ut* or *qui* Final with the Subjunctive) :

Men eat that they may live,

Edunt homines ut vivant.

Note.—For the various ways in which Purpose may be expressed in Latin, see n. to p. 188.

(e) It may introduce a Clause denoting Consequence, = 'so that,' (*ut* or *qui* with the Subjunctive) :

You live so that you are happy,

Ita vivis ut felix sis.

6. The word '**To**' may be used as follows :

(a) It may be the sign of the Infinitive Mood,

As Subject to a Sentence :

To err is human,

Errare humanum est ;

After a Prolative Word (§ 27) :

I wish to die,

Mori cupio.

(b) It may be the sign of the Remoter Object
(Dative Case) :

Let Caesar's things be given to Caesar,

Dentur **Caesari** quae Caesaris sunt.

(c) It may be the sign of Motion Towards
(Accusative Case) :

I am going to Rome,

Romam eo.

(d) It may be the sign of Purpose (ut, ne, or
qui Final with the Subjunctive) :

I eat to live,

Edo **ut** vivam.

(e) It may be the sign of Consequence (ut or
qui Consecutive with the Subjunctive) :

He is worthy to be made king,

Dignus est **qui** rex fiat.

(f) It may introduce a Substantival Clause
after Verbs of asking, advising, effecting, fearing, com-
manding (except *iubeo*), etc. (ut or ne Definitive, with
the Subjunctive) :

I ask you to come,

Rogo te **ut** venias.

7. Great care must be used in translating into Latin
words ending in **-ing**. These words may be used either as

(a) Verbal Substantives, or as (b) Verbal Adjectives
(i.e. Participles).

(a) Thus if we say '*Seeing is believing*'; 'sensible men shrink from *exaggerating*'; 'he is fond of *talking*'; '*quoting* an author demands accuracy'; in each case the words in Italics are used as Substantives.

(b) But if we say 'he saw his friend *coming*' (predicative use); 'he has a *loving* father,' 'he has a *doubting* spirit' (attributive use); in each case the word in **-ing** is Adjectival.

With such words it is useful to recast the sentence so as to get rid of the word ending in **-ing** altogether. Thus if we say '*to see is to believe*'; 'men shrink from *exaggeration*'; 'he is fond of *conversation*'; '*to quote* an author (or *the quotation* of authors) demands accuracy,' &c., the Substantival meaning is apparent; while the Adjectival meaning is clear if we say, 'he saw his friend *who was coming*'; 'he had an *affectionate* father'; and so on.

The following examples illustrate the Constructions appropriate to the various uses of words ending in **-ing**:

Painting (i.e. *the act of painting*) is delightful,
Pingere amoenum est;

This is a fine painting (i.e. *picture*),

Tabula haec pulchra est;

The art of painting is noble,

Nobilis est ars **pingendi**;

This colour is fitted for painting,

Hic color ad **pingendum** (or **pingendo**) idoneus est:

This colour is fitted for painting pictures,

Hic color ad **tabulas pingendas** idoneus est;

Your painting *the queen was a lucky hit*,
 Quod reginam pinxisti, bene fecisti (or tibi felix fuit);
He died while painting the queen,
 Dum reginam pingit, mortuus est;
He sat painting a picture,
 Pingens tabulam sedebat.

II. CORRECT CONSTRUCTION OF WORDS.

The Sentence.

8. Before translating any Sentence into Latin, ask yourself
- (a) What is the Subject?
 - (b) What is the Principal Verb?
 - (c) Are there any Subordinate Clauses? If so, of what kind are they? Where should they come in?

The Verb.

9. With regard to each Verb, ask yourself
- (a) Is it Transitive or Intransitive? Active or Passive?
 - (b) If Transitive, what is its object (§ 17)?
 - (c) If Intransitive, is it followed by a Dative (see list, §§ 20-22)? Remember that Intransitive Verbs can only be used Impersonally in the Passive.
 - (d) Remember that Copulative Verbs ('I am,' 'I become,' 'I seem,' &c.), and the Passive of all Factitive Verbs ('I am made,' 'I am called,' 'I am thought,' &c.), take the same Case after them as before them.
 - (e) Remember that Prolative Verbs (see list § 27) take an Infinitive after them, to complete or supplement their meaning.

(f) Verbs of *promising, hoping, swearing, &c.*, must be followed by an Accusative and the Future Infinitive, because they point to Future time :

I hope that you are coming,
Spero te **venturum esse**.

Participles (see §§ 31-35).

10. Remember the Table :

A. Active Voice.

<i>Participle.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
Present	'Loving'	Amans
Past	'Having loved'	<i>Wanting*</i>
Future	'About to love'	Amaturus

B. Passive Voice.

Present	'Being loved'	<i>Wanting†</i>
Past	'Having been loved'	Amatus
Future	'About to be loved.'	<i>Wanting‡.</i>

* Supplied by **cum** with the Pluperf. Subjunctive (or Perfect in subordination to a Present): **cum amavisset** = 'having loved.'

† Supplied by **qui** or **dum** with Present Ind. Pass.: **qui** or **dum amatur** = 'being loved.'

‡ Supplied by **qui** with Future Indic. Pass.: **qui amabitur** = 'about to be loved.'

11. The Present Participle denotes present continuous action (*amans* = 'while loving') : it never can be

used of a completed action, as in the English 'landing at Dover, he marched to London,' § 32; it never can be used to denote a reason, as in the English 'Thinking him dead, I passed on.' (See §§ 31-35, and Pref. Note to Ex. XXXV.)

Pronouns.

12. Study carefully the exact meaning of the various Pronouns as given in the Prefatory Notes to Exx. I and XIX, and of the Pronominal Adverbs in Pref. Note to Ex. XXXIII.

(a) Remember that *se, sui, suus, &c.*, can only be used when they refer to the Subject of the Sentence (*suus*, however, sometimes otherwise : see n. on p. 8).

(b) The Relative, *qui, quae, quod*, must take whatever Case is required by the Construction of its own Clause; see examples § 14.

(c) Never omit the Relative in Latin, though it is often omitted in English :

We speak that we do know, we testify **that** we have seen,

Id quod *scimus dicimus, id quod vidimus testificamur.*

(d) A Genitive cannot depend upon a Pronoun, as in the English 'that of,' 'those of.' See Ex. XXXIV, n. 3.

My sheep are bigger than those of my father,

Oves meae grandiores quam patris (i. e. oves) sunt.

(e) 'Those killed,' 'those remaining,' &c. must be translated *illi* (or *ei*) *qui interfecti sunt, qui reliqui erant*, etc. See Ex. LI, n. 4.

Special Points as to the Cases.

13. Always translate

Motion Towards,	} by the Accusative ;
Time, how long,	
Space, how great,	
Distance, how long	

Place whence,	} by the Ablative .
Place where,	
(Exception §§ 77, 104)	
Time when,	
The Thing by which,	

14. The Person by whom anything is done must be expressed by the **Ablative with the Preposition a or ab** before it (**Ablative of the Agent**), except after the Part. in *-dus*, Adjectives in *-bilis* (and sometimes Passive Parts.), when the Dative is usually found :

This was done by Pompey,
 Hoc a Pompeio factum est ;
This must be done by you,
 Hoc tibi faciendum est.

15. The **Ablative Absolute** can never be used if the Noun, or any word in Apposition to it, has already a place in the Construction of the Sentence, § 89 :

Victo Brenno, Galli abierunt,
Brennus having been defeated, the Gauls departed ; but
 Victus Brennus abiit,
Brennus, having been defeated, departed.

16. For Numerals and modes of counting, see Pref. Note to **Ex. LXXXV**, p. 127.

17. For the Roman mode of dating, see Pref. Note to **Ex. LXXXVI**, p. 128.

The Subjunctive.

18. The Subjunctive may be used **Independently** in six different meanings, §§ 105-107 :

(1) **Potential** : *faciam, fecerim*, 'I may do it,' 'I may have done it' ;

(2) **Deliberative** : *quid faciam ? quid facerem ?* 'What am I to do ?' 'What was I to do ?'

(3) **Optative** : *hoc faciam ! hoc fecissem !* 'May I do this !' 'Would that I had done this !'

(4) **Hortative or Jussive** : *hoc faciamus*, 'Let us do this.'

Note.—In Prohibitions use *ne* with Perf. Subj. : *ne feceris*, 'don't do this.'

(5) **Conditional** : *hoc facerem*, 'I would do this (if...)' ; *hoc fecissem*, 'I would have done this (if...)'.

(6) **Concessive** : *hoc faciat*, 'granted that he is doing this' ; *hoc fecerit*, 'granted that he has done this.'

Subordinate Clauses.

19. Subordinate Clauses may be of three kinds :

A. Adjectival, § 110 ;

B. Substantival, § 111 ;

C. Adverbial, § 112.

20. **Adjectival Clauses** (§ 113) are introduced by *qui* or other Relative word (Indicative Mood).

21. **Substantival Clauses** are of four kinds :

- (1) **Oratio Obliqua**, §§ 116-125 ;
- (2) **Indirect Question**, §§ 126-127 ;
- (3) **Indirect Command and Desire**, § 129 ;
- (4) **Clauses introduced by Ut or Ne**, after various Verbs and Phrases, §§ 129, 130.

(1) **Oratio Obliqua.**

22. Every Principal Verb must be in the Infinitive, every Subordinate Verb in the Subjunctive, § 120.

Note.—The Indicative does not occur, except the **Present Indic.** after *dum*.

23. The Tense of the Infinitive in Principal Clauses depends on whether its time is :

- (1) The same as . . . (**Pres. Infin.**) ;
- (2) Previous to . . . (**Perfect Infin.**) ;
- (3) Subsequent to . . . (**Future Infin.**),
that of the **Introducing Verb**, § 122.

24. The Tense of the Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses follows the **Main Rule of Consecution** (see §§ 123 and 157), i. e.

Present, Present-Perfect, or Future Part. with sim, &c.	}	in subordination to	{ Present or Future ;

Imperfect, Pluperfect, or Future Part. with <i>essem</i> , &c.	}	in subordination to a Past Tense .
---	---	---

(2) Indirect Question.

25. The Verb must always be in the Subjunctive.

26. The Tense follows the same Rule as given above for Subordinate Clauses in *Oratio Obliqua* (see § 127).

Note.—Indirect Questions are not always easily detected in English; e. g. ‘I asked him was he present,’ i. e. ‘whether he was present.’ In English, a Direct Question is marked usually by an Interrogative word coming first, and by a mark of Interrogation at the end. In Indirect Questions the Interrogative is still used, but generally does not stand first, and there is no mark of Interrogation. Thus, ‘who comes here?’ is Direct; ‘I know who comes here,’ is Indirect.

(3) Indirect Commands and Entreaties, § 129.

(4) **Other Substantival Clauses**, introduced by *ut* or *ne*, §§ 115, 129, 130.

27. The Rules for Tense and Mood in the above Clauses are the same as for Indirect Questions.

28. Adverbial Clauses are of seven kinds :

(1) **Final**, expressing Purpose or End in View, ‘in order that’; *ut*, *ne*, or *qui* with Subjunctive, in Present or Imperfect Tense, §§ 134, 135.

(2) **Consecutive**, expressing Consequence or Result, ‘so that’; *ut* or *ut non* with the Subjunctive, in any Tense except Pluperfect, §§ 136, 137.

(3) **Causal**, expressing the Cause or Reason, 'since'; the **Indicative** after *quod*, *quoniam*, *quandoquidem*, the **Subjunctive** after *cum* and *qui*, § 138.

(4) **Concessive**, expressing a hindrance or adverse reason, 'although'; the **Indicative** after *quamquam*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, the **Subjunctive** after *quamvis*, *quamquam*, *licet*, *ut*, *qui*, §§ 139, 140.

(5) **Temporal**, expressing Time, 'when,' 'while,' &c.; **Indicative** or **Subjunctive** according to sense required, §§ 141-143.

(6) **Conditional**, expressing a Condition, 'if'; sometimes the **Indicative**, more usually the **Subjunctive**, in one of the three following forms :—

(a) *Si hoc fecisses, periisses* (**Past**),

If you had done this, you would have perished;

(b) *Si hoc faceres, perires* (**Present**),

If you were doing this (now), you would be perishing;

(c) *Si hoc facias, pereas* (**Future**),

If you were to do this, you would perish.

See §§ 144-147.

(7) **Comparative**, expressing a Comparison, 'as,' 'as if,' etc.; with **Indic.** or **Subj.** according to sense, §§ 151-153.

III. ORDER OF WORDS IN LATIN.

29. Being an inflected language, Latin is much more pliable in its order than English. As the termination of a word generally gives the clue to its position in the sentence, the words can be placed in almost any order which emphasis or harmony may require, without injury to the sense. Hence in long periods

consisting of many sentences, monotony can be avoided, and a sense of variety and beauty produced, by placing the words in each sentence or clause in a different relative order. In other cases, an effect of strength may be produced by placing several sentences together with the words relatively in the same order.

30. Nevertheless, there are certain fundamental rules which students must learn to observe from the first, in writing the very simplest sentences. They must at once eschew the English order, and adopt a Latin order. A sentence of Latin words, grammatically correct, put together in a non-Latin order, is no more Latin, than a sentence of French words put together in a non-French order is French; and a student should learn from the outset, that it is as faulty to use a non-Latin order for Latin, as it would be to say in French *je vois vous, il plaît me, comme ennuyeux ils sont*.

31. The main points to observe are as follows :—

(a) **The most emphatic places in a sentence are the beginning and the end.**

(b) Never begin a sentence except with some word or words to show at once what the sentence is about; never end it except with some word essential to the completion of the sense. In other words, **show at once what you are talking about; don't complete what you have to say about it till the end of the sentence.**

(c) **Hence the Subject comes as early as possible; the Principal Verb, or really essential thing of the Predication (which usually is the Principal Verb), comes last.**

(d) Along with the Subject place all words or Clauses naturally connected with the Subject.

(e) **Demonstrative and Relative words**—*is, hic, ille; qui; nunc, tum, &c.*—**come first**, even before the Subject.

(f) The words **que, ve, quoque, autem, enim, vero**, are Enclitics; therefore they **never can stand first**, either in a Sentence or in a Clause. They usually come after the first important word.

(g) **An Adjective**, or other Qualifying word, **usually stands after its Noun**; as *civis Romanus, bellum Punicum, Di maiores, orbis terrarum*.

(h) **An Adverb, or Adverbial Phrase**, such as an Abl. Absolute, **usually stands before the Verb** which it qualifies;

Bene fecit, *he has done well*;

Exactis regibus consules creati sunt,

On the expulsion of the kings, consuls were elected.

(i) **Most governed words** (Acc. of Direct Object; Dative of Indirect Object; Ablative of Instrument; most Genitives; &c.) **come before the words which govern them**; the Gen. of Quality, and the Gen. of Definition (which are = Adjectives), usually come **after**.

(j) **As a rule, Subordinate Clauses come in before the Principal Clause**; but when they contain the really important statement, as Consecutive Clauses usually, and Final Clauses frequently do, they may stand at the end (in acc. with rule (c), given above).

(k) **Negatives stand before the words which they qualify.**

(l) **Place near together words which in sense are closely connected, or strongly contrasted,**

with each other. Thus two Pronouns occurring in one sentence should always be placed together :

Hunc tibi librum pro amicitia dedi,

I have given you this book in consideration of our friendship;

Hanc ei tua unius causa iniuriam feci,

I have done him this injury for your sake alone.

(m) **Emphasis will naturally be marked by adopting any unusual order.** Hence the Principal Verb, if not placed at the end, is often placed at the beginning; the Subject, the Object, even an Adverb or Adjective, may be placed last, if they are emphatic. A weak Verb, such as *esse*, meaning only 'to be,' seldom stands at the end; for the same reason a sentence is seldom closed by a Verb standing by itself unsupported, after a Subordinate Clause.

(n) Never, if you can help it, allow two Finite Verbs belonging to different Clauses to follow each other.*

(o) **Never permit 'a loose connection,'** i.e. two Nouns, or a Noun and Participle, connected only by a Preposition. Such phrases as the following—

(1) *The man at the wheel;*

(2) *The question at issue in this case;*

(3) *An old man in a hurry;*

(4) *A hundred men-at-arms under orders for the front;*

(5) *Thus ended the fight on the river,*

are all inadmissible in Latin. We must say—

(1) *Is qui gubernaculum tenet;*

(2) *Res quae in hac causa agitur;*

* 'Avoid "a precipitate," or conglomeration of Verbs at the end of a period.' Potts, *Hints towards Latin Prose Composition*, p. 92.

- (3) Festinans senex *or* Senex qui festinat ;
 (4) Armati centum qui ad primam aciem progredi iussi erant, &c.

The reason is obvious. In English, the connection is indicated by the order; no misapprehension is possible. In Latin, connection is indicated by inflection; any order is admissible; hence the order, by itself, is no guide to the construction. If we were to translate sentence (1), as given above, by—

Vir apud gubernaculum heri uxorem duxit,
 the meaning would be—

The man was married yesterday at the tiller.

If we were to translate sentence (5) by—

Sic finis pugnae ad fluvium factus est,
 the meaning would be—

Thus the battle was ended on the river,
 implying that it had begun elsewhere.

The fact is that, in Latin, the **Accusative, Dative, and Ablative Cases** properly qualify the **Verb**; the **Genitive** is the only case which naturally qualifies a **Noun** (see n. p. 106). Hence, if a Case is to be taken otherwise than with the Verb, this must be indicated by using an Adjective or Adjectival Clause which by the construction can go with the Noun only. Even with the Genitive we must not say, *vir ingenii*, 'a man of talent,' but *vir magni ingenii*: or better still, *magni vir ingenii*, the word *vir* being enclosed between *magni* and *ingenii*, to make all doubt as to the connection impossible.

32. Thus, in a Latin Period, the usual Order will be as follows :

i. First the Subject, preceded by any Demonstrative, Relative, or other word which indicates the connection with the preceding sentence ;

ii. Any word, phrase, or Clause explanatory of, or specially connected with, the Subject ;

iii. Any Clause or phrase indicating the time, the cause, the motive, or any other of the circumstances which lead up to, and prepare the way for, the main predication of the Sentence ;

iv. The Indirect Object (if any), with any words or Clause connected with it ;

v. The Direct Object ;

vi. Lastly, the Verb, preceded by any Adverb or Adverbial Clause which directly affects its action.

The following is a typical Sentence illustrative of the above order ; the student should notice how carefully Latin follows the logical order of sequence in the events described.

Tum¹ servus² ille fidus³, cum omnia audiisset, intellexissetque quo res tenderet⁴, timens ne dominus imprudens caderet in insidias⁵, Gallo⁶ cuidam armato⁷ prope regem pro custode adstanti⁸ gladium⁹ e manibus ita subito¹⁰ eripuit¹¹, ut ei ne tempus quidem ad resistendum fuerit¹².

Thereupon that faithful slave, having heard everything and perceived in what direction things were tending, fearing that his master might fall unawares into a trap, snatched the sword out of the hand of an armed Gaul who was standing sentinel near the king with such suddenness that he had not time even to make resistance.

¹ Tum, Demonstrative word. ² servus, the Subject. ³ ille fidus, Adj. and Pronoun qualifying the Subject. ⁴ cum . . . tenderet, clauses indicating the time, and the antecedent condition

(his understanding the situation) which led to the man's action. ⁵ *timens . . . insidias*, clause indicating the slave's motive. ⁶ *Gallo*, Indirect Object, ⁷ *cuidam . . . armato*, Pronoun and Adj. qualifying the Indirect Object. ⁸ *prope . . . adstanti*, phrase further qualifying Indirect Object. ⁹ *gladium*, Direct Object. ¹⁰ *subito*, Adverb qualifying Principal Verb. ¹¹ *eripuit*, Principal Verb. ¹² *ut . . . fuerit*, consecutive clause (depending on *ita subito eripuit*) which stands last, although a subordinate clause, because it states the result finally achieved (see above 27 (j)).

NOTE ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

33. One word of caution on this difficult subject. It is necessary, for teaching purposes, to distinguish the main uses of the Subjunctive by clear and sharp divisions, as has been done in §§ 105-107 (Appendix § 18); but it is not possible to say with exactness in every case under which head a particular Subjunctive is to be ranked; nor do these divisions exhaust every shade of meaning with which the Subjunctive can be used. The various meanings shade off into one another imperceptibly; and the advanced scholar may subdivide these into still finer shades, to which special names might be given. But these do not help us much. The essence of the Subjunctive is the same wherever it occurs, and by whatever name we call it; its force can always be felt, if it cannot always be exactly reduced to rule; and the scholar is tested by his fine sense of the use of it.

34. The following instances will show how the different senses of the Subjunctive run into one another:

(a) **The Optative and Jussive uses are closely allied;** they differ in tone, rather than in grammar, as a wish passes imperceptibly into a command. 'Let me be forgiven!' is the desire of the slave; 'let him be forgiven!' is the command of the master.

(b) The Jussive and Concessive uses were doubtless originally the same; 'let him do so-and-so,' as an order, scarcely differs from 'let him say so-and-so,' in an argument.

(c) The Potential may be almost identical with the Jussive: *ultro non etiam sileas*, 'you should not go the length of being quite silent,' Hor. Sat. ii. 5. 91. In the sentence *quam id recte faciam viderint sapientes* (Cic. de Am. iii. § 10) the Verb *viderint* may be explained either as *Jussive*, *Potential*, or *Optative*.

(d) The Potential may be almost identical with the Conditional: *hoc velim facias* may stand for 'I could wish you to do this' (*Potential*); or for 'I would wish you to do this' (*Conditional*).

(e) The Potential is sometimes scarcely to be distinguished from the Indicative; *haud sciam an* (Cic. N. D. ii. 3. § 11) is only a shade more diffident than the more usual *haud scio an* *.

(f) The Indicative is sometimes used in the sense of the Deliberative, as in Cic. de Am. vii. § 24, *Stantes plaudebant in re ficta; quid arbitramur in vera facturos fuisse?* and in Juv. iv. 130, *quidnam igitur censes? conciditur?* 'What think you? *Is it to be cut up?*'

(g) The Indicative may be used rhetorically in the apodosis of a Conditional proposition, to show how nearly the result was realised: *solus eram, si non saevus*

* Compare the exact French equivalent, *Je ne saurais pas vous dire*.

adesset amor. See § 147, **Note** (3). And so the Pluperf., Hor. Od. iii. 16. 3 (*munierant* for *muniissent*). *

(h) In the protasis of a Conditional proposition the Indicative Fut. may stand for the Subj.; as in the English, 'Is any merry? let him sing psalms.'

(i) The Jussive may almost coincide with the Conditional, as in the formula *Vivat Fidenis et agello cedo paterno*; this may be compared with *fac et eris*, or our own 'do it and you will rue it.' Cp. Virg. E. 3. 104-5.

(j) We have seen that the Causal and the Concessive uses of *qui* are fundamentally the same (§ 140). Very probably both sprang out of the Consecutive use. On that supposition, *odi te qui hoc facias* would mean, 'I hate you *being the kind of man who do this*,' the context determining whether the sense requires 'I hate you *because you do this*' (Causal), or 'I hate you *although you do this*' (Concessive).

35. On the other hand, the main uses of the Subjunctive as above given might be still further subdivided to correspond to finer niceties of meaning. Thus the Consecutive use of *ut* and *qui* includes several varieties of sense. Some scholars speak of the generic use of *qui* Consecutive when it denotes a class of persons, 'such persons as do so-and-so' (*sunt qui* with Subj.); or of its restrictive or qualifying use, as in *omnes quos quidem noverim, ita faciunt*, 'all persons—at least all persons whom I know—do so-and-so.' So *quod sciam*, 'as far as I know,' like the French *tant que je sache*.

* So in old English 'it were' for 'it would be'; and cp. the French 'Je suis content que vous soyez venu à mon secours; sans cela j'étais flambé.'

Similarly *ita . . . ut*, may have a restrictive sense, as in *eum ita laudo ut non pertimescam*, 'I praise him indeed, but I do not fear him'; or a Conditional Sense, as in *quis est qui velit vivere ut neque diligat quemquam nec ipse ab ullo diligatur?* 'who is there who would live on the condition of neither loving any one, nor of being himself beloved by any one?'

These distinctions are real distinctions, and the scholar who would use the language finely must be sensible of them; but they are natural developments from the simple Consecutive sense, and the student who has mastered that will find no difficulty in understanding them when he comes across them.

36. And so with other refinements, and what are called the 'irregularities' of syntax generally. To the student who has grasped its essential principles they present no difficulty, for, as a rule, the knowledge of the principle carries with it the knowledge of the exception also. It is needless therefore to put upon the student prematurely the burden of learning difficult names for distinctions which are not fundamental, and which he will easily grasp for himself when the time comes for him to apply them.

37. Sometimes the Verb of a Subordinate Clause is put into the Subjunctive for no reason of its own, but simply because it is subordinate to a Subjunctive. The ordinary rule is that in such cases the Indicative may be used if the clause emphasises a fact, whose truth has no logical connection with the Subjunctive upon which it depends (see § 214, **Note** (1)). But this rule is often departed from; the Mood of the Subordinate Verb is often attracted by, or assimilated to, the Subjunctive on which it depends, even when the Subordinate Clause, taken by itself, states an absolute fact. The following therefore is a good rule to

follow:—always use a Subjunctive in subordination to a Subjunctive.

38. Lastly, the young student should especially be warned against the idea that the Subjunctive is a more honourable Mood to use than the Indicative. The immature scholar, struggling with the difficulties of Latin Prose, is apt to reach a stage when he believes in the saving grace of the Subjunctive, and imagines that a free use of it will cover a multitude of sins. Let all such take to heart this Rule:—**Never use the Subjunctive unless you can give a clear reason for doing so.**

VOCABULARY.

[This Vocabulary is complete for the Exercises in Parts I and II. It will also be sufficient for easy Latin Prose generally, such as is contained in the Exercises given in Part III. No larger English-Latin Dictionary need be used; as soon as a student gets beyond a Vocabulary such as this, he should rely on his memory, and his own reading, and constantly consult his Latin-English Dictionary. If a student does not find the exact English word he wants in this Vocabulary, let him look for some equivalent word, or put the meaning in some other way. The parts of Verbs and the Genders of Nouns are not given unless irregular, or in cases where doubt may arise. Adjectives ending in *-us* are declined *-us, -a, -um*, unless stated otherwise. The numbers after Verbs denote the Conjugations; the word *dept.* after a Deponent Verb means that it governs an Accusative.]

abandon, I, desero, 3, -rui, -sertum.

abdicate, I, me abdicō (abl.), or abdicō magistratum.

ability, ingenium, -i; acumen ingenii; (means), opes, -um, f.

able, I am, possum, potui, posse; queo, 4, -ivi or -ii, -itum.

abound, I, abundo, 1.

about (prep. and adv.), circa; (adv.) circiter; fere; ferme.

about (prep.), de.

above (prep.), super (acc. and abl.); supra (acc.).

absent, I am, absum, abfui, abesse.

abstain, I, abstineo, 2, -ui, -tentum.

abundant, largus, -a, -um.

abundantly, affatim.

abuse, I (i. e. revile), male-dico (dat.); (misuse), abutor, 3, -usus sum (abl.).

accompany, I, comitor, 1.

accomplice, conscius, -a, -um.

accord, of one's own, sua sponte; ultro.

accordance with, in, ex; secundum; in (acc.); perinde ac, etc.

accordingly, itaque.

account, ratio, -onis, f.

account of, on (prep.), propter.

acquaintance, an, familiaris; amicus.

accuse, I, accuso, 1; incuso, 1.

accused, the, reus, rei, m.

achievement, res gesta (usu, in plur.).

acknowledge, I, confiteor, 2, -fessus.

acquire, I, acquiro, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum; potior, 4, -titus (abl.).

acquit, I, absolvo, 3, -solvi -solutum; libero, 1.

acre, iugerum, -i.

across (prep.), trans (acc.).

act, *I*, ago, 3, egi, actum ; *to act*, agere or se agere ; se gerere.
act, factum, -i.
action, res, rei, *f.* ; actio, -onis, *f.* ; *to bring an a. against somebody*, aliquem reum facere.
active, impiger, -gra, -grum.
activity, agilitas, -atis, *f.*
actor, histrio, -onis.
add, *I*, addo, 3, addidi, additum.
address, *I*, alloquor, 3, -locutus.
address, alloquium, -i.
admire, *I*, admiror, 1 (*dep.*).
admiration, admiratio, -onis, *f.*
admit, *I*, admitto, 3, -misi, -missum ; (*in argument*) confiteor, 2, -fessus.
adopt, *I*, adopto, 1 ; adscisco, 3, -scivi, -scitum.
adorn, *I*, adorno, 1.
advance, *I* (*intrans.*), progredior, 3, -gressus sum ; (*trans.*) promoveo, 2, -mōvi, -mōtum ; infero, 3, intuli, illatum, inferre.
advantage, fructus, -ūs, *m.*
adversary, adversarius, -i ; inimicus, -i.
advice, consilium, -i.
advise, *I*, suadeo, 2, suasi, suasum (*dat.*) ; moneo, 2.
advocate, patronus, -i.
affair, res, rei, *f.* ; negotium, -i.
affection, amor, -oris ; (*for parents*), pietas, -tatis, *f.*
afford, *I*, praebeo, 2, -bui, -bitum ; do, 1, dēdi, dātum ; offero, 3, obtuli, oblatum.

afraid, timidus ; *I am afraid*, vereor ne ; timeo ne, *etc.*
after (*prep.*), post (*acc.*).
afterwards (*adv.*), post, postea ; deinde, dein.
after that (*conj.*), postquam.
again, rursus ; iterum (*a 2nd time*).
again and again, etiam atque etiam.
against (*prep.*), contra ; adversus (*acc.*).
age, aevum ; (*time of life*) aetas, -atis, *f.* ; (*of things*) vetustas, -atis, *f.*
aged, senilis, -e.
ago, abhinc.
agree with, *I*, assentior, 3, -sensus (*dat.*) ; convenio, 4, -vēni, -ventum.
agreeable, acceptus ; gratus, -a, -um.
agreement, pactio, -onis, *f.* ; pactum, -i ; foedus, -eris, *n.* ; *an a. is made*, convenit (*impers.*).
aid, auxilium, -i.
aid, *I*, iuvo, 1 ; subvenio, 4 (*dat.*) ; succurro, 3 (*dat.*).
air, aer, aeris, *m.*
alarmed, trepidus, -a, -um.
alike (*adv.*), iuxta ; pariter.
alive, vivus, -a, -um.
all, omnis, -e ; *all together*, cunctus, -a, -um.
alliance, societas, -atis ; foedus, -eris, *n.* ; affinitas, -atis ; coniunctio, -onis, *f.*
allot, to, or have allotted to one, sortiri, 4.
allow, *I*, permitto, 3, -misi, -missum ; patior, 3, passus ; sino, 3, sivi, situm.

VOCABULARY.

ally, socius, -i.
almost, fere ; paene ; prope.
alone, solus, -a, -um ; unus,
-a, -um.
already, iam.
also, quoque (*enclitic*) ; etiam ;
necnon ; also idem.
altar, ara, -ae ; altare, -is, *n*.
always, semper.
am, I, sum, fui, esse.
amazed, I am, or am amazed
at, stupeo, 2, -ui.
ambassador, legatus, -i.
ambition, ambitio, -onis, *f*.
ambush, insidiae, -arum.
among, inter ; or per (*acc.*).
ancestors, maiores, -um.
ancestral, avitus, -a, -um.
ancient, antiquus, -a, -um ;
vetus, -eris ; priscus, -a,
-um.
ancients, veteres, -um ; an-
tiqui ; maiores.
and, et ; atque ; -que (*encli-
tic*) ; ac.
anger, ira, -ae.
angry, iratus, -a, -um ; I am
angry, irascor, 3, -atus
(*dat.*) ; succenseo, 2, -ui,
-sum (*dat.*).
animal, animal, -ālis, *n*.
annals, annales, -ium, *m*.
announce, I, nuntio, 1.
annoy, I, vexo, 1 ; angō, 3 ;
(*impers.*) it vexes, piget, 2,
-uit or pigitum est.
annul, to, irritum facere.
another, alius, -a, -ud ; the
other of two, alter, -era,
-erum.
answer, I, respondeo, 2, -di,
-sum.
ant, formica, -ae.

antagonist, hostis, -is ; ad-
versarius, -i ; inimicus, -i.
anxiety, sollicitudo, -inis, *f*. ;
cura, -ae.
anxious, sollicitus, -a, -um ;
anxius, -a, -um.
any, ullus, -a, -um (*after
negs.*) ; aliquis ; quivis ;
(*as subst.*) quisquam, quae-
quam, quicquam or quid-
quam (*after negs.*).
anything you please, quid-
vis.
anywhere (*after negat.*), us-
quam ; any whither, ali-
quo.
appeal, I, provoco, 1.
appeal, intercessio, -ionis, *f*. ;
right of appeal, ius inter-
cessionis.
appear, I, videor, 2, visus
sum ; appareo, 2, -ui.
appearance, species, -ei, *f*.
appease, I, placo, 1 ; sedo, 1.
apply, I, adhibeo, 2.
appoint, I, creo, 1 ; facio, 3,
feci, factum.
approach, I, advenio, 4, -vēni ;
adeo, 4, adii or adivi ; ag-
gredior, 3, -gressus.
approach (*subs.*) aditus, -ūs,
m. ; adventus, -ūs, *m*.
approbation, with general,
omnibus approbantibus.
approve, I, approbo, 1 ; hoc
mihi probatur.
apt (*fit*), aptus, -a, -um ;
idoneus, -a, -um.
ardour for, studium (*with
gen.*).
arise, I, surgo, 3, surrexi,
surrectum ; orior, 4, ortus
sum.

VOCABULARY.

aristocrats, optimates, -ium
or -um.
arm (of a man), bracchium,
-i; (*of soldiers*) arma,
-orum; armatura, -ae, f.
armed, armatus, -a, -um.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
around (prep.), circa (*acc.*);
(*adv.*) circiter.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrive, I, advenio, 3, -veni,
-ventum.
arrow, sagitta, -ae.
art, ars, artis, f.
as, ut; ita . . . ut; sicut.
as (as though), tanquam;
velut; quasi; (*while*), dum.
as . . . as, non minus . . .
quam, or aequae . . . ac.
as far as (prep.), tenus (*abl.*
or *gen.*).
as long as, dum; donec.
as much as, tam . . . quam.
as often as, quoties.
as regards, as to, de; quod
attinet ad.
ascertain, I, comperio, 4,
-peri, -pertum.
ashamed, I am, pudet, 3, -uit
or -itum est (*impers.*).
ask, I, rogo, 1; interrogo, 1;
peto, 3, -ivi, or -ii, petitum.
ask a question, I, quaero, 3,
-sivi, -itum.
assault, I, adior, 4, -ortus
sum (*dep.*); oppugno, 1.
assault, impetus, -ūs, m.; (*of*
a town), oppugnatio, f.
assemble, I (trans.), cogo, 3,
coegi, coactum; (*intrans.*),
convenio, 4, -vēni, -ventum.
assembly, coetus, -ūs; con-
ventus, -ūs; comitia, -orum.

assert, I, affirmo, 1; dico, 3,
dixi, dictum.
assign, I, do, 1, dēdi, dātum.
assist, I, iuvo, adiuvo, -iūvi,
-iūtum; subvenio, 4, -vēni,
-ventum (*dat.*).
assistance, I bring you, tibi
opem fero; *I come to*
one's, subvenio, subsidio
venio (*dat.*).
assume, I, sumo, 3, sumpsī,
sumptum; assumo.
assurance, confidentia, -ae.
assuredly, profecto.
asylum, asylum, -i.
at (prep.), ad; apud (*acc.*); *at*
all (usually with negat.),
omnino.
at once, statim; illico.
at one time, simul.
Athenian, Atheniensis, -e.
Athens, Athenae, -arum.
attach, I, adiungo, 3; *also*
iungo, 3, iunxi, iunctum.
attack, I, oppugno, 1; ag-
gredior, 3, -gressus sum.
attack, impetus, -ūs, m.; *I*
make an a. on, aggredior,
3; oppugno, 1; adior, 3;
(*in words*) invehor in.
attempt, I, conor, 1; tento, 1;
volo, volui, velle.
attend to, I, curo, 1; animad-
verto, 3, -ti, -sum; operam
do.
attention to (a person), I pay,
colo, 3, -ui, cultum.
attentive, sedulus, -a, -um;
attentus, -a, -um; officio-
sus, -a, -um.
attract, I, capio, 3, cepi,
captum; attraho, 3, -traxi,
-tractum.

VOCABULARY.

attractions (*personal*), *venustas*, -atis; *decor*, -ōris; *verneres*.

augur, *augur*, -uris, *m*.

August, in the month of, *Augusto mense*.

auspice, *augurium*, -i; *auspiciū*, -i.

auspices, *I take the*, *auspicio*, *i*.

authority, the (of a *magistrate*, etc.), *potestas*, -atis; the *authorities*, *magistratus* (*plur.*).

avail, *I*, *valeo*, 2.; *to avail oneself of*, *uti*, 3, *usus* (*abl.*).

avenge, *I*, *ulciscor*, 3, *ultus sum*.

avenger, *ultor*, -oris; *vindex*, -icis.

avert, *I*, *averto*, 3.

avoid, *I*, *fugio*, 3, *fūgi*, *fugitum*; *vito*, *i*; *devito*, *i*; *evito*, *i*.

axe, *securis*, -is, *f*.

awake, *I*, *expergiscor*, 3, *experrectus*.

await, *I*, *expecto*, *i*; *maneo*, 2, *mansi*, *mansum*.

aware of, *I am*, see '*I know*.'

back, *tergum*, -i.

back (*adv.*), *retro*.

bad, *malus*, -a, -um.

baggage, *impedimenta*, -orum.

bait, *a*, *esca*, -ae, *f*.

band, *manus*, -ūs, *f*.

banish, *I*, *expello*, 3, -*puli*, -*pulum*.

bank (of a *river*), *ripa*, -ae.

bankrupt, *decoctor*, -oris; *to be b.*, *non solvendo esse*; *rationes conturbare*.

barbarian, *barbarus*, -i, *m*.

barbarous (= *cruel*), *crudelis*.

barber, *tonsor*, -oris.

bard, *vates*, -is.

barley, *hordeum*, -i.

barn, *horreum*, -i.

barren, *sterilis*, -e.

base, *turpis*, -e.

battle, *pugna*, -ae; *proelium*, -i; *to join battle*, *proelium conserere* or *committere*.

bay (of the *sea*), *sinus*, -ūs.

be, see '*am*.'

bear, *I*, *fero*, 3, *tuli*, *ferre*, *latum*; *porto*, *i*; see '*endure*.'

beard, *barba*, -ae.

beast, *bestia*, -ae; *a wild b.*, *fera*, -ae.

beautiful, *pulcher*, -*chra*, -*chrum*.

beauty, *pulchritudo*, -*inis*, *f*; *forma*, -ae.

because, *quia*; *quod*; *quandoquidem*.

become, *I*, *fio*, *factus sum*, *fieri*; *it becomes*, *decet*, 2, -*uit* (*impers.*).

becoming, *decens*; *quod decet*; (*adv.*) *decenter*.

bed, *cubile*, -is; *lectus*, -i; *to go to b.*, *cubitum ire*.

bed-chamber, *cubiculum*, -i.

bee, *apis*, -is, *f*.

befalls, *it*, *evenit*, 4; *contingit*, 3.

before (*prep.*), *ante* (*acc.*); *prae* (*abl.*); (*adv.*) *antea*; *antehac*; *ante*.

before that (*conj.*), *antequam*; *priusquam*.

beg, *I*, *peto*, 3, -*ivi* or -*ii*, -*itum*; *rogo*, *i*; *oro*, *i*.

begin, *I*, *coepi*, *coeptum*,

VOCABULARY.

coepisse ; incipio, 3, -cepi,
 -ceptum.
beginning, in the, initio ;
 principio.
behave, to, se gerere ; se prae-
 bere.
behind (adv. and prep.),
 pone (*acc.*).
behold, I, aspicio ; conspicio,
 3, -spexi, -spectrum.
believe, I, credo, 3, -didi,
 -ditum.
belong to, I, sum (*with gen.*).
beloved, dilectus, -a, -um.
below (prep.), infra ; subter
 (*acc.*) ; sub (*acc. or abl.*).
bend, I, flecto, 3, flexi,
 flexum.
benefit, I, prosum, profui,
 prodesse (*dat.*) ; benefacio,
 3, -feci, -factum (*dat.*).
benefit, a, beneficium, -i.
bequest, legatum, -i.
beseech, I, oro, 1 ; precor, 1.
besides (adv.), praeterea ; in-
 super ; (*prep.*) praeter (*acc.*).
besiege, I, obsideo, 2, -sedi,
 -sessum ; oppugno, 1.
betray, I, prodo, trado, 3,
 -didi, -ditum.
between (prep.), inter.
beware, I, caveo, 3, cavi,
 cautum.
beyond (prep.), ultra (*acc.*).
bind, I, ligo, 1 ; vincio, 4,
 vinxi, vinctum.
bird, avis, -is, *f.* ; volucris,
 -is, *f.* ; ales, -itis, *c.*
bitter, amarus ; acerbus, -a,
 -um.
black, niger, -gra, -grum ;
 ater, -tra, -trum.
blame, I, culpo, 1.

blame, culpa, -ae.
blemish, vitium, -i ; mendum, -i.
blessed, beatus, -a, -um.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
blockade, obsidio, -onis, *f.*
blood, sanguis, -inis, *m.*
 cruor, -oris, *m.*
blow, a, ictus, -ūs ; (*say 'to be*
struck' or 'wounded' ;
(met., of a misfortune), ca-
 lamitas, -atis, *f.*
blue-grey, glaucus, -a, -um.
boar, aper, apri, *m.*
board, tabula ; *to go on board*,
 navem ascendere.
boast, I, me iacto, 1 ; glorior, 1.
boaster, a, gloriator.
body, corpus, -ōris, *n.* ; *dead*
body, cadaver, -eris, *n.* ; *a*
body of men, manus, -ūs, *f.*
bold, audax, -acis.
bone, os, ossis, *n.*
book, liber, -bri, *m.*
boon, gratia, -ae ; beneficium, -i.
booty, praeda, -ae ; spoliū,
 -i ; (*gener. plur.*) spolia.
born, I am, nascor, 3, natus
 sum.
borrow, I, mutuor, 1 (*dep.*).
both, uterque ; ambo ; *both . . .*
and, et . . . et ; et . . . que ;
 cum . . . tum ; tum . . . tum.
bound, I, contineo, 2, -tinui,
 -tentum.
bounds, to set, temperare ;
 moderari (*dat.*).
boundary, finis, -is, *m.*, *and*
sometimes f.
bow, arcus, -ūs ; *rainbow*,
 pluvius arcus.
boy, puer, -eri.
boyhood, pueritia, -ae.
bracelet, armilla, -ae.

VOCABULARY.

brain, cerebrum, -i.
brains (i.e. *cleverness*), ingenium; mens, etc.
branch, ramus, -i.
brass, aes, aeris, n.
brave, fortis, -e.
bravery, fortitudo, -inis, f.; virtus, -utis, f.
break, I, frango, 3, fregi, fractum.
breast, pectus, -oris, n.
breast-plate, lorica, -ae.
breathe, I, spiro, I.
breeze, aura, -ae.
bribery, ambitus, -ūs, m.
brick, later, -eris, m.; *built* of b., lateritius (adj.).
bridge, pons, pontis, m.
bridle, bit, frenum, -i.
bright, clarus; lucidus, -a, -um.
brilliant, clarus; eximius; nitidus, -a, -um.
bring, I, fero or affero, 3, attuli, allatum, afferre.
bring oneself to, adduci ut (with subj.).
bring back, I, refero, 3, -tuli, -latum, -ferre.
Britain, Britannia, -ae.
brother, frater, -tris.
buffoon, scurra, -ae, m.
build, I, aedifico, I; *to b. a (long) wall*, ducere murum.
bull, taurus, -i.
bullock, bos, bovis, m.; iuvencus, -i.
burden, onus, oneris, n.
burn, I (trans.), uro or comburo, 3, -ussi, -ustum; incendo, accendo, 3, -di, -sum.
burn, I (intrans.), ardeo, 2, arsi, arsum.

burst, I, rumpo, 3, rūpi, ruptum.
burst into, I, irrumpo, 3, -rupi, -ruptum.
burst open, I, effringo; refringo, 3, -fregi, -fractum.
bury, I, sepelio, 4, -ivi or -ii, -ultum.
business, negotium, -i; res, rei, f.
busy, to, oneself with, versari in.
but, sed; at; verum (emphatic); autem (enclitic).
buy, I, emo, 3, ēmi, emptum.
by (prep.), a or ab; *by means of*, per (acc.); *beside*, iuxta (acc.).

Caesar, Caesar, -āris.
calamity, calamitas, -atis; (in war), clades, -is, f.
calends, kalendae, -arum.
calendar, fasti, -orum.
calf, vitulus, -i.
call, I, voco, I; appello, I.
calm, placidus, -a, -um; aequus; tranquillus; quietus.
calmness, aequus animus.
calumny, calumnia, -ae.
camp, castra, -orum, n.
candidate, candidatus, -i; petitor, -oris; *to be a c.*, petere.
candle, candēla, -ae.
cap, pileus, -i.
capable, capax, -acis (with gen.).
capacity (i.e. *cleverness*), ingenium, -i.
capital, capitalis, -e.
captive, captivus, -i; captiva, -ae.

VOCABULARY.

captor, qui capit ; qui cepit,
etc.

capture, *I*, capio, 3, cepi,
captum.

capture (e. g. of the city), say
'the city taken'.

carcase, cadaver, -eris, *n*.

care, cura, -ae.

care for, *I*, see 'like'; to take
c. against, caveo, 2 (dat.,
or with de).

career, see 'life.'

careless, securus, -a, -um.

carry, *I*, fero, 3, tuli, latum,
ferre.

carry across, *I*, transporto, 1 ;
traduco, 3 ; transveho, 3,
-vexi, -vectum.

carry off, *I*, abigo, 3, -ēgi,
-actum ; avertō, 3, -ti,
-sum.

carry on, *I* (war, etc.), gero,
3, gessi, gestum.

case (a law term), causa, -ae ;
it is the case, fit ut (subj.).

cast, *I*, see 'throw.'

cast up, to (against anyone),
obicere alicui aliquid.

cast up, to (an account), ra-
tionem putare, conficere.

cat, feles, -is, *f*.

catch, *I*, capio, 3 ; assequor,
3, -secutus.

cattle, boves ; pecudes.

cause, *I*, facio, 3, feci, fac-
tum ; efficio, 3, -feci, -fec-
tum.

cause, *I*, facio ut.

cause, causa, -ae.

caution, cura, -ae ; with c.,
caute.

cavalry, equites, -tum ; equi-
tatus, -ūs.

cave, antrum, -i ; spelunca,
-ae ; caverna, -ae.

cease, *I*, desino, 3, -sii, -sītum ;
desisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum.

celebrate, *I*, celebros, 1 ; *I c. a*
feast, festum diem habeo.

certain, certus, -a, -um ; a cer-
tain one (pron.), quidam.

certainly, certe ; (sometimes
certo).

chaff, palea, -ae.

chain, catena, -ae ; vinculum, -i.

chair, sella, -ae ; cathedra, -ae.

chance, by, or 'it chanced
that,' use forte.

chance, casus, -ūs ; fors, forte
(abl.), *f*.

change, *I*, muto, 1 ; permuto, 1.

change, a, res novae.

chapel, sacrarium, -i ; sa-
cellum, -i.

character, mores, -um, *m*. ;
natura, -ae.

character (good), virtus, -utis, *f*.

character (natural), indoles,
-is, *f*.

character (in a play), per-
sona, -ae.

charge, *I*, into, irruo, 3, -ui ;
irrumpe, 3, -rūpi, -rup-
tum ; impetum facio or in-
vehor in.

charge (of troops), impetus,
-ūs.

charge (accusation), crimen,
-inis, *n*.

chariot, currus, -ūs.

cheap, vilis, -e ; parvi pretii.

cheat, *I*, fallo, 3, fefelli ;
fraudo, 1.

cheek, gena, -ae.

cheerful, hilaris, -e (and
hilarus).

VOCABULARY.

cheese, caseus, -i, *m.*
chicken, pullus, -i.
chief, princeps, -ipis.
child, infans, -antis; puer, -eri; filius, -ī; puella, filia.
children, liberi, -orum.
choose, *I*, opto, 1; lego, eligo, and deligo, 3, -lēgi, -lectum.
Cicero, Cicero, -onis.
circle, orbis, -is, *m.*
circumstance, res, rei, *f.*
citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
citizen, civis, -is, *c.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*; oppidum, -i, *n.*; *city*, of the (*adj.*), urbanus.
civil, civilis, -e.
claim, *I*, vindico, 1.
clan, gens, -ntis, *f.*
class, classis, -is, *f.*; genus, -eris, *n.*
clean, mundus, -a, -um.
clear, *I*, purgo, 1.
client, cliens, -entis.
climb, *I*, scando, 3, -di, -sum; ascendo, conscendo.
close, *I*, claudio, 3, clausi, clausum; operio, 4, -ui, -rtum.
clothe, *I*, vestio, 4; induo, 3.
clothing, vestitus, -ūs, *m.*
cloud, nubes, -is, *f.*
coat, vestis, -is, *f.*
coast, litus, -ōris, *n.*; ora, -ae.
coax, *I*, blandior, 4 (*dat.*); mulceo, 2, -si, -sum.
cobbler, sutor, -oris.
cohort, cohors, -ortis, *f.*
coin, nummus, -i.
cold, frigus, -ōris, *n.*
cold, frigidus, -a, -um.
colleague, collega, -ae, *m.*

collect, *I*, together, colligo, 3, -legi, -lectum.
colonist, colonus, -i.
combatants, ei qui pugnant, pugnabant, *etc.*
come, *I*, venio, 4, vēni, ventum; *I come forward*, prodeo, 4, -ii, -itum,
come forth, *I*, prodeo, 4, -ii, -itum; egredior, 3, -gressus.
come together, *I*, convenio, 3, -veni, -ventum.
command, *I*, impero, 1 (*with dat. and ut*); iubeo, 2, iussi, iussum.
command, imperium, -i; iussum, -i, and iussus, -ūs.
commander, imperator, -oris; dux, -ūcis.
commend, commendo, 1.
commentaries, commentarii.
commissioners, duumviri, triumviri, *etc.* (*acc. to number*).
commit, *I* (*intrust*), mando, 1; (*of an act*), committo, admitto, 3, -misi, -missum.
common, communis, -e; publicus, -a, -um; (*ordinary*), quotidianus, -a, -um; vulgaris, -e.
commonly, vulgo.
commonplace, mediocris, -e.
commonwealth, respublica, rei-publicae.
community (*civil*), civitas, -atis; (*more usually*), cives.
companion, socius, -i; comes, -itis.
company, societas, -atis, *f.*; *of soldiers*, manipulus, -i.
compare, *I*, comparo, 1; confero cum.
compassion, misericordia, -ae.

VOCABULARY.

compel, *I*, cogo, 3, coēgi, coactum.

complain, *I*, queror, 3, questus sum.

complaint, querela, -ae.

complete, *I*, expleo, compleo, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.

compose, *I*, compono, 3, -posui, -positum; *to be comp. of*, constare ex.

comrade, socius, -i; comes, -itis.

conceal, *I*, celo, 1; occulto, 1; abdo, 3, -didi, -ditum.

concerns, *it*, attinet ad; attineo, 2, -tinui, -tentum; refert; interest (*impers.*).

concerning (*prep.*), de (*abl.*), super (*acc.*).

conciliate, *I*, concilio, 1.

concur with, *I*, consentio, 4, -si, -sum; assentior, 4, -sensus (*dat.*).

condemn, *I*, damno, 1; condemnno, 1.

condition, conditio, -onis, *f.*; status, -ūs.

confer, *I*, confero, 3, -tuli, collatum.

conference, colloquium, -i.

confess, *I*, confiteor, 2, -fessus.

confidence, fides, fidei, *f.*; fiducia, -ae.

conflict, see 'fight.'

confusion, trepidatio, -onis, *f.* congratulate, *I*, gratulor, 1 (*dat.*).

conjunction, tempus, -oris, *n.*; discrimen, -inis, *n.*

connect, *I*, coniungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum.

conquer, *I*, vinco, 3, vīci,

victum; supero, 1; debello, 1 (*gen. intrans.*).

conqueror, victor, -oris.

conscious, conscius, -a, -um.

consecrate, *I*, consecro, 1; sacro, 1; dedico, 1.

consent, *I*, consentio, 4, -si, -sum; 3, patior, passus; accipio, 3, *etc.*

consist of, *I*, consto, 1, -stiti, -statum.

consolation, solatium, -i; *is a con.*, est solatio (*dat.*).

console, *I*, consolor, 1; solor, 1.

conspirator, coniuratus, -i; (*or use verb.*).

constantly, semper, *or* numquam non.

constitution, *the*, reipublicae forma, *or* status.

consul, consul, -ulis.

consular, consularis, -e.

consulship, consulatus, -ūs, *m.*

consult, *I*, consulo, 3, -sului, -sultum.

contain, *I*, capio, 3, cepi, captum; contineo, 2, -tinui, -tentum.

contend, *I*, certo, 1.

content, contentus, -a, -um (*abl.*).

contest, certamen, -inis, *n.*

contractor, conductor, -oris; redemptor, -oris.

contrary to (*adv. and prep.*), contra (*acc.*); (*conj.*), contra atque.

contribute to, *I*, conduco ad.

conversation, sermo, -onis, *m.*; colloquium, -i.

convict, *I*, convinco, 3, -vīci, -victum; damno, 1.

convoke, *I*, convoco, 1.

VOCABULARY.

cook, *I*, coquo, 3, coxi, coctum.
cook, coquus, -i.
cool, gelidus, -a, -um.
corn, frumentum, -i.
corpse, cadaver, -eris, *n*.
cost, *I*, sto, *I*, steti, statum
 (with abl.).
cottage, casa, -ae, *f*.
couch, lectus, -i; torus, -i.
council (i.e. *persons deliberating*), consilium.
counsel, consilium, -i; (*at law*), patronus, -i.
counsellors, say '*counsels*,'
 consilia, -orum.
count, *I*, numero, *I*; enu-
 mero, *I*; habeo, 2.
countenance, vultus, -ūs, *m*.;
 facies, -ei, *f*.
country, terra, -ae; *one's*
native c., patria, -ae; (*as*
opposed to town), rus, ru-
 ris, *n*.
countryman, civis; rusticus,
 -i (*as opp. to townsman*).
courage, virtus, -utis, *f*.; ani-
 mus, -i; constantia, -ae;
 fortitudo, -inis, *f*.
court, of law, iudicium, -i.
courtesy, urbanitas, -atis;
 comitas, -atis, *f*.
courtier, aulicus; e cohorte
 principis; amicus prin-
 cipis.
cover, *I*, tego, 3, texi, tectum.
covetous, avidus, -a, -um
 (*gen.*).
cow, vacca, -ae.
coward, cowardly, ignavus,
 -a, -um; timidus, -a, -um.
crack, *I*, findo, 3, fidi, fissum.
craft, dolus, -i.
crash, fragor, -oris, *m*.

create, *I*, creo, *I*; gigno, 3,
 genui, genitum.
crooked, pravus, -a, -um.
crop, seges, -etis, *f*.
cross, *I*, transeo, -ii, -itum;
 traicio, 3, traicci, -iectum.
crowd, turba, -ae; multitudo,
 -inis, *f*.
crown (*sovereignty*), regnum,
 -i.
crown (*garland*), corona, -ae.
cruel, crudelis, -e; saevus,
 -a, -um.
cruelty, crudelitas, -atis, *f*.
cry, *I*, clamo, *I*; (i.e. *weep*),
 fleo, 2, flevi, fletum.
cultivate, *I*, colo, 3, colui,
 cultum.
cup, poculum, -i; calix, cali-
 cis, *m*.
cure, *I*, medeor, 2 (*dat.*);
 sano, *I*.
custom, mos, moris, *m*.; con-
 suetudo, -inis, *f*.
customary (*usual*), usitatus.
cut, *I*, seco, *I*, -ui, -ctum;
 caedo, 3, cecidi, caesum;
 scindo, 2, scidi, scissum.
cut down, *I*, recido, 3, -cidi,
 -cissum.
dagger, pugio, -onis, *m*.
daily, quotidie; in dies.
damp, *I* am, madeo, 2.
damp, humidus, -a, -um.
danger, periculum, -i; discri-
 men, -inis, *n*.
dare, *I*, audeo, 2, ausus sum.
daring, audacia, -ae.
daring (*adj.*), audax, -acis.
dark, obscurus, -a, -um;
 ater, -tra, -trum.

VOCABULARY.

- darkness*, caligo, -inis, *f.*;
 tenebrae, -arum.
darling, deliciae, -arum
 (*plur.*).
dart, telum, -i; spiculum, -i;
 iaculum, -i; *all n.*
dash, *I*, affligo, 3, -flixi,
 -flictum.
daughter, filia, -ae; *daugh-*
ter-in-law, nurus, -ūs, *f.*
day, dies, -ei, *m.* (*sometimes*
f.).
day after day, de die in diem.
day, for the, in diem.
day, the, before, pridie.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um; *a*
dead body, cadaver, -eris, *n.*
deaf, surdus, -a, -um.
deal with, to, agere cum.
dear (highly valued), carus,
 -a, -um; dulcis, -e; gratus,
 -a, -um; (*costly*), pretiosus,
 -a, -um; magni; nimii.
death, inors, mortis, *f.*
death, to put to, morte adfi-
 cere.
debate, *I*, disputo, 1.
debt, aes alienum, aeris
 alieni, *n.*
debtor, debitor, -oris.
deceive, *I*, fallo, 3, fefelli,
 falsum; decipio, 3, -cepi,
 -ceptum.
decemvir, decemvir, -viri.
decide, *I*, decerno, 3, -crēvi,
 -crētum; *I resolve*, statuo,
 3, -ui, -ūtum; constituo, 3.
decision, iudicium, -i, *n.*; arbi-
 trium, -i, *n.*; sententia, -ae.
declare, *I*, declaro, 1; dico,
 3; profiteor, 2, -fessus sum;
 (*of war*), indico, 3.
decline, *I*, recūsō, 1.
- decree*, *I*, decerno, -crēvi,
 -crētum.
decree, decretum, -i, *n.*
dedicate, *I*, dedīco, 1; dīco,
 1; consecro, 1.
deed, res, rei, *f.*; factum, -i.
deem, *I*, puto, 1; habeo, 2;
 duco, 3; aestimo, 1.
deep, altus, -a, -um; pro-
 fundus, -a, -um.
deer, cervus, -i.
defeat, *I*, vinco, 3, vīci, victum.
defeat, clades, -is, *f.*; *for*
'the defeat of A.' say '*A.*
defeated.'
defend, *I*, defendo, 3, -di,
 -sum; tueor, 2, tuitus (*or*
 tutus).
defendant, reus, -i.
defile, saltus, -ūs; fauces,
 -ium, *f.*
delay, *I*, moror, 1; demoror,
 1; cunctor, 1.
delay, mora, -ae; cunctatio,
 -onis, *f.*
deliberate, *I*, libero, 1;
 consulo, 3, -sului, -sultum.
deliberation, deliberatio, -onis,
f.; consultatio, -onis, *f.*;
there is need of d., consulto
 opus est.
delight, *I (trans.)*, delecto, 1;
 oblecto, 1; iuvo, 1, iūvi,
 iūtum; *I delight in*, gaudeo
 in or quod.
demand, *I*, posco, 3, poposci;
 postulo, 1.
deny, *I*, nego, 1.
depart, *I*, abeo, 4, (-ivi or) -ii,
 -itum; discedo, 3, -cessi,
 -cessum.
departure, use a verb.
dependent, obediens; subiec-

VOCABULARY.

tus; *to be d.*, parens et obediens esse.
deprive, *I*, privo, 1; spolio, 1.
deputation, legatio, -onis, *f.*
descendants, posterī; nepotes; *the d. of*, ex . . . nati.
desert, *I*, desero, 3, -rui, -sertum; linquo, 3, liqui.
deserter, transfuga, -ae, *m.*
deserve, *I*, mereo, 2; mereor, 2 (*dep.*); *to des. well of*, bene mereri de.
design, consilium, -i; propositum, -i.
desirable, optabilis, -e; expectendus.
desire, *I*, cupio, 3, -ivi and -ii, -itum; volo, volui, velle; gestio, 4; opto, 1.
desire, cupido, -inis, *m. and f.*; cupiditas, -atis; voluntas, -atis.
desist, *I*, desisto, 3, -stiti, -stitum; absisto, 3, -stiti.
despair, *I*, despero, 1 (*abl. with de, or acc.*).
despair, desperatio, -onis, *f.*
desperate (of things), desperatus.
despatch, *I*, see 'send.'
despatch, a, nuntius, -i.
despise, *I*, despicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum; sperno, 3, spre- vi, spretum; contemno, 3, -tempsi, -temptum.
despoil, *I*, spolio, 1.
destination, finis, *m.*; *to arrive at one's d.*, eo quo vis pervenire.
destitute, inops, -opis; egens, -entis.
destroy, *I*, perdo, 3, -didi,

-ditum; deleo, 2, -levi, -letum.
destruction, exitium, -i; perniciēs, -ei, *f.*
deter, *I*, deterreo, 2; absterreo, 2.
determine, *I*, statuo, constituo, 3, -tui, -tutum; decerno, 3, -crevi, -cretum.
device, consilium, -i.
devise, *I*, excogito, 1.
devote oneself, to, se dare; incumbere (*dat.*).
dew, ros, roris, *n.*
dictator, dictator, -oris.
dictatorship, dictatura, -ae.
die, *I*, morior, mori, 3, mortuus sum; obeo, 4, (-ivi or) -ii, -itum.
differ, *I*, disto, 1.
different, diversus, -a, -um; alius, -a, -ud.
differently to, aliter or secus ac.
difficult, difficilis, -e; arduus, -a, -um.
difficulty, difficultas, -atis; *with difficulty*, vix.
difficulties, res angustae; *to be in difficulties*, laborare.
dig, *I*, fodio, 3, fōdi, fossum; *I dig up*, effodio, 3.
digest, *I*, concoquo, 3; (*of arrangement*), digero, 3, -gessi, -gestum.
dignity, dignitas, -atis; honos or honor, -oris; maiestas, -atis.
diligence, diligentia, -ae; industria, -ae.
diligent, diligens, -entis.
dinner, cena, -ae; prandium, -i.
dirt, squalor, -oris, *m.*; sordes, -is, *f.*

VOCABULARY.

disappoint, *I*, frustro, 1.
disaster, casus, -ūs, *m.* ;
 calamitas, -atis, *f.* ; (*of*
war), clades, -is, *f.*
discharge, *I*, mitto, dimitto,
 3; missum facio; *d. a*
duty, fungor, 3, functus
 sum (*abl.*) ; defungor.
discharge, missio, -onis, *f.*
discipline, disciplina, *f.*
disclose, *I*, aperio, 4, -ui,
 -ertum ; patefacio, 3, -feci,
 -factum.
discourse, sermo, -onis, *m.*
discover, *I*, see 'find.'
disgrace, infamia, -ae ; de-
 decus, -ōris, *n.*
disgust, taedium, -i.
disinterested (*of a person*),
 qui aliquid contra utilita-
 tem facit.
dismiss, *I*, dimitto, 3, -misi,
 -missum.
display, *I*, ostendo, 3, -di,
 -tum ; praesto, 1, -stiti.
displease, *I*, displiceo, 2 (*dat.*).
disposition, indoles, -is, *f.* ;
 ingenium, -i.
dispute, altercatio, -onis, *f.* ;
 disceptatio, -onis, *f.* ; cer-
 tamen, -inis, *n.*
distance, intervallum, -i.
distant, distans ; (*adv.*) pro-
 cul.
distant, *I am*, absum, -esse,
 -fui (*also* afui) ; disto, 1.
distinguish, *I*, noto, 1 ; dis-
 tinguo, 3, -nxi, -inctum ;
 separo, 1.
distinguished, praeclarus,
 -a, -um ; clarus ; eximius ;
 praestans, -antis.
distress, *I*, ango, 3, -nxi,

-nctum (anxum) ; afflicto, 1 ;
to be in distress, laborare.
distribute, *I*, distribuo, 3 ;
 partior, 4.
district, regio, -onis, *f.*
ditch, fossa, -ae.
divert, *I*, diverto, 3 ; avertō, 3.
divide, *I*, divido, 3, -vīsi,
 -vīsum.
do, *I*, facio, 3, feci, factum ;
I do without, careo, 2 (*abl.*).
doctor, medicus, -i.
dog, canis, -is, *c.*
door, fores, -um, *f.* (*plur.*) ;
 ianua, -ae.
double, duplex, -icis.
doubt, *I*, dubito, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um ;
 anceps, -cipitis.
down from (*prep.*), de (*abl.*).
drag off, *I*, abstraho, 3, -xi,
 -ctum.
drain, *I*, sicco, 1.
draw, *I*, duco, 3, -xi, ductum ;
 (*a sword*), stringo *or* de-
 stringo, 3, -nxi, -ictum.
draw off, *I*, abduco, 3 ;
 detraho, 3.
draw up laws, to, leges scri-
 bere.
draw out (a line of battle), *I*,
 instruo, 3, -struxi.
dream, somnium, -i.
dregs, the, faex, faecis, *f.*
drink, *I*, bibo, 3, bibi ; poto, 1.
drive, *I*, ago, 3, egi, actum ;
 pello, 3, pepuli, pulsum ;
 fugo, 1.
drive away, *I*, abigo, 3, -ēgi,
 -actum ; pello, 3, pepuli,
 pulsum.
drown, *I*, mergo, 3, mersi,
 mersum.

VOCABULARY.

duck, anas, -ātis, *f.*
due, debitus, -a, -um.
duly, rite ; iuste.
during (*prep.*), per ; inter.
duty, officium, -i ; munus, -eris, *n.* ; honestas, -atis ;
our duty, quae facere oportet or debemus.
dwell, *I*, habito, 1 ; incolo, 3, -colui.
each, quisque ; unusquisque.
each other, one another, alius alium ; alter alterum ; inter se.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um.
eagle, aquila, -ae.
ear, auris, -is, *f.*
ear of corn, arista, -ae.
early (*adv.*), mature ; (*adj.*) matutinus ; maturus ; tempestivus.
earn, *I*, mereo, 2, and mereor, 2 (*dep.*).
earth, terra, -ae ; tellus, -uris, *f.*
earthquake, terrae motus.
east, oriens, -entis ; ortus (solis).
easy, facilis, -e.
easily (*readily*), facile.
eat, *I*, edo, 3, ēdi, esum ; comedo ; vescor, 3.
egg, ovum, -i.
eight, octo ; *eighth*, octavus.
elapse, *I*, elabor, 3, -lapsus ; (*of time*), praetereo, 3, -ii.
elect, *I*, deligo, 3, -ēgi, -ectum ; *to e. a magistrate*, creare.
eloquence, eloquentia, -ae ; facundia, -ae ; dicendi vis.
eloquent, eloquens, -entis ; facundus, -a, -um.

else (*or*), aut ; *else* (*adv.*), aliōquin.
embezzle, *I*, avertō, 3 ; peculator, 1.
embezzlement, peculatus, -ūs.
emerge, *I*, emergo, 3, -si, -sum ; evado, -si, -sum.
emergency, in an, si quando opus est (*or* erat) ; si casus vocaret ; in re difficili, *etc.*
emperor, imperator, -oris.
empty, vacuus, -a, -um ; inanis, -e.
encamp, *I*, consido, 3, -sedi, -sessum ; tendo, 3, tetendi, tentum ; castra pono.
enclose, *I*, includo, 3.
encounter, *I*, congredior, 3, -gressus sum ; confligo, 3, -xi, -ctum ; certo cum.
encourage, *I*, confirmo, 1 ; hortor, cohortor, 1.
end, finis, -is, *m.* (*rarely f.*).
endeavour, see 'try.'
endowed, praeditus, -a, -um (*abl.*).
endure, *I*, patior, 3, passus sum ; perfero, 3, -tuli, -latum, -ferre.
endurance, patientia, -ae ; tolerantia, -ae.
enemy, an (*public*), hostis, -is, *c.* ; (*private*) inimicus, -i.
engage, *I* (*promise*), spondeo, 2, spocondi, sponsum ; recipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum.
engage, to (*of a battle*), proelium committere ; *or* pugnare.
engagement, see 'battle.'
enjoy, *I*, fruor, 3, fruius and fructus (*abl.*).

VOCABULARY.

enough, satis ; sat.
enough and to spare, satis superque (*with gen.*).
enquire, *I*, quaero, 3, quae-sivi, -situm.
enroll, *I*, inscribo, 3, -psi, -ptum.
enter, *I*, ineo, 4, (-ivi or) -ii, -itum ; intro, 1 ; (*to enter as received in accounts*), acceptum referre.
enter on, to, political life, rem publicam tangere, attingere.
enthusiasm, ardor, -oris ; studium, -i.
entire, totus, -a, -um ; (*unimpaired*), integer, -gra, -grum.
entrance, introitus, -ūs.
entreat, *I*, precor, 1.
entreaty, obsecratio, -onis, *f.* ; see '*prayer.*'
entrust, *I*, credo, 3, -didi, -ditum ; committo, 3, -misi, -misum.
envoy, nuntius, -i ; legatus, -i.
envy, *I*, invideo, 2, -vīdi, -vīsum (*dat.*).
envy, invidia, -ae.
equal, aequus, -a, -um ; par, paris ; (*a man's equal*), aequalis, -is.
equinox, equinoctium, -i.
equip, *I*, instruo, 3, -struxi, -structum.
erase, *I*, erado, 3, -si, -sum ; deleo, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.
escape, *I*, effugio, 3, -fūgi.
escape, fuga, -ae ; effugium, -i.
especially, praesertim.
espouse, *I* (*a cause*), amplector, -xus.

establish, *I*, statuo, 3 ; constituo, 3, -tui, -tutum.
esteem, *I*, existimo, 1.
esteem, opinio, -onis, *f.* ; fama, -ae.
eternal, aeternus, -a, -um.
even, etiam ; vel ; ipse ; *not even*, ne . . . quidem.
evening, vesper, -eris and -eri, *m.*
ever, umquam (*with negative*) ; aliquando.
everlasting, sempiternus.
every, omnis ; *everybody*, omnes ; *everything*, omnia.
evidence, indicium, -i ; testimonium, -i.
evil, an, incommodum, *n.* ; malum, *n.* ; *for adj.* see '*bad.*'
excel, *I*, praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum and -statum ; antecello, 3.
excellent, optimus, -a, -um.
except, *I*, excipio, 3.
except (*prep.*), praeter ; see '*unless.*'
exclude, *I*, excludo, 3, -di, -sum.
execute, *I*, facio, efficio, 3 ; exsequor, 3.
exhaust, *I*, exhaurio, 4, -hausi, -haustum ; *to be exhausted*, deficere.
exhibit, *I*, expono, 3 ; exhibeo, 2 ; (*of games*), edo, 3, -didi, -ditum.
exhort, *I*, exhortor ; cohortor, 1.
exile, exul, -ulis ; profugus, -i ; (*abstr.*), exilium ; *to be in exile*, exulare.
expect, *I*, expecto, 1.

VOCABULARY.

expectation, expectatio, -onis, *f.*; spes, -ei, *f.*; opinio, -onis, *f.*

expedient, utilis, -e; quod expedit.

expedition, see '*haste*.'

expel, *I*, expello, 3, -puli, -pulsum.

expense, sumptus, -ūs, *m.*

experience, *I*, utor, 3, usus sum (*abl.*); experior, 4, expertus sum; (*enjoy*), fruor, 3 (*dep.*).

experience, usus, -ūs; experientia, -ae.

expiation, piaculum, -i, *n.*

exploit, factum, -i; res gesta.

expose, *I*, expono, 3, -posui, -positum.

expound, *I*, expono, 3; exp plano, 1.

extortion, repetundae, -arum.

extract, *I*, extraho, 3; evello, 3, -i, evulsum.

extravagant, immodicus, -a, -um.

extreme, extremus, -a, -um.

exult, *I*, exulto, 1.

eye, oculus, -i; lumen, -inis, *n.*

face, *I* (*confront*), obviam eo (*dat.*).

face, see '*countenance*.'

fact, res, rei, *f.*

faction, factio, -onis, *f.*; pars, partis, *f.* (*usu. in Plural*).

fail, *I*, deficio, 3, -feci, -fec-tum; desum, -fui, -esse, (*dat.*).

fair, see '*beautiful*.'

faith, fides, -ei, *f.*

faithful, fidelis, -e; fidus, -a, -um.

fall, *I*, cado, 3, cecidi, casum; concido.

fall to the lot of, *I*, contingo, 3, -tigi, -tactum (*dat.*).

fall out, *I*, evenio, 4.

false, fictus, -a, um.

fame, fama, -ae; rumor, -oris; gloria, -ae.

family, familia, -ae; *his family*, sui.

famous, clarus, -a, -um; insignis, -e; praeclarus, -a, -um.

far from (*prep.*), procul ab.

far off (*adv.*), procul.

fare, naulum, -i.

farewell, ave; vale.

farm, fundus, -i; praedium; ager, -gri, *m.*

fashion, *I*, fingo, 3, finxi, fictum.

fast (*adv.*), celeriter.

fat, rich, pinguis, -e.

fate, fatum, -i; *The Fates*, Fata, -orum; Parcae, -arum (*poet.*).

father, pater, -tris.

father-in-law, socer, -eri.

fault, culpa, -ae; delictum, -i; vitium, -i.

favour, *I*, faveo, 2, fāvi, fautum (*dat.*).

favour, beneficium, -i, *n.*; gratia, -ae.

favourable, secundus, -a, -um; faustus, -a, -um.

fear, *I*, timeo, 2; metuo, 3; vereor, 2 (*dep.*).

fear, metus, -ūs; timor, -oris.

feast, *I*, epulor, 1.

feast, convivium, -i; epulae, -arum; dapes, -um.

feed, *I* (*trans.*), pasco, 3,

VOCABULARY.

pavi, pastum; (*intrans.*),
 pascor, 3, pastus sum.
feel, I (perceive), sentio, 4,
 -si, -sum; percipio, 3,
 -cepi, -ceptum.
fellow (slightinglly of a man),
 homo, -inis; (*a companion*),
 comes, -itis; socius, -i.
fellow-citizen, civis, -is.
female, femina, -ae.
female (adj.), femina.
ferry, I, transveho; traicio.
fertile, fertilis, -e; fecundus,
 -a, -um.
fever, febris, -is, *f.*
few, pauci, -ae, -a; *very few*,
 perpauci.
fickle, mobilis, -e.
fidelity, fides, -ei, *f.*
field, ager, agri, *m.*; pratum,
 -i; arvum, -i; *f. of battle*,
 acies, -ei.
fierce, atrox, -cis; saevus, -a,
 -um; ferox, -ocis.
fifth, quintus.
fight, I, pugno, 1; dimico, 1;
 contendo, 3, -di, -tum.
fight, pugna, -ae.
filch, I, surripio, 3; compilo, 1.
fill, I, impleo, 2, -ēvi, -ētum.
fine, pulcher; (*adv.*), pulcre.
find, I, invenio, 4, -vēni,
 -ventum; reperio, 4, rep-
 peri, repertum.
finger, digitus, -i; pollex,
 -icis, *m. (the thumb)*.
fir-tree, abies, -ētis, *f.*
fire, I set on, incendo, 3, -di,
 -sum; *I am on f.*, flagro,
 1; ardeo, 2, -si, -sum.
fire, ignis, -is, *m.*; incendium,
 -i; *fire and sword*, ferrum
 et ignis.

firm, firmus, -a, -um; con-
 stans, -antis.
first, primus; *at first*, primo.
first place, in the, primo.
first time, for the, primum.
fish, piscis, -is, *m.*
fix, I, figo, 3, -ixi, -ixum.
flame, flamma, -ae.
flatter, I, adolor, 1, *dep.*
flee, I, fugio; aufugio, 3, -fūgi.
fleet, classis, -is, *f.*
fleeting, fugax, -acis.
flesh, caro, carnis, *f.*
flight, fuga, -ae.
flight, to take to, sese in fu-
 gam dare, or terga vertere.
flock, see 'herd.'
flog, I, verbero, 1; *I am*
flogged, vapulo, 1.
flood, diluvium, -i; diluvies,
 -ei, *f.*
flourish, I, floreo, 2.
flow, I, fluo, 3, fluxi.
fly, I (of birds), volo; (*of*
persons), fugio, 3, fūgi,
 fugitum.
flutter, I, trepido, 2; (*of*
birds), volito, 1.
fly, musca, -ae.
fold, I, plico, 1; implico, 1.
fold, sinus, -ūs, *m.*
follow, I, sequor, 3, secutus
 sum.
olly, stultitia, -ae; dementia,
 -ae.
fond, amans; studiosus, -a,
 -um.
food, cibus, -i.
fool, stultus, -i.
foolish, ineptus, -a, -um.
foot, pes, pedis, *m.*; *foot-*
soldier, pēdes, peditis.
for (prep.), pro (*abl.*).

VOCABULARY.

forbearance, indulgentia, -ae.

forbid, I, veto, I, -ui, -itum.

force, vis, vim, vi, plur. vires, -ium, f.; (*a body of men*), manus, -us, f.; copiae, -arum, plur.

foreign, peregrinus, -a, -um.

foreigner, peregrinus; exterus.

foretell, I, praedico, 3; auguror, 2.

foresee, I, provideo, 2, -vīdi.

forget, I, obliviscor, 3, -litus sum (*dep.*).

forgetful, immemor, -ōris; obliviosus, -a, -um.

forgive, I, ignosco, 3, -novi, -notum; veniam do.

forgiveness, venia, -ae.

form, I, formo, 1; fingo, 3, finxi, fictum; *to form plans*, inire consilia.

form, forma, -ae; figura, -ae.

former, prior, -us; superior, -us.

formerly, antea; antehac; olim; quondam.

fortifications, propugnacula; munimenta; (*plur.*).

fortify, I, munio, 4; moenibus circumdo.

fortune, fortuna, -ae, (*good or bad*); (*good*), felicitas, -atis, f.

found, I, condo, 3, -didi, -ditum; fundo, 1; (*a colony*), deduco, 3.

founder, conditor, -oris.

fourth, quartus, -a, -um.

fox, vulpes, -is, f.

frailty, vitium, -i.

fraud, fraus, fraudis, f.; dolus, -i; fallacia, -ae.

free, I, libero, 1; (*of slaves*), manumitto, 3.

free, liber, -era, -erum.

freeman, liber, -eri.

freedman, libertus, -i; libertinus, -i.

frequent, I, celebro, 1; frequento, 1.

frequent, creber, -bra, -brum; frequens, -entis.

frequently, crebro; saepe.

fresh, recens, -ntis; novus, -a, -um; (*not tired*), integer.

friend, amicus, -i.

friendly (*adv.*), amice.

friendship, amicitia, -ae.

frighten, I, terreo, 2.

frog, rana, -ae.

from (*prep.*), a, ab (*abl.*).

fruit, fruges, -um, f.

fruitful, fecundus, -a, -um.

fugitive, profūsus; fugitivus; *the fugitives*, say, '*those who had fled.*'

full, plenus, -a, -um; (*crowded*), frequens, -entis.

function, munus, -eris, n.

funeral, exsequiae, -arum; pompa, -ae.

funeral pile, rogos, -i, m.

furnish with, I, see '*provide.*'

furrow, sulcus, -i.

fury, ira, -ae; rabies, -ei, f.

future, futurus, -a, -um; *for the future*, in posterum.

gain, I, acquirō, 3, -quisivi, -quisitum; consequor or assequor, 3, -cutus sum.

gain, lucrum, -i; quaestus, -ūs.

gait, incessus, -ūs; ingressus, -ūs.

game, ludus, -i.

VOCABULARY.

games, the, ludi, *m.* (*plur.*).
garment, vestis, -is, *f.*; vestimentum, -i; vestitus, -ūs, *m.*

garrison, praesidium, -ii.

gate, porta, -ae; ianua, -ae.

gather, *I*, colligo, 3, -egi, -ectum.

Gaul, Gallia; *a Gaul*, Gallus, -a, -um.

gaze upon, *I*, adspicio, 3.

general, dux, dūcis; imperator, -oris.

generally, plerumque; ferme.

generation, aetas, -atis, *f.*; seculum, -i.

genius, ingenium, -i.

gentle, lenis, -e.

German, Germanus, -a, -um.

get, *I*, adipiscor, 3, adeptus, sum; nanciscor, 3, nactus sum.

gift, donum, -i; munus, -eris, *n.*

gird, *I*, cingo, 3, cinxi, cinctum.

girdle, zona, -ae.

girl, puella, -ae; virgo, -inis.

give, *I*, do, dēdi, dātum.

give back, *I*, reddo, 3, -didi, -ditum; refero, 3, rettuli and retuli, relatum.

give up, *I*, trado, 3, -didi, -ditum.

glad, libens; (*adv.*), libenter.

glade, saltus, -ūs.

gladiator, gladiator, -oris.

gladness, laetitia, -ae.

glide, *I*, labor, 3, lapsus sum.

glory, gloria, -ae; fama, -ae.

glow, *I*, candeo, 2, -ui.

go, *I*, eo, 4, -ivi or -ii, -itum.

go away, *I*, abeo, 4, (-ivi

or) -ii, -itum; discedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum.

goat, caper, -pri.

God, Deus, -i; Divus, -i.

gold, aurum, -i.

golden, aureus, -a, -um.

good, bonus, -a, -um.

goods, bona, -orum.

goose, anser, -eris.

govern, *I*, rego, 3; impero, *I* (*dat.*).

gradually, paulatim.

grain, frumentum -i; granum, -i.

grandfather, avus, -i; *grandmother*, avia, -ae.

grandson, nepos, -ōtis;

granddaughter, neptis.

grant, *I*, do, 1, dēdi, dātum; concedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum.

grass, gramen, -inis, *n.*

grateful, gratus, -a, -um.

great, magnus, -a, -um; ingens, -entis.

greatly, magnopere; vehementer; maxime.

greatness, magnitudo, -inis, *f.*

Grecian, Graecus, -a, -um.

greedy, avidus, -a, -um.

Greek, Graecus, -i.

green, viridis, -e.

grief, dolor, -oris; luctus, -ūs, *m.*

grieve, *I* (*intrans.*), doleo, 2; (*trans.*), lugeo, 2, luxi, luctum.

groan, *I*, gemo, 3, -ui, -itum.

groan, gemitus, -ūs.

ground, humus, -i, *f.*; solum, -i; terra, -ae; *on the*

ground, humi; (*reason*), causa, -ae.

VOCABULARY.

grove, *lucus*, -i; *nemus*, -oris, *n*.

grow, *I*, *cresco*, 3, *crevi*, *cretum*.

grudge, *I*, *invideo*, 2, -vīdi, -vīsum.

guard, *I*, *custodio*, 4.

guard, *custodia* (often in plur.).

guardian, *custos*, -odis.

guest, *hospes*, -itis.

guide, *dux*, dūcis.

guile, *dolus*, -i.

guilt, *scelus*, -eris, *n*.; *his*

guilt, *quod nocens erat*.

guiltless, see '*innocent*.'

guilty, *nocens*, -entis; *noxius*, -a, -um; *sons*, *sontis*.

hair, *capillus*, -i; *crinis*, -is, *m*. (*usu. in plur.*); *coma*, -ae.

half, *dimidium*, -i.

half (*adj.*), *dimidius*, -a, -um.

hall, *atrium*, -ii.

hammer, *I*, *tundo*, 3, *tutudi*, *tunsum* or *tusum*.

hand, *manus*, -us, *f*.; *at my hands*, *etc.*, *a me*.

hand to hand, *comminus*.

hand over, *I*, *trado*, 3, -didi, -ditum.

hang, *I*, *pendo*, 3, *pependi*, *pensum*; *suspendo*, 3, -pendi, -pensum; (*intrans.*), *pendeo*, 2, *pependi*.

hang over, *I* (*intrans.*), *immineo*, 2.

happen, *to*, *fieri*, *factum*.

happens, *it*, *accidit ut*; *fit ut*.

happens to (*a person*), *it*, *contingit alicui ut*.

happiness, *vita beata*, *beate vivere*.

happy, *felix*, -icis; *beatus*, -a, -um.

harass, *I*, *vexo*, 1.

harbour, *portus*, -ūs.

hard, *durus*, -a, -um.

hardly, *vix*.

hare, *lepus*, -ōris, *m*.

harm, *damnum*, -i; *detri-*
mentum, -i.

harmony with, *in*, *congru-*
enter (*dat.*).

haste, *celeritas*, -atis; *pro-*
peratio, -onis, *f*.; *there is*
need of h., *properandum*
est, *properato opus est*.

hasten, *I*, *propero*, 1; *festino*,
1 (*trans. and intrans.*).

hate, *I*, *odi*, *odisse*.

hate, *hatred*, *odium*, -i.

hateful, *odiosus*, -a, -um;
invisus, -a, -um.

have, *I*, *habeo*, 2.

hay, *fenum*, -i.

hazard, *periculum*, -i; *dis-*
crimen, -inis, *n*.

hazard, *at any*, *omnino*; *uti-*
que; *quocumque cum peri-*
culo.

he, *is*; *ille*; *he himself*, *ipse*.

head, *caput*, -itis, *n*.

heal, *I*, *sano*, 1; *medicor*, 1;
medeor, 2 (*dat.*).

health, *valetudo*, -inis, *f*. (*esp.*
'bad health'); *sanitas*,
-atis, *f*.

heap, *I*, *cumulo*, 1.

hear, *I*, *audio*, 4.

heart, *cor*, *cordis*, *n*.; *ani-*
mus, -i.

hearth, *focus*, -i.

heat, *calor*, -oris, *m*.

VOCABULARY.

heaven, caelum, -i; (*metaphor.*), Di Immortales.
heavy, gravis, -e.
heel, calx, calcis, *f.*
helmet, galea, -ae.
heir, heiress, heres, heredis, *c.*
help, *I*, iuvo, *I*, iūvi, iūtum; subvenio, 4, -veni, -ventum (*dat.*).
help, auxilium, -i; ops, opis, or opes (*plur.*), *f.*
helpful, utilis, -e; *to be h.*, auxilio esse alicui.
hen, gallina, -ae.
hence, hinc.
herd, grex, gregis, *m.*: armentum, -i; (*of a crowd*), vulgus, -i, *n.*
here, hic.
hero, heros, -ois; vir, viri.
hesitate, *I*, dubito, *I*; cuncto, *I*.
hesitation, mora, -ae; cunctatio; dubitatio, *f.*
hide, *I*, condo, 3, -didi, -ditum.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, *m.*; clivus, -i.
himself, ipse.
hire, *I*, conduco, 3.
his, eius; illius; suus.
hither, huc; *hitherto*, hactenus; *hither and thither*, ultro citroque.
hoard, acervus, -i.
hoarse, raucus, -a, -um.
hold, *I* (*keep*), teneo, 2, tenui, tentum.
hold fast to, *I* (*trans.*), obtineo, 2.
hold out, *I* (*trans.*), porrigo, 3, -rexi, -rectum; (*intrans.*), resisto, 3, restiti; duro, *I*.

holidays, feriae, -arum.
hollow, cavus, -a, -um.
home (= *house*), domus, -i or -ūs, *f.*; domicilium, -i; (= 'home'), Penates, -ium; *at home*, domi.
honesty, quod honestum est; probitas, -atis.
honey, mel, mellis, *n.*
honour (*personal honour, good faith*), fides, -ei, *f.*; (*distinction, esp. of a public office*), honos, -oris, *m.*; (*self-respect*), dignitas, -atis, *f.*
honourable, honestus, -a, -um.
honourable to, to be, honori esse (alicui).
hope, *I*, spero, *I*.
hope, spes, -ei, *f.*; expectatio, -onis, *f.*
horn, cornu, -ūs (*rarely -u*).
horse, equus, -i; *a mare*, equa, -ae.
horseman, eques, -itis.
hostage, obses, -idis.
hostile, inimicus; infestus, -a, -um.
hot, calidus, -a, -um; *I am hot*, caleo, 2, -ui.
house, domus, -i or -ūs, *f.*; aedes, -ium, *f.* (*plur.*).
house, in my, apud me; in your house, apud te; etc.
how, quomodo; ut; quam; quemadmodum.
how much, as much, quantus, -a, -um.
huge, ingens, -entis.
human, humanus, -a, -um.
hundredth, centesimus.
hunger, fames, -is, *f.*; inedia, -ae.

VOCABULARY.

hungry, esuriens ; ieiunus.
hunt, *I*, venor, 1.
hunter, venator, -oris.
hurl, *I*, conicio, 3, -ieci, -iectum ; deicio.
hurry, *I*, propero, 1 ; festino, 1 ; trepido, 1.
hurry, *in a*, subito ; confestim.
hurt, *I*, laedo, 3, laesi, laesum ; noceo, 2 (*dat.*).
hurtful, noxius, -a, -um ; nocens, -entis.
husband, maritus, -i ; vir, viri.
husbandman, colonus, -i ; rusticus, -i.

I, ego.
ice, glacies, -ei, *f.*
Ides, Idus, -uum, *f.* (*plur.*).
idle, ignavus, -a, -um ; (*unemployed*), otiosus, -a, -um.
if, si ; *but if*, sin.
ignorance, ignorantia, -ae.
ignorant, ignarus, -a, -um ; inscius, -a, -um.
ill, *I am*, aegroto, 1.
ill-natured, difficilis, -e ; morosus, -a, -um.
illness, morbus, -i.
imagine, *I*, fingo, 3, finxi, fictum.
immediately, statim ; confestim ; continuo ; protenus.
immortal, immortalis, -e.
impart, *I*, impertio, 4.
impartial, aequus, -a, -um ; iustus, -a, -um ; sine studio.
impede, *I*, impedio, 4 ; prohibeo, 2.

impel, *I*, impello, 3, impuli, impulsum.
impetuosity, vis, vim, vi, *f.*
impetuous, vehemens, -entis ; violentus, -a, -um.
impiety, impietas, -atis, *f.* ; scelus, -eris, *n.*
impious, impius, -a, -um.
implant, *I*, inserto, 3, -sevi, -situm.
impose, *I*, impono, 3, -posui, -positum.
impose tribute, *to*, imperare tributum, *etc.*
impossible, quod fieri non potest.
imprison, *to*, in carcerem conicere, *etc.*
impunity, impunitas, -atis.
impunity, *with*, impune.
impute, *I*, imputo, 1 ; vitio verto, 3, -ti, -sum ; ascribo, 3, -scripsi, -scriptum.
in (*prep.*), in.
in all directions, passim.
in the power of (*prep.*), penes (*acc.*).
in the presence of (*prep.*), coram (*abl.*) ; palam (*abl.*).
in regard to, de eo quod attinet ad.
inborn, innatus.
incapable, inhabilis, -e.
incensed, *I am*, irascor, 3, iratus ; succenseo, 2, -ui.
include, *I*, includo, 3, -si, -sum.
inconsistent with, abhorrens or alienus ab.
increase, *I* (*trans.*), augeo, 2, auxi, auctum ; (*intrans.*), cresco, 3, crevi, cretum.

VOCABULARY.

indifferent, securus (*lit.* 'without care').

indignation, ira, -ae; indignatio, -onis; *or use verb.*

individual, a *private*, privatus; *persons individually*, singuli.

indolence, pigritia, -ae; ignavia, -ae; socordia, -ae.

induce, *I*, adduco, 3; induco.

indulge, *I*, indulgeo, 2, -si, -tum (*dat.*); morigeror, 1 (*dat.*).

infant, infans, -ntis, *c.*

infantry, pedes, -itis; pedites, -tum; peditatus, -ūs.

inflame, *I*, accendo *or* incendio, 3, -di, -sum.

inflict, *I*, infligo, 3.

influence, auctoritas, -atis; gratia, -ae; potentia, -ae.

inform, *I*, doceo, 2, docui, doctum; facio aliquem certiore de.

ingratitude, animus ingratus.

inhabit, *I*, colo, 3; habito, 1.

injure, *I*, see 'hurt.'

injury, iniuria, -ae; detrimentum, -i; damnum, -i.

innkeeper, caupo, -onis.

innocent, innocens; insons, -ontis.

innocence, innocentia, -ae.

innumerable, innumerabilis, -e.

inside (*prep. and adv.*), intra (*acc.*).

instead of (*prep.*), pro (*abl.*); non modo . . . sed; tantum abfuit ut . . . ut; quum posset *or* deberet, *etc.*

instantly, illico; see 'immediately.'

instigate, *I*, hortor, 1; urgeo, 2, ursi.

instruct, *I*, doceo, 2, docui, doctum; erudio, 4.

insult, *I*, insulto, 1; contumeliam facio *or* iacio.

insurrection, seditio, -onis, *f.*

integrity, integritas, -atis.

intend, *I*, cogito, 1; intendo, 1; in animo mihi est (*or* habeo).

intention, propositum, -i; consilium, -i.

interest (*on money*), fenus, -oris, *n.*; usura, -ae; *a man's interests*, commoda.

interest to, it is of, interest (*impers. with gen.*).

intermarriage (*the right of*), ius connubii.

interval, intervallum, -i.

intimate, familiaris, -e.

into (*prep.*), in (*acc.*).

intoxicated, ebrius, -a, -um.

invent, *I*, invenio, 4; reperio, 4, repperi, repertum.

invest, *I*, colloco, 1; pono, 3.

invincible, invictus.

invite, *I*, invito, 1.

involve, *I*, involvo, 3, -vi, -volutum.

iron, ferrum, -i.

Italian, Italus, -a, -um; Italicus, -a, -um.

Italy, Italia, -ae.

ivy, hedera, -ae.

javelin, pilum, -i; iaculum, -i.

jealous, aemulus, -a, -um.

jest, *I*, iocor, 1; cavillor, 1.

join, *I* (*trans.*), iungo, 3, -nxi, -nctum; coniungo.

VOCABULARY.

journey, *I*, iter facio.
journey, iter, itineris, *n*.
joy, gaudium, -i; laetitia, -ae.
joyful, laetus, -a, -um.
judge, iudex, -icis; quaestor, -oris.
judgment, iudicium, -i; arbitrium, -i.
jump, *I*, salio, 4, salii (ui), saltum.
Juno, Iuno, -onis.
jurisdiction, ius, iuris, *n*.
juror, iudex, -icis.
jury, iudices, -um; consilium.
just, iustus, -a, -um.
just=recently, modo.
justice, iustitia, -ae; to administer justice, ius red-dere.
justly, iure.

Kalends, Kalendae, -arum.
keen, acer, -cris, -cre.
keep, *I*, teneo, 2, tenui; retineo, 2, -tinui, -tentum.
keep off, *I* (trans.), arceo, 2; (intrans.), abstineo, 2.
keep up, *I* (maintain), servo, 1; tueor, 2.
keep one's faith or word, fidei, fidem servare or praestare.
kettle, olla, -ae; lebes, -etis, *m*.
key, clavis, -is, *f*.
kid, haedus, -i.
kill, *I*, interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum; caedo, 3, cecidi, caesum; occido, 3, -cidi, -cisum.
kind, benignus, -a, -um.
kindly (adj.), benignus; amicus (adv.), amice.

kindness, benignitas, -atis; comitas, -atis.
king, rex, regis.
kingdom, regnum, -i.
kinsmen, propinqui, -orum; necessarii, -orum.
kiss, *I*, osculor, 1.
kiss, basium.
kitchen, culina, -ae.
knife, razor, culter, -tri, *m*.
knight, eques, -itis.
knock, *I*, pulto, 1.
know, *I* nōvi, (perf.); scio, 4, scii or scivi, scitum; cognosco, 3, -nōvi, -nitum.
knowledge, scientia, -ae; cognitio, -onis, *f*.

labour, labor, -oris, *m*.
ladder, scala, -ae.
lake, lacus, -ūs, *m*.
lamb, agnus, -i.
lame, claudus, -a, -um.
lament, *I*, lamentor, 1; deploro, 1.
lamp, lampas, -ādis (acc. lampada), *f*; lucerna, -ae.
land, *I*, e nave egredior, 3, -gressus.
land, terra, -ae; tellus, -uris, *f*; ager, -agri.
language (conversation), sermo, -onis, *m*; a lang., lingua, -ae, *f*.
lap, gremium, -ii.
large, amplus, -a, -um.
last, *I*, duro, 1; permaneo, 2, -mansi, -mansum.
last, ultimus, -a, -um; postremus, -a, -um.
lasting (long), diuturnus, -a, -um; diutinus, -a, -um.

VOCABULARY.

late, serus, -a, -um.
lately, nuper.
Latin, Latinus, -a, -um; *to speak Latin*, Latine loqui.
laugh, I, rideo, 2, -si, -sum; *laugh at*, irrideo, 2, -si, -sum (*dat.*).
law, lex, legis, *f.*; ius, *n.*; *divine law*, fas (*indecl.*).
lawful, it is, licet, 2, licuit or licitum est (*impers.*).
lawyer, iuris-peritus; iuris-consultus.
lay, I, pono, 3, posui, positum.
lay down, I, depono, 3; (*of laws*), iura do.
lay up, I, condo, 3; *lay low*, sterno; 3, stravi, stratum.
lay upon, I, impono, 3.
lead, I, duco, 3; *lead back*, reduco, 3; *lead out*, educo.
leader, dux, dūcis.
leaf, frons, frondis, *f.*
lean, macer, -cra, -crum.
lean on, I, nitor, 3, nisus or nixus sum.
leap, I, salio, 4, salii and salui, saltum.
learn, I, disco, 3, didici.
learned, doctus, -a, -um.
learning, doctrina, -ae; eruditio, -onis, *f.*
leave, I, linquo; relinquo, 3, -liqui, -lictum; *I bequeath*, lego, 1.
leave, with your, pace tua.
left, sinister, -tra, -trum; laevus, -a, -um.
leg, crus, cruris, *n.*
legate, legatus, -i.
legion, legio, -onis, *f.*

leisure, otium, *n.*; *at leisure*, otiosus (*adj.*); *I have l. for*, vaco, 1 (*dat.*).
less, minor, minus.
let, I, sino, 3, sivi, situm; patior, 3, passus sum (*dep.*).
let slip, I, omitto, 3, -misi, -missum.
level, planus, -a, -um.
liable to, obnoxius, -a, -um.
liar, mendax, -acis.
liberator, liberator, -oris.
liberty, libertas, -atis, *f.*
lick, I, lambo, 3, -bi, -itum.
lie, I, mentior, 4.
lie, mendacium, -i.
lie down, I, occumbo, decumbo, 3, -cubui, -cubitum; iaceo, 2; procumbo.
lie under or near, subiaceo, 2, -ui (*dat.*).
lieutenant, legatus, -i.
life, vita, -ae.
lifeless, exanimis, -e; *or* exanimus.
lift, I, tollo, 3, sustuli, tollere.
light, lux, lucis, *f.*; lumen, -inis, *n.*
light, lēvis, -e.
lightning, fulmen, -inis, *n.*; fulgur, -uris, *n.*
like, similis, -e (*gen. or dat.*); instar; (*adv.*), similiter; instar.
limb, membrum, -i; artus, -ūs.
limit, modus, -i.
line of battle, acies, -ei, *f.*
lip, labrum, -i.
listen, I, audio, 4.
litter, lectica, -ae.

VOCABULARY.

little, *a*, parvum; parum.
live, *I*, vivo, 3, vixi, victum;
 (spend or pass time), aeta-
 tem or vitam ago, 3, egi,
 actum.

live (*adj.*), vivus, -a, -um.
liver, iecur, -ōris or -inōris.

lo! en! ecce!

load, *I*, onero, 1.

loaf, say 'bread.'

lofty, celsus, -a, -um; ex-
 celsus.

long (*adv.*), diu or iamdu-
 dum; long ago, iam
 pridem (*with pres.*).

long, longus, -a, -um; (*of*
time), diuturnus, -a, -um.

longer, diutius.

look, *I*, aspicio, 3, -spexi,
 -spectum; tueor, 2; spec-
 to, 1.

look up, *I*, suspicio, 3, -spexi.
 -spectum.

look round, *I*, circumspi-
 cio, 3.

loose, *I*, solvo, 3, solvi, solu-
 tum.

loose, laxus, -a, -um.

lose, *I*, amitto, 3, -misi, -mis-
 sum; perdo, 3, -didi,
 -ditum.

loss, damnum, *n.*; detrimen-
 tum, *n.*

loudly, clara voce.

love, *I*, amo, 1; diligo, 3,
 -lexi, -lectum.

love, amor, -oris, *m.*; (*the*
god of love, Cupid), Cupido,
 -inis.

lover, amator, -oris.

low, *I*, mugio, 4.

low, humilis, -e; demissus,
 -a, -um; inferior, -us.

lowing (*subs.*), mugitus, -ūs,
m.

lust, libido, -inis, *f.*

mad, insanus, -a, -um; de-
 mens, -entis; amens, -entis.

madness, insania, -ae; de-
 mentia, -ae; furor, -oris;
to such a pitch of madness,
 eo dementiae.

maid-servant, ancilla, -ae.

magistrate, magistratus, -us.

magnificent, magnificus, -a,
 -um.

maintain, *I*, sustineo, 2;
 servo, 1; tueor, 2.

majority, maior pars.

make, *I*, facio, 3, fēci, fac-
 tum.

make for, *I*, peto, 3, petii or
 petivi, petitum.

man (*as distinguished from*
a woman), vir, viri, *m.*

man (*i. e. human being*),
 homo, -inis, *m. and f.*

manage, *I*, gero, 3; ago, 3.

manful, virilis; (*adv.*), viriliter.

manners, mores, -um, *m.*

many, multi, -ae, -a, *plur.*

march, iter, itineris, *n.*

mark, *I*, noto, 1; designo, 1.

marriage, coniugium, -i.

married, maritus (*of the*
man), nupta (*of the*
woman).

marry (*of the man*), duco;
 (*of the woman*), nubo, 3,
 nupsi, nuptum (*dat.*).

marsh, palus, -udis, *f.*

marshall an army, *I*, instruo,
 3, -xi, -ctum.

massacre, strages, -is, *f.*

VOCABULARY.

master, of a school, magister, -tri; *of slaves* (or *as=a tyrant*), dominus, -i.
master of the horse, equitum magister, -tri.
matron, matrona, -ae.
matter, res, rei, f.; materia, -ae.
maxim, say quod vulgo dicitur; quod in omnium ore est, etc.
mean, sordidus, -a, -um.
meantime, interea.
meadow, pratum, -i.
medicine, medicina, -ae; remedium, -i.
meet, I, eo, 4, ivi or ii, itum with obviam (dat.); occurro, 3, -curri, -cursum; *meet together*, convenio, 4, -vëni, -ventum.
meet death, to, mortem obire.
meeting, a public, concio, -onis, f.; (of one of the regular assemblies), comitia, -orum.
member, membrum, -i; *an individual member*, individuus.
memory, memoria, f.
mention, I, memoro, com-memoro, I.
merchandise, merx, mercis, f., mercatura.
mere, merus, -a, -um; *expressed often by ipse*.
message, nuntius, -i.
messenger, nuntius, -i.
metal, metallum, -i.
mid-day, meridies, -ei, m.
middle or midst (adj.), medius, -a, -um.
might, vis, f.; *with all one's might*, summa vi.
mile, a, mille (or mile) pas-

sus; *two miles*, duo millia passuum, etc.
milk, lac, lactis, n.
million, a, decies (centena millia).
mind, animus, -i, m.; mens, -tis, f.
mindful, memor, -ōris (gen.).
miracle, miraculum, -i; signa, prodigia (plur.).
miser, a, avarus, -a, -um.
misfortune, adversa fortuna; res adversae.
mismanage, to, male rem gerere.
mistake, to be in a, errare, I; falli.
mistake, error, -oris, m.; erratum, -i.
mix, I (trans.), misceo, 2, miscui, mixtum or mistum.
mob, multitudo, -inis, f.; vulgus, -i, n.
mode, modus, -i.
modesty, pudor, -oris; verecundia, -ae.
moment, momentum, -i; of time, temporis punctum.
money, pecunia, -ae; argentum, -i; nummus, -i.
monkey, simia, -ae.
monster, monstrum, -i.
moon, luna, -ae.
month, mensis, -is, m.
morals, mores, -um, m.
more, plus.
mortal, a, mortalis, -is; but usually homo, -inis.
mother, mater, -tris; generix, -icis.
mound, agger, -eris.
mourn, I, maereo, 2, maerui.
mountain, mons, montis, m.

VOCABULARY.

mournfully, maeste.
mouse, mus, muris, *m*.
mow, *I*, meto, 3, messui, messum.
much, multus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitudo, -inis, *f*.
murder, *I*, trucidō, *i*.
murder, caedes, -is, *f*.; *the murder of A.*, say 'A. murdered.'
murderer, homicida, -ae, *m*.; sicarius, -i.
must, one, oportet, opus est.
my, meus.
nail (a spike), clavus, -i; *finger-nail*, unguis, -is, *m*.
naked, nudus, -a, -um.
name, *I*, nomino, *i*; appello, *i*.
name, nomen, -inis, *n*.; *good name*, fama, -ae.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, gens, gentis, *f*.; populus, -i; natio, -onis, *f*.
native, indigena, -ae, *m*. and *f*.
nature, natura, -ae; (*personal disposition*) indoles, -is, *f*.; ingenium, -i.
nay rather, immo.
near, vicinus; proximus, -a, -um; (*adv.*) prope; iuxta.
near to (prep.), prope; sub (*acc.*).
nearly, prope; paene.
necessaries, necessaria; quae opus sunt.
necessary, necessarius, -a, -um.
neck, collum, -i; cervix, -icis, *f*.
necklace, monile, -is, *n*.

need, *I*, egeo, 2 (*abl.*).
needle, acus, -ūs, *f*.
needy, egens, -entis.
neglect, *I*, negligo, 3, -lexi, -lectum.
negligent, negligens, -entis.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque; nec . . . neque.
neither of two, neuter.
never, numquam; *and never*, nec umquam.
nevertheless, tamen; nihilo minus.
new, novus, -a, -um; recens, recentis; (*adv.*), recenter.
news, nuntius, -i.
next, the, proximus; insequens, -tis; *next day (adj.)*, posterus; *on the next d.*, postridie.
next (adv.), proxime; deinde.
next to (prep.), iuxta.
nick of time, in the, opportune.
night, nox, noctis, *f*.
ninth, nonus.
no one, nullus, -a, -um; nemo, -inis.
nowhere, nusquam.
noble, nobilis, -e; generosus, -a, -um.
nobody, nemo, -inis.
Nones, Nonae, -arum.
nose, nasus, -i, *m*.
nothing, nihil or nil.
nor, neque; (*in final clauses*), neu.
north, aquilo, -onis, *m*.
not, non; haud; (*in prohibitions*), ne.
not yet, nondum.
nourish, *I*, alo, 3, alui, altum and altum.

VOCABULARY.

now (at this time), nunc ;
(by this time), iam.
nuisance, a, say molestus, -a,
 -um.
number, numerus, -i ; *a great*
number, multitudo, -inis, f.
nurse, nutrix, -icis.

oak, quercus, -ūs, f. ; *holm*
oak, ilex, -icis, f. ; (*of*
timber) robur, -oris, n.

oar, remus, -i.

oath, iusiurandum, iurisiu-
 randi.

oath (military), sacramen-
 tum, -i.

oats, avena, -ae.

obedience, obedientia, -ae.

obey, I, pareo, 2 (*dat.*) ; obe-
 dio, 4 (*dat.*).

object, recusare quin ; *to*
make an objection to, cast
up anything against, ali-
 quid alicui obicere.

object (intention), consilium,
 -i ; propositum, -i ; finis, -is, c.

object, this is his, hoc agit
 (*or petit*) ut.

observe, I, animadverto, 3 ;
 observo, . I ; (= *to obey*),
 pareo, 2 (*dat.*).

obstacle, impedimentum, -i.

obtain, I, paro, I ; acquirō,
 3, -quisivi, -itum ; adipis-
 cor, 3, adeptus.

occurs, it, accidit ; contingit ;
 evenit ; *to the mind*, in
 mentem venit, succurrit.

o'clock is it? what, hora
 quota est?

odium, invidia, -ae.

offence, delictum, -i ; pecca-
 tum, -i.

offend, I, offendo, 3, -di, -sum.

offer, I, offero, 3, obtuli,
 oblatum ; praebeo, 2.

office (a public), honor, -oris,
 m. ; magistratus, -ūs.

office, to hold, habere, obti-
 nere honorem.

officers, praefecti ; *of an*
army, tribuni militum ;
 centuriones.

oil, oleum, -i.

old, vetus, -eris ; (*of a man*),
 senilis, -e.

old age, senectus, -utis, f.

old man, senex, senis.

on account of (prep.), ob ;
 propter (*acc.*).

on this side of (prep.), cis,
 citra (*acc.*).

one, unus, -a, -um ; *a certain*
one, quidam, cuiusdam.

once, (1) semel, (2) (= *for-*
merly) quondam.

only, solum ; modo ; tantum ;
not only . . . but, non so-
 lum, non modo . . . sed
 etiam.

open, I, aperio, 4, -perui,
 -pertum ; pando, 3, -di,
 pansum *or* passum ; re-
 cludo, 3, -si, -sum.

open, apertus ; patens, -entis.
opinion, sententia, -ae ; opi-
 nio, -onis, f.

opponent, adversarius ; *to be*
an opp., adversari, obstare,
 resistere (*all dat.*).

opportunity, occasio, -onis, f.

oppose, I (*trans.*), oppono, 3,
 -posui, -positum ; obiicio,
 3, -ieci, -iectum ; (*intrans.*),
 adversor, I (*dat.*) ; obsto,
 I, -stiti, -stitum *and* sta-

tum (*dat.*); resisto, 3, -stiti (*dat.*).
opposite, adversus; contrarius; adversarius, -a, -um.
oration, oratio, -onis, *f.*
orator, orātor, -oris.
oracle, oraculum, -i; sors, sortis, *f.*
ordain, *I*, see 'command,' 'decree.'
order, *I*, see 'command.'
order, ordo, -inis, *m.*
other, alius, -a, -ud; *otherwise*, aliter; secus (*ac or quam*).
ought, *I*, debeo, 2; oportet, 2, -uit (*impers.*).
out of (*prep.*), e or ex (*abl.*).
outside of (*prep.*), extra (*acc.*).
over (*prep.*), supra, super; (= *more than*), plus.
overthrow, *I*, everto, 3, -ti, -sum.
overturn, *I*, everto, 3, -ti, -sum.
owe, *I*, debeo, 2.
ox, bos, bovis, *c.*
pain, dolor, -oris; angor, -oris; (*of trouble*), cura, -ae; sollicitudo, -inis, *f.*
pains, to take, operam dare; in eo laborare ut.
panic, pavor, -oris.
panting, anhelitus, -ūs.
paper, charta, -ae.
pardon, *I*, ignosco, 3, -novi, -notum (*dat.*); condono, 1; veniam do (*dat.*).
pardon, venia, -ac.
parent, parens, -entis, *c.*
part, *I* take, in, intersum (*dat.*).

part, pars, partis, *f.*
party, see 'faction'; *party feeling*, studia partium.
pass, *I*, praetereo, 4, (-ivi or) -ii, -itum.
pass a law, to, perferre legem.
passage (e. g. *over a river*), transitus, -ūs; (*of a book*), locus, -i.
passion, to be in a, irasci; in a passion, iratus.
passion, cupiditas, -atis, *f.*; studium, -i; libido, -inis, *f.*
past, praeteritus, -a, -um.
pathless, invius, -a, -um.
patience, patientia, -ae; *with patience*, aequo animo; patienter.
patient, patiens, -entis.
patrician, patricius, -i; *the patricians*, patres.
patron, patronus, -i.
pay, *I*, solvo, 3, solvi, solutum; pendo, 3, pependi, pensum.
pay the penalty, to, poenam dare.
peace, pax, pacis, *f.*; otium, -i.
peaceful, tranquillus; quietus; placidus, -a, -um.
peculiar, proprius, -a, -um.
pen, calamus, -i; stylus, -i.
penalty, poena, -ae; *to pay the p.*, poenam or poenas dare; *to inflict a p.*, poenas de aliquo capere.
people, populus, -i.
perceive, *I*, percipio, 3, -cepi; intelligo, 3, -exi.
perfect, *I*, perficio, 3, -feci, -fectum; absolvo, 3, -solvi, -solutum; finio, 4.

perfect, perfectus, -a, -um.
perfidious, perfidus, -a, -um.
perform, I, facio, 3, feci, factum.
peril, periculum.
period of five years, quinquennium; *of three years*, triennium, etc.
perish, I, pereo, 4, perii; intereo, 4, -ii, -itum.
permit, I, permitto, 3, -misi, -missum.
perpetual, sempiternus; aeternus, -a, -um.
persist, I, persto, 1, -stiti, -statum.
person, vir, -i; homo, -inis; *some person*, nescio quis; quidam; si quis, etc.
persuade, I, persuadeo, 2, -si, -sum (dat.).
philosopher, philosophus, -i; sapiens, -entis, m.
philosophy, philosophia, -ae; sapientia, -ae.
phrase, verbum or verba.
picture, pictura, -ae; tabula, -ae.
pierce, I, confodio, 3, -fōdi, -fossum.
piety, pietas, -atis, f.
pig, porcus, -i.
pine-tree, pinus, -ūs, f.
pious, pius, -a, -um.
pirate, praedo, -onis.
pitch a camp, I, castra pono, 3.
pity, I, miseresco, 3; misereo, 2; misereor, 2, miseritus and misertus (gen.); miseror, 1; commiseror, 1 (dept.); me miseret (impers. with gen.).

pity, misericordia, -ae.
place, I, pono, 3, posui, positum; loco, 1.
place, locus, -i (plur. loci and loca).
place after, I, posthabeo, 2; postpono, 3, -posui, -positum.
plague, pestis, -is, f.
plain, campus, -i.
plaintiff, actor, -oris; petitor, -oris.
plan, consilium, -i; propositum, -i.
play, I, ludo, 3, -si, -sum.
pleasant, iucundus, -a, -um; amoenus, -a, -um.
please, I, placeo, 2 (dat.); delecto, 1.
pleasing, gratus, -a, -um; acceptus, -a, -um.
pleasure, voluptas, -atis, f.
plebeian, plebeius, -i; *the plebeians*, plebs or plebes, -is (rarely -ei).
plot, coniuratio, -onis, f.
plough, I, aro, 1.
plough, aratrum, -i.
plunder, I, spolio, 1; populo, 1; diripio, 3, -ripui, -reptum.
plunder, praeda, -ae.
plunge, I (a sword, etc.), condo, 3; demitto, 3.
point, apex, -icis, m.; (of a sword), mucro, -onis, m.; at every point, ubique.
point, in every, use res in plur.
point of, to be on the, use fut. part.; or in eo esse ut.
point of death, at the, moribundus, -a, -um.

VOCABULARY.

point out, *I*, monstro, 1 ; ostendo, 3, -di, -tum.
poison, virus, -i, *n.*; venenum, -i.
policy, consilia, *n. pl.*
politics, to take up, rempublicam capessere, etc.
poor, pauper, -eris; inops, -opis.
poppy, papaver, -eris, *n.*
popular, gratus, -a, -um.
popularity, favor, -oris, *m.*; gratia, -ae.
portion, see 'part.'
portray, *I*, depingo, -pinxi, -pictum.
possess, *I*, possideo, 2, -sedi, -sessum.
possession of, to gain, potior, 4 (*abl.*).
possession, possessio, -onis, *f.*
post, to desert a, locum deserere.
postpone, *I*, differo, 3, distuli.
pour, *I*, infundo; perfundo, 3, -fudi, -fusus.
poverty, paupertas, -atis, *f.*
power (military), imperium, -i; (*civil*), potestas, -atis; excessive power, potentia, -ae.
powerful, potens, -entis.
practise, *I*, exerceo, 2.
praise, *I*, laudo, 1.
praise, laus, laudis, *f.*
pray, *I*, precor, 1.
prayer, gen. precis, *f.* (*no nom. sing., generally in plur.*); precatio, -onis; obsecratio, -onis, *f.*
precept, praeceptum, -i.
predict, *I*, praedico, 3, -ixi.
prefer, *I*, malo, 3, malui,

malle; antepono; praepono, 3, -posui, -positum.
prepare, *I*, paro, 1.
present, *I am*, adsum, -esse, adfui (affui); intersum (*dat.*).
present, *I*, offero, 3, obtuli, oblatum, offerre; praeebo, 2; (*of a gift*), dono, 1.
present, praesens, -entis.
presently, mox; brevi.
preserve, *I*, servo, conservo, 1.
preservation of anything, for the, ad rem conservandam.
preside, *I*, praesum (*dat.*); praesideo, 3; to *p. at an election*, comitia habere.
press, *I*, premo, 3, pressi, pressum.
pretend, *I*, simulo, 1; *pretend to have*, profiteor, 3, -fessus.
pretensions, to make, use verb postulare or vindicare.
pretext, praetextum, -i; species, -ei, *f.*
pretty, bellus, -a, -um.
prevail, *I*, valeo, 2; *there prevailed*, erat; to *prevail upon*, see 'persuade.'
prevent, *I*, prohibeo, 2; obsto, 1, -stiti, -stitum; impedimento sum quominus.
price, pretium, -i.
priest, pontifex, -icis.
prince, princeps, -ipis.
principal, praecipuus, -a, -um; maximus, -a, -um.
principles, our, ea quae sentimus; quae honesta esse putamus; etc.
prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*; to *put in prison*, in vincula conicere or dare.

VOCABULARY.

prisoner, captivus, -i.
private, privatus, -a, -um.
prize, praemium, -i; merces, -edis, f.
probable, verisimilis, -e.
proceed, I, procedo, 3, -cessi, -cessum; pergo, 3, perrexī, perrectum.
proconsul, proconsul, -sulis.
produce, I, fero; *to exhibit*, proferre or prae se ferre.
profess, I, profiteor, 2, -fessus.
prolong, I, a command, pro-rogo, 1.
promise, I, promitto, 3, -misi, -missum.
promise, promissum, -i; fides, -ei, f.
promote, I, promoveo, 2; proveho, 3, -vexi, -vectum.
proof, indicium, -i; documentum, -i; *to be a proof*, indicio, documento esse.
prophet, vates, -is.
property (goods), bona, -orum; (*private*), res familiaris; (*in land*), fundus, -i; praedia, -orum.
proportion to, in, pro; ex (abl.).
propose, I (a law), fero, 3, tuli, latum; propono, 3, -posui, -positum; or legis auctor sum.
prosper, *to, say 'to be well with,'* bene esse (dat.).
prosperity, res secundae or prosperae.
prosperous, secundus, -a, -um.
protect, I, defendo, 3, -di, -sum.
proud, superbus, -a, -um; arrogans, -antis.

prove, I, probō, 1; (*I turn out to be*), evenio, 4.
provide, I, paro, 1; *provide for*, prospicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum.
province, provincia, -ae.
provisions, commeatus, -ūs.
prudence, prudentia, -ae.
prudent, prudens, -entis.
public, publicus, -a, -um.
publish, I, patefacio, 3; divulgō, 1.
punish, I, punio, 4; animadverto, 3, -ti, -sum (in aliquem).
punishment, poena, -ae; supplicium, -i.
purchase, I, see 'buy.'
pure, castus, -a, -um; purus, -a, -um.
purity, pudicitia, -ae.
purpose, I, est mihi in animo; habeo in animo.
purpose, propositum, -i; *for the purpose of*, eo ut (*with subj.*), or eo consilio ut.
pursue, I, sequor, 3, secutus; persequor.
purse, crumena, -ae, f.
put, I, pono, 3, posui, positum; *put forth*, say 'use.'
put on, I, induo, 3.

quarrel, I, iurgo, 1; rixor, 1.
quarrel, rixa, -ae.
quarter, from every, undique.
queen, regina, -ae.
quick, celer, -is, -e; velox, -ocis.
quickly, cito; celeriter; velociter.

VOCABULARY.

quiet, quietus; tranquillus, -a, -um.

quit, *I*, see 'leave'; *to quit office*, officio functus esse.

quite, omnino; *not quite*, vix; parum.

quiver, pharetra, -ae.

race (origin), genus, -eris, *n*; stirps, stirpis, *f*.; proles, -is, *f*.; *a race*, gens, -tis, *f*.

rage, ira, -ae; furor, -oris; rabies, -ei, *f*.

rage, *I*, furo, 3; saevio, 4.

ragged, lacer, -a, -um.

rain, pluvia, -ae; imber, -bris, *m*.

rains, *it*, pluit, 3, pluit *or* pluit (*impers.*).

raise, *I*, tollo, 3, sustuli, sublatum.

ram, aries, -iētis.

rank, ordo, -inis, *m*.; gradus, -ūs.

rare, rarus, -a, -um.

rash, audax; temerarius.

rashly, temere.

rashness, temeritas, -atis, *f*.

rather (adv.), potius; *I had rather*, malo, malui, malle.

reach, *I*, attineo, 2, -tinui, -tentum; tendo, 3, tetendi, tensum *or* tentum.

reach, *I (arrive at)*, pervenio ad, 4.

read, *I*, lego, 3, legi, lectum.

ready, promptus, -a, -um.

reap, *I*, meto, 3, messui, -sum; *to reap an advantage*, fructum percipere.

reason, causa, -ae; ratio, -onis, *f*.; (*the reasoning powers*), mens, mentis, *f*.

recall, *I*, revoco, 1; (*remember*), reminiscor, 3.

receive, *I*, accipio, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum.

recklessly, temere.

recklessness, temeritas, -atis; audacia, -ae.

reckon, *I*, numero, 1.

recourse, to have, *to*, se conferre ad.

recover, *I (get back)*, recuperō, 1; recipio; (*I get well*), convalesco, 3, -lui.

recruit, tiro, -onis, *m*.

red, ruber, -bra, -brum; rubens, -entis.

redeem, *I*, redimo, 3, -ēmi, -emptum.

refrain, *I*, abstineo, 2, -tinui, -tentum.

refresh, *I*, recreo, 1; reficio, 3.

refuge, refugium, -i.

refuse, *I*, nego, 1; recuso, 1; abnego, 1.

regard, ratio, -onis, *f*.; cura, -ae; *in regard to*, quod attinet ad.

regard for, to have a, rationem habere (*with gen.*).

region, regio, -onis, *f*.

regret, *I*, desidero, 1.

regret, desiderium, -i.

reign, *I*, regno, 1.

reign, regnum, -i; imperium, -i.

reinforcements, subsidia, *n*. (*plur.*).

reject, *I*, repello, 3; reicio, 3.

rejoice, *I*, gaudeo, 2, gavisus sum; laetor, 1.

relate, *I*, narro, 1; refero, 3, -tuli *and* rettuli, -latum,

-ferre; trado, 3, -didi,
-ditum; memoro, 1; com-
memoro, 1.
relation (on the male side),
agnatus; (on either side),
cognatus; propinquus;
affinis.
relax, I, remitto, 3, -misi,
-missum.
relieve, I (lighten), levo, 1;
relevo, 1; (aid, succour),
succurro, 3, -curri, -cursum
(dat.); subvenio, 4, -vĕni,
-ventum (dat.).
relieve in a command, suc-
cedo, 3, -cessi (dat.).
religion, religio, -onis, f.;
pietas, -atis.
religious, religiosus.
religious rites, sacra, -orum
(plur.).
reluctant, invitus, -a, -um.
rely, I, fido, confido, 3, -fisis
sum.
relying on, fretus, -a, -um
(with abl.).
remain, I, maneo, 2, mansi,
mansum.
remaining (left), reliquus,
-a, -um.
remark, I, see 'scy.'
remark, vox, vocis, f.; ver-
bum, -i.
remedy, remedium, -i.
remember, I, meminī (defect.);
recordor, 1 (gen.); remi-
niscor, 3.
remind, I, revoco (alicui) in
mentem; moneo, 2; ad-
moneo, 2.
remit, I, remitto, 3; condono,
1.
remonstrances, use Verb.

renowned, clarus, -a, -um.
repair, I, reparo, 1; reficio,
3.
repeal, I (a law), abrogo, 1.
repent, I, paenitet (impers.).
repentance, paenitentia, -ae.
reply, I, see 'answer.'
reply, responsum, -i.
report, I, renuntio, 1; nuntio,
1; it is reported, fertur.
report, fama, -ae; rumor,
-oris.
repose, I (take rest), quiesco,
3, -evi, -etum.
reproach, to, with, alicui ali-
quid obicere.
reprove, I, reprehendo, 3, -di,
-sum; castigo, 1; obiurgo,
1.
republic, res publica, rei
publicae.
reputation, fama, -ae.
require, I (want), egeo, 2
(abl.).
rescue, I, eripio, 3, -ripui,
-reptum; libero, 1.
rescue, to come to the, subsi-
dio venire; subvenire (dat.).
resemblance, similitudo, -inis,
f.; instar (indecl.), n.
resemble, I, say 'am like to.'
resign, I, depono, 3; abdicō,
1.
resist, I, resisto, 3, restiti.
resolution, sententia, -ae;
(courage), fortitudo, etc.
resound, I, resono, 1.
resource (a help to fall back
on), subsidium, -i; auxi-
lium, -i; (means, wealth),
opes, opum, f. (plur.).
respect, I, observo, 1; colo,
3, colui, cultum.

VOCABULARY.

respect, observantia, -ae ;
reverentia, -ae.
rest (*repose*), quies, requies,
-etis ; otium, -i ; *the rest*,
ceteri ; reliquus.
restore, *I*, reddo, 3, -didi,
-ditum ; restituo, 3.
restrain, *I*, coerceo, 2 ; re-
primo, comprimo, 3, -pressi,
-pressum.
retain, *I*, retineo, 2, -tinui,
-tentum.
retire, *I*, recedo, 3, -cessi,
-cessum ; decedo, 1 ; me
recipio, 3.
retreat, *I*, me recipio ; pedem
refero ; signa refero.
retreat, to sound the, recep-
tui canere.
return, *I* (*intrans.*), redeo,
4, -ii, -itum ; revento, 3,
-versus sum ; (*trans.*) red-
do, 3, -didi, -ditum.
return, reditus, -ūs.
revenge on, I take, ulciscor,
3, ultus (*dept.*).
revenge, ultio, -onis, *f.*
reward, praemium, -i ; pre-
tium, -i ; merces, -ēdis, *f.*
Rhine, Rhenus, -i.
rib, costa, -ae.
rich, dives, -itis ; locuples,
-ētis ; opulentus, -a, -um.
riches, divitiae, -arum ; opes,
opum (*plur.*) *f.*
right, dexter, -era, -erum, and
-tra, -trum.
right, ius, iuris, *n.* ; morally
right, fas (*indecl.*).
right, rightfully, iure ; recte.
ride, *I*, equito, 1 ; equo ve-
hor, 3.
ring, anulus, -i.

rise, *I*, surgo, 3, surrexi, sur-
rectum.
risk, *I*, periculum facio ; in
discrimen adduco.
risk, periculum, -i.
river, flumen, -inis, *n.* ; flu-
vius, -i ; amnis, -is, *m.*
road, via, *f.*
roast, *I*, torreo, -ui, tostum.
rob, spolio, 1.
robe, vestis, -is, *f.*
robber, latro, -onis ; praedo,
-onis.
rock, rupes, -is, *f.* ; scopulus,
-i ; saxum, -i.
rod, flagellum, -i ; virga, -ae.
roll, *I* (*trans.*), volvo, 3,
volvi, volutum.
Roman, a, Romanus.
Roman, Romanus, -a, -um.
Rome, Roma, -ae.
rose, rosa, -ae.
rot, *I*, putresco, 3.
rough, asper, -era, -erum ;
rudis, -e.
round (*adj.*), rotundus, -a,
-um ; (*prep.*), circa or cir-
cum (*acc.*).
rouse, *I*, excito, 1.
rout, *I*, fugo, 1 ; pello, 3,
pepuli, pulsum.
route, via, -ac ; iter, itineris, *n.*
royal, regius ; or 'of a king.'
ruin, *I*, perdo, 3, -didi, -ditum.
ruin, interitus, -ūs, *m.* ; exi-
tium, -i, *n.* ; perniciēs, -ei,
f. ; calamitas, -atis, *f.*
rule, *I*, rego, 3 ; impero, 1 ;
dominor, 1.
ruler, rex, regis ; magistra-
tus, -ūs, *etc.*
run, *I*, curro, 3, cucurri, cur-
sum.

run down, *I*, decurro, 3; *I*
run over, percurro, 3.
run into, *I*, incurro, 3.
rush, *I*, ruo, 3, rui, rutum.
rush out, *I*, erumpo, 3, -rūpi,
 -ruptum.
rush, impetus, -ūs; *a reed*,
 iuncus, -i.

sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum;
 sanctus, -a, -um.

sacrifice, *I*, macto, 1.

sacrifice, sacrificium, -i.

sad, tristis, -e; *maestus*, -a,
 -um.

safe, tutus, -a, -um; *incolu-*
mis, -e; *salvus*, -a, -um.

safety, salus, -utis, *f.*; *inco-*
lunitas, -atis, *f.*

sail, velum, -i.

sail, to set, vela dare.

sail, *I*, navigo, 1; *vehor*, 3,
 vectus sum; *sail across*,
 transvehor, 3.

sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*

salt, salsus, -a, -um.

same, the, idem, eadem, *īdem*.

satisfaction, to demand, res
 repetere.

satisfy, *I*, satisfacio, 3, -feci,
 -factum (*dat.*).

savage (barbarous), ferus;
 efferatus.

save, *I*, servo, 1.

say, *I*, dico, 3, dixi, dictum;
 aio (*defect.*); *inquam (de-*
fect., only with Orat.
Recta).

scamper, *I*, aufugio, 3, -fūgi.

scar, cicatrix, -icis, *f.*

scanty, exiguus; *exilis*, -e.

scarcely, vix.

scarcity, use *Verb* egeo.

scatter, *I*, spargo and disper-
 go, 3, -si, -sum.

scholar, discipulus, -i.

school, ludus, -i; (*sect*), secta,
 -ae.

science, scientia, -ae.

scout, explorator, -oris.

scribe, scriba, -ae, *m.*

scurry, *I*, trepido, 1.

sea, mare, -is, *n.*; *pontus*, -i;
 aequor, -ōris, *n.*

search, *I*, quaero, 3, quaesivi
 or quaesii, quaesitum.

search, a, use *Verb* quaerere.

seat, sedes, -is, *f.*; *sedile*, -is;
 sella, -ae.

secession, secessio, -onis, *f.*

second, secundus; *alter*.

secret, arcanus, -a, -um,

secure, *I*, see 'gain,' 'acquire,'
 etc.

see, *I*, video, 2, vidi, visum;
 cerno, 3; aspicio, con-
 spicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum.

seek, *I*, quaero, 3, quaesivi or
 quaesii, quaesitum; *peto*, 3,
 petivi or -ii, petitum.

seem, *I*, videor, 2; *appareo*, 2.

seize, *I*, rapio, 3, rapui, rap-
 tum; *corripio*, 3, -ripui,
 -reptum; *occupo*, 1; *capio*,
 3, cepi, captum.

seldom, raro.

select, *I*, see 'choose.'

self, ipse, -a, -um.

self-restraint, temperantia,
 -ae; or say 'by restraining
 oneself.'

sell, *I*, vendo, 3, -didi, -ditum.

senate, senatus, -ūs.

senate-house, curia, -ae.

senator, senātor, -oris.

VOCABULARY.

senatorial, senatorius, -a, -um.

send, *I*, mitto, 3, misi, missum.

separate, *I*, separo, 1.

serious, gravis, -e; severus, -a, -um.

seriously, serio.

service, *to render*, bene mereri de; *I am of service*, prosum (dat.).

service, ministerium, -i; opera, -ae; *military service*, militia, -ae; (*pay*), stipendium, -i; *to serve as a soldier*, merere stipendia; *to do good service to*, bene mereri de.

services, merita.

sesterce, sertertius, -i.

set out (intrans.), proficiscor, 3, profectus sum.

set over, *I*, praeicio, 3, -eci, -ectum; *to be set over*, praeesse (dat.).

settle, *I* (intrans.), sido, 3, sidi; consido, 3; (trans.) compono, 3.

seventieth, septuagesimus.

severely, graviter.

sew, *I*, sero, serui, sertum; suo, sui, sutum.

shadow, umbra, -ae.

shady, umbrosus, -a, -um.

shake, *I*, quatio; concutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum.

shames, it, pudet, 2 (impers.).

shameful, turpis, -e.

sharer, particeps, -cipis.

shave, *I*, tondeo, 2, totondi, tonsum.

sheath, vagina, -ae.

sheep, ovis, -is, f.

shield (oblong), scutum, -i;

(round), clipeus or clypeus, -i.

shine, *I*, fulgeo, 2; luceo, 2, luxi; mico, 2, micui.

ship, navis, -is, f.; ratis, f.

ship of war, navis longa.

shipwreck, naufragium, -i.

shoe, calceus, -i, m.

shore, litus, -ōris, n.; ora, -ae; arena, -ae.

short, brevis, -e.

shoulder (of man), humerus, -i.

shout, *I*, clamo, exclamo, 1.

shout, clamor, -oris.

show, *I*, monstro, 1; praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum.

shower, imber, -ris, m.

shrewd, callidus, -a, -um; vafer, -fra, -frum.

shudder, *I*, horreo, 2, horrui.

shut, *I*, claudo, 3, -si, -sum; operio, 4, operui, operitum.

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.

sides, on both, utrimque.

siege, *to raise a*, obsidionem omittere, solvere.

sigh, *I*, suspiro, 1; gemo, 3, -ui, -itum.

sign, signum, -i.

signal, signum, -i; insigne, -is.

silent, *I am*, taceo, 2; silco, 2.

silent, tacitus, -a, -um; silens, -entis.

silver, argentum, -i.

simple, simplex, -icis.

sin, *I*, pecco, 1.

sin, peccatum, -i.

since (adv.), postea; (as prep. = from), e, ex; a, ab; post, etc.; (conj. of time), cum; postquam; (of a reason),

cum, (*with subj.*) quippe qui (*subj.*), etc.; quod (*ind.*).
sing, *I*, cano, 3, cecini, cantum; canto, 1.
single, unus, -a, -um; solus, -a, -um.
sister, soror, -oris.
sit, *I*, sedeo, 2, sedi, sessum; *sit down*, consido, 3.
situation, to be in a, in loco esse.
skilled, peritus, -a, -um; sollers, -ertis; doctus.
skin (of a man), cutis, -is, *f.*; (of a beast), pellis, -is, *f.*
skirmishers, velites, -um.
sky, caelum, -i.
slaughter, caedes, -is, *f.*; complete s., internecio, -onis, *f.*
slave, servus, -i; serva, -ae; ancilla, -ae; (*looked upon as property*), mancipium, -i.
slave, to be a, servire, 4.
slavery, servitus, -utis, *f.*; servitium, -i.
slay, *I*, occido, 3, -di, -sum; interficio, 3, -feci, -fectum.
sleep, *I*, dormio, 4.
sleep, somnus, -i; sopor, -oris; quies, -etis, *f.*
sleepless, insomnis, -e.
sling, funda, -ae.
slip, *I*, labor, 3, lapsus sum.
slow, tardus, -a, -um; segnis, -e.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
smell, *I*, oleo, 2, -ui.
smoke, fumus, -i.
smooth, lēvis, -e.
snail, cochlea, -ae, *f.*
snatch, *I*, eripio, 3, -ui, ereptum.

snow, nix, nivis, *f.*
snowy, niveus.
so, ita; (*with verbs*), adeo; (*with adjs. and advs.*), tam; so = accordingly, itaque; so great, tantus; so small, tantulus; so far from, tantum abest ut; so that, ut.
sober, sobrius, -a, -um.
soft, mollis, -e; lenis, e.
soften, *I*, mollio, 4; mitigo, 1.
sold, *I am*, veneo, 4, -ii or -ivi, venitum.
soldier, milēs, -itis; foot s., pedēs, -itis, *m.*; horse s., equēs, -itis, *m.*
some, aliqui, aliqua, aliquod.
some (some one), aliquis; nescis quis; some . . . others, alii . . . alii.
some (amount of), aliquantum (*gen.*).
sometimes, nonnumquam; interdum.
somewhere, alicubi.
son, filius, -i; natus, -i.
son-in-law, gener, -eri.
soon, mox; brevi; iam.
soothsayer, augur, -uris; auspex, -icis; haruspex, -icis.
sorrow, dolor, -oris.
sorry, *I am*, paenitet (*impers.*).
soul, anima, -ae.
sound, sonitus, -ūs; sonus, -i.
south, meridies; auster, -tri, *m.*
sow, *I*, sero, 3, sevi, satum.
Spaniard, Hispanus.
spare, *I*, parco, 3, peperci, (parsi), parsum and parcitum (*dat.*).
speak, *I*, loquor, 3, locutus sum; (*of a speech*), dico, 3.

VOCABULARY.

speaker, orātor, -oris.
spear, hasta, -ae.
spectator, spectator, -oris; ei qui adsunt.
speech, oratio, -onis, *f.*
speed, *I* (*intrans.*), see '*hasten.*'
speed, velocitas, -atis; (*of foot*), pedom celeritas, -atis.
spend, *I*, expendo, impendo, 3, -di, -sum; (*of time*), ago, 3, egi, actum.
spirit (*energy*), animus, -i; vigor, -oris; *spirits of the dead*, manes, -ium, *m.*
spirited, animosus, -a, -um; acer, -cris, -e.
spit, *I*, forth, expuo, 3; evomo, 3, -ui.
spiteful, malevolus; malignus.
splendid, egregius; splendidus.
spoil, *I*, spolio, 1; *to spoil a person*, perdere, corrumpere.
spot, locus, -i.
spring, from, *I*, orior, 4, ortus.
spring, ver, veris, *n.*; *of water*, fons, fontis, *f.*
spur, calcar, -aris, *n.*; *to put spurs to*, calcaria subdere.
squadron, turma, -ae.
squander, *I*, effundo, 3, -fūdi, -fusum.
stand, *I*, sto, 1, steti, statum; *I stand by*, adsto, adsisto.
stand for, *I* (*of an office*), peto; *I stand still*, consisto, 3.
standard, signum, *n.*; vexillum, *n.*
star, stella, -ae; sidus,

-eris, *n.*; (*a constellation*), astrum, -i.
starve, *I*, fame pereo.
state, civitas, -atis; republica, reipublicae; (*condition*), conditio, -onis, *f.*; status, -ūs.
statue, statua, -ae; signum, -i; simulacrum, -i.
stature, short in, say parvo corpore, etc.
stay, *I*, moror, 1; commoror, 1.
stealthily, furtim; clam.
steep, arduus, -a, -um.
step, gradus, -ūs; passus, -ūs; *to take a step*, aliquid facere.
step-father, vitricus, -i; *step-mother*, noverca, -ae; *step-son*, privignus, -i.
stick to, *I*, adhaereo, 2; adhaeresco, 3, -haesi, -haesum.
stick, baculum, -i.
stir (*trans.*), *I*, moveo, 2; commoveo, 2; concito, 1.
stomach, stomachus, -i; alvus, -i, *f.*
stone, lapis, -idis, *m.*; saxum, -i; *precious stone*, gemma, -ae.
stop, *I*, sisto, 3, stiti, statum.
storm a town, *I*, expugno, 1.
story (*tale*), fubula, -ae; narratio, -onis, *f.*
straight, rectus, -a, -um.
stranger, advena, -ae, *m.*; hospes, -itis, *m.*; (*fem.*) hospita, -ae; peregrinus, -i.
street, via, -ae, *f.*; strata viarum (*plur.*).
strength, vires, -ium, *f.* (*plur.*); *of mind*, constantia, -ae, *f.*

VOCABULARY.

- strike*, *I*, percutio, 3, -cussi, -cussum.
- strip*, *I*, nudo, denudo, 1; exuo, 3; spolio, 1.
- stripped*, nudatus, -a, -um.
- strive*, *I*, nitor, 3, nixus or nisus sum; laboro, 1; conor, 1.
- strong*, validus, -a, -um; robustus, -a, -um; fortis, -e.
- struggle*, *I*, contendo, 2.
- struggle*, contentio, -onis, *f.*; pugna, -ae.
- student*, studens, -entis; discipulus, -i.
- study*, *I*, studeo, 2 (*dat.*).
- subdue*, *I*, see 'conquer.'
- subjects*, his, sui.
- subsistence*, means of, cibus, -i; unde vivas, *etc.*
- success*, felicem esse; si res bene cedunt, *etc.*
- such*, talis, -e; *such* . . . as, talis . . . qualis.
- sudden*, subitus; repentinus.
- suddenly*, subito; (*unexpectedly*), necopinato.
- sue*, *I*, for an office, peto, 3; (*to sue a person in court*), reum facere.
- suffer*, *I*, fero, 3, tuli, latum, ferre; patior, 3, passus; see 'to permit.'
- sufficient*, see 'enough.'
- sufficiently*, satis (*with gen.*).
- suit*, *I*, convenio, 4.
- suit* (a law suit), res; causa; lis, litis, *f.*
- suitable*, aptus, -a, -um; idoneus, -a, -um.
- summer*, aestas, -atis, *f.*
- summit*, cacumen, -inis, *n*;
- vertex, -icis, *m.*; (*of a hill, etc.*), mons suminus.
- summon*, *I*, cito, 1; voco, convoco, 1; appello, 1.
- sun*, sol, solis, *m.*
- sunrise*, at, prima luce.
- sup*, *I*, ceno, 1.
- superior*, praestans; superior, -us.
- supper*, cena, -ae.
- support*, *I* (*sustain, uphold*), sustineo, 2, -tinui, -tentum; (*endure*), tolero, 1.
- supporter*, fautor, -oris.
- suppose*, *I*, puto, 1; arbitror, 1; opinor, 1; existimo, 1.
- supreme*, supremus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um,
- sure*, certus, -a, -um.
- surely*, certo; nimirum; profecto.
- surety*, vas, vadis, *m.*; *to give surety*, vades dare.
- surgeon*, chirurgus, -i; medicus.
- surgery*, chirurgia, -ae.
- surprised*, *I am*, miror, 1.
- surpass*, *I*, praesto, 1, -stiti, -stitum.
- surrender*, deditio, -onis, *f.*
- surrender*, *I* (*trans.*), trado, 3; dedo, 3; *intrans.*, cedo, 3, cessi.
- surround*, *I*, circumdo, 1.
- survive*, *I*, supersum, -fui, -esse, (*dat.*).
- surviving*, superstes, -itis.
- suspect*, *I*, suspicor, 1; suspicio, 3, -spexi, -spectum.
- swear*, *I*, iuro, 1.
- sweet* (*to the taste*), dulcis, -e.
- swift*, velox, -ocis.

VOCABULARY.

swiftness, celeritas, -atis, *f.* ;
velocitas, -atis, *f.* ; *pernici-*
tas, -atis.

swim, *I*, nato, *I*.

swimming, natatio, -onis, *f.*

swollen, turgidus ; tumidus ;
 turbidus, -a, -um.

sword, gladius, -i ; ensis, -is,
m. ; ferrum, -i.

tail, cauda -ae.

take, *I*, capio, 3, cepi, cap-
 tum ; sumo, 3, sumpsi,
 sumptum.

take from, *I*, adimo, 3, -ēmi,
 -emptum ; aufero, 3, abs-
 tuli, ablatum, auferre.

take up, *I*, capio, 3, cepi,
 captum.

take ill, *to*, aegre ferre.

talkative, loquax, -acis.

tall, procērus, -a, -um ; ex-
 celsus, -a, -um ; grandis,
 -e.

tax, vectigal, -alis, *n.*

teach, *I*, doceo, -ui, doctum.

tear, *I*, scindo, 3, scidi, scis-
 sum ; *in pieces*, lanio, *I* ;
 dilanio, *I*.

tear, lacrima, -ae.

tell, *I*, narro, *I* ; dico, 3, dixi.

temperate, temperatus, -a,
 -um.

temple, templum, -i ; aedes,
 -is ; fanum, -i.

tend, *I*, pertineo, *I*, -tinui,
 -tentum ; (= *to nurse*),
 curo, *I*.

tender, tener, -era, -erum ;
 mollis, -e.

tent, tabernaculum, -i.

tenth, decimus.

terrible, terribilis, -e.

territory, ager, agri, *m.* ; fines,
 -ium, *m.*, sometimes *f.*

terror, terror, -oris, *m.*

test, *I*, experior, 4, expertus ;
 tento, *I*.

than, quam.

thank, *I*, gratias ago.

thanksgiving, a public, sup-
 plicatio, -onis, *f.*

that (demonstrative), ille, -a,
 -ud ; iste ; is.

theft, furtum, -i.

thence, inde.

there, ibi ; illic.

therefore, igitur ; ergo ;
 idcirco.

thick, crassus, -a, -um.

thief, fur, furis.

thin, tenuis, -e.

thing, res, rei, *f.* ; negotium,
 -i.

think, *I*, puto, *I* ; existimo,
 arbitror, *I*.

third, tertius.

this, hic, haec, hoc.

thoroughly, penitus ; omnino ;
 prorsus.

threat, minae, -arum.

threaten, *I*, minor, *I*.

threatening, minax, -acis.

three days, space of, triduum,
 -i.

threshold, limen, -inis, *n.*

thrice, ter.

throat, guttur, -uris, *n.* ; iugu-
 lum, -i.

throne, to be on the, regnare ;
 imperare ; to gain the
 throne, regno potiri.

through or *throughout* (*prep.*),
 per (*acc.*).

throw, *I*, iacio, 3, iēcī, iactum ;

throw away, abicio.

thousandth, milesimus.
thunder, tonitrus, -ūs.
thwart, *I*, obsto, 1; resisto, 1 (*dat.*); frustror, 1.
tile, tegula, -ae, *f.*
till, *I*, cōlo, 4, -ui, cultum.
time, tempus, -oris, *n.*; (*a season*), tempestas, -atis; (*a suitable time*), occasio, -onis; (*appointed time, term*), dies, -ei, *f.*; *in the meantime*, interea; interim; *at that time*, ea tempestate, or tum temporis.
timidity, timiditas, -atis; pavor, -oris; *with his usual timidity*, ut erat timidus.
to (*prep.*), ad; in (*acc.*).
to-day, hodie.
together, simul; una cum.
to-morrow, cras.
tongue, lingua, -ae.
too much, nimis; nimium.
tool, instrumentum, -i.
torch, tacda, -ae, *f.*
torture, *I*, crucio, 1; torqueo, 2, torsi, tortum.
touch, *I*, tango, 3, tetigi, tactum.
towards (*prep.*), ad; versus; adversus; erga (*acc.*).
tower, turris, -is, *f.*
town, oppidum, -i; urbs, urbis, *f.*
track, vestigium, -i.
traitor, proditor, -oris.
transfer, *I*, transfero, 3.
transport, *I*, transveho, 3, -vexi, -vectum; fero, 3, *etc.*
travel, *I*, iter facio, 3.
traveller, viātor, -oris.
treacherous, perfidus, -a, -um.

treachery, perfidia, -ae; fraus, fraudis, *f.*; proditio, -onis, *f.*; dolus, -i.
treason, maiestas, -atis, *f.*
treasure, opes, -um, *f.*
treaty, foedus, -eris, *n.*
tree, arbor, -ōris, *f.*
tremble, *I*, tremo, 3, -ui.
trial, iudicium, -i.
tribe, natio, -onis, *f.*; gens, gentis, *f.*; (*political*), tribus, -ūs, *f.*
tribune, tribunus, -i.
tribute, tributum, -i.
trifles (*nonsense*), nugae, -arum.
triumph (*success*), victoria, -ae, *f.*; *a Roman general's*, triumphus, -i.
Trojan, Tros, -ois; Troianus; Troius, -a, -um.
troop, turma, -ae; *troops*, copiae; milites.
troublesome, molestus, -a, -um; gravis, -c; importunus.
truce, induciae, -arum.
true, verus, -a, -um.
trumpet, tuba, -ae (*straight*); lituus (*curved*).
trust, *I*, credo, 3, -didi, -ditum.
trust, fiducia, -ae.
trustworthy, fidus, -a, -um; certus, -a, -um.
truth, veritas, -atis; *the truth*, vera; quod verum est.
try, *I*, tento, 1; *to try to*, id agere ut.
tumult, tumultus, -ūs; motus, -ūs.
turf, caespes, -itis, *m.*

turn, I (trans.), volvo, revolvo, 3, -volvi, -volutum ;
verto, 3, -ti, -sum.

turn back or away, I, avertō, 3 ; (*intrans.*), avertor.

turn out, I, evenio, 4.

turn, in, invicem ; each in turn, singulus quisque, *etc.*

twin, geminus, -i.

tyrant, tyrannus, -i.

unable, I am, nequeo, 4, -quivi, -quitum.

unaccustomed, insolitus, -a, -um.

unarmed, inermis, -e.

unbecoming, it is, dedecet, 2, dedecuit (*impers.*).

undergo, I, subeo, 4, -ii, -itum.

undertake, I, suscipio, 3, -cepi, -ceptum.

uncle (on the father's side), patruus, -i ; (*on the mother's side*), avunculus, -i.

unconscious, inscius, -a, -um ; imprudens, -entis.

under (prep.), sub, subter (*acc. and abl.*).

understand, I, intelligo, 3, -exi, -ectum.

unequal, impar, -āris ; dispar, -pāris ; inequalis, -e ; iniquus, -a, -um.

unexpected, necopinatus.

unfavourable, iniquus, -a, -um.

unfortunate, infelix, -icis.

unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um.

unhappy, infelix, -icis.

unjust, iniquus, -a, -um.

unknown, ignotus, -a, -um.

unlike, dissimilis, -e ; dispar, -pāris.

unmindful, immemor, -ōris (*gen.*).

unseemly, indecōrus.

unskilled, imperitus, -a, -um (*gen.*).

unstable, instabilis, -e ; incertus, -a, -um.

until, dum ; donec ; quoad.

untrustworthy, infidus.

unusual, insolitus.

unwell, to be, aegrotare, 1 ; aeger esse.

unwell, aeger.

unwilling, invitus, -a, -um.

unworthy, indignus, -a, -um (*abl.*).

up to, ad ; sub.

use, I, utor, 3, usus sum (*abl.*).

useful, utilis, -e.

usual, usitatus.

utter, I, emitto, 3, -misi, -missum ; edo, 3, -didi, -ditum.

utterly, funditus.

vain, in, frustra ; nequidquam.

vain, vanus, -a, -um ; irritus, -a, -um ; inanis, -e.

valley, vallis, -is, *f.*

valour, see 'courage.'

valuable, pretiosus.

value, I, aestimo, 1 ; pendo, 3, pependi, pensum.

vast, ingens, -entis.

vehement, vehemens, -entis.

veil, velum, -i, *n.*

venture, I, see 'dare.'

verdict, sententia, -ae (*use plur.*).

very, admodum.
veteran (*adj.*), veteranus.
veto, *I*, intercedo, 3, -cessi.
vex, *I*, vexo, 1.
victim, hostia, -ae.
victory, victoria, -ae; triumphus, -i.
vigorous, strenuus, -a, -um.
village, vicus, -i.
vine, vitis, -is, *f*.
vinegar, acetum, -i.
violate, *I*, violo, 1.
violence, vis, vim, vi, *plur.* vires, -ium; violentia, -ae.
virtue, virtus, -utis, *f*.
virtuously, honeste.
visit, *I*, viso and invisio, 3, -visi, -visum.
voice, vox, vocis, *f*.
void, vacuus, -a, -um; (*null and void*), irritus.
voluntarily, sponte; ultro.
vote, *I*, suffragium fero or do; *to vote for* (*in the senate*), in sententiam alicuius ire.
vote, suffragium, -i; (*of a judge or senator*), sententia, -ae.
voting, *right of*, ius suffragii.
vow, *I*, voveo, 2, vovi, votum.
vulture, vultur, -uris, *m*.
wage war, *I*, bellum gero, 3, gessi, gestum.
waggon, plaustrum, -i.
wait for, *I*, expecto, 1.
wall of city, moenia, -ium; *of city or house*, murus, -i; *partition wall*, paries, -ëtis, *m*.
walk, *I*, ambulo, 1; spatior, 1.

wander, *I*, erro, 1; vagor, 1.
wandering, vagus, -a, -um.
want, *I*, egeo, 2 (*abl.*); careo, 2 (*abl.*); opus est mihi (*with abl.*); see '*wish*.'
want, to be in, egere, 2.
want, inopia, -ae; egestas, -atis, *f*.
wanting to, *I am*, desum, -fui, -esse (*dat.*); deficio, 3, -feci, -fectum.
war, bellum, -i.
warm, tepidus; calidus; fervidus, -a, -um.
warn, *I*, moneo, 2.
waste, *I*, perdo, 3, -didi, -ditum; *I lay waste*, vasto, 1; populo, 1.
watch, *I*, observo, 1; custodio, 4; *to watch the sky* (*of augurs*), de caelo servare.
watch, vigilia, -ae.
water, aqua, -ae; lympa, -ae.
wave, fluctus, -ūs.
way, via, -ae; iter, itineris, *n*.
weak, infirmus, -a, -um; debilis, -e; invalidus, -a, -um.
wealth, opes, -um, *f*.; opulentia, -ae.
weapon, telum, -i.
wear, *I*, gero, 3, gessi, gestum.
weariness, taedium, -i.
weary, *I* (*trans.*), fatigo, 1; *impers.*, taedet, pertaedet, 2, -taesum.
weary, lassus; fessus.
weave, *I*, texo, 3, -ui, -tum.
wed, *I* (*of the woman*), nubo, 3, nupsi, nuptum (*dat.*); (*of the man*), duco, 3.
wedge, cuneus, -i.

weep, *I*, fleo, 2, flevi, fletum ;
lacrimo, 1.
weeping, fletus, -ūs ; -lacrimae,
-arum.
weigh out, *I*, expendo, 3, -di,
-sum.
well, puteus, -i, *m*.
well (*adv.*), bene.
well, *I am*, valeo, 2.
well-known, notus, -a, -um.
well known, it is, constat.
west, occasus (solis) ; occi-
dens.
wet, madidus, -a, -um.
wheat, triticum, -i.
when (*interrog.*), quando ;
(*conj.*), cum ; quando ; ut ;
ubi.
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
wherefore, cur ; quare ; quam-
obrem.
whether . . . *or* (*disjunct.*),
seu . . . seu ; (*interrog.*),
utrum . . . an *or* nē . . .
an.
which of two, uter.
while (*conj.*), dum.
whisper, *I*, susurro, 1.
whisper, susurrus, -ūs, *m*.
whither, quo ; *whithersoever*,
quocumque.
who, *which*, qui, quae, quod.
who, *which*, *what* (*interrog.*),
quis, quae, quid (*subst.*) ;
qui, quae, quod (*adj.*).
whoever, quicumque ; quis-
quis.
whole, totus, -a, -um ; omnis,
-e ; cunctus, -a, -um ; (= *uninjured*), integer, -gra,
-um.
whole, *the*, totus (*adj.*).

why, cur ; quamobrem ; quare.
wicked, improbus ; malus ;
perditus ; nequissimus.
wickedness, nequitia, -ae.
wide, latus, -a, -um.
widow, vidua.
wife, uxor, -oris ; coniux,
-iugis.
wild, ferus, -a, -um ; agrestis,
-e.
will, voluntas, -atis, *f*. ; ar-
bitrium, -i ; *against one's*
will, invitus, -a, -um ; *a*
testament, testamentum, -i.
will, good, benevolentia ; vo-
luntas, -atis.
willow, salix, -icis, *f*.
win, *I*, acquirō, 3, -quisivi,
-quisitum ; potior, 4, po-
titus (*abl.*).
win favour, to, conciliare, 1.
wind, ventus, -i.
window, fenestra, -ae.
wine, vinum, -i, *n*.
wing, ala, -ae ; penna, -ae ;
(*of an army*), cornu, -ūs ;
ala, -ae.
winter, hiems, -ēmis, *f*. ;
bruma, -ae.
wisdom, sapientia, -ae ; pru-
dentia, -ae ; consilium, -i.
wise, *I am*, sapio, 3, -ivi, *or* -ii.
wise, sapiens, -entis.
wish, *I*, volo, 3, volui, velle.
wish, voluntas, -atis ; votum,
-i ; *your wishes*, quae vis.
wit, sales, -ium ; lepus, -ōris,
m., festivitas, -atis ;
facetiae, -arum.
with (*along with*), (*prep.*),
cum (*abl.*).
withdraw, *I*, abduco, 3,
and subduco.

within (*prep.*), *intra* (*acc.*);
to within (*adv.*), *intro*.

without (*prep.*), *sine*; *absque*
(abl.).

without the knowledge of,
clam (*prep. with acc.*);
ita ut non; *or use* *quin*;
nisi.

without, I am, *careo*, 2 (*abl.*).

witty, *lepidus*, -a, -um;
facet, -a, -um; *urbanus*,
 -a, -um.

witness, *testis*, -is, *m*.

woman, *mulier*, -eris; *fe-*
mina, -ae.

wonder, I, *miror*, *i*.

wonderful, *mirus*, -a, -um;
mirabilis, -e; *mirandus*,
 -a, -um.

wont to, I am, *soleo*, 2, *solu-*
tus sum; *consuesco*, 3,
 -suevi, -suetum.

wood, *silva*, -ae; *nemus*,
 -ōris, *n*.; *timber*, *lignum*,
 -i.

wool, *lana*, -ae.

word, *verbum*, -i.

work, I, *laboro*, *i*; *ope-*
ram do.

work, *opus*, -eris, *n*.

workman, *opera*, -ae, *f*.

workshop, *officīna*, -ae.

world, *mundus*, -i; *orbis*, -is,
m. (*with or without terrae*
or terrarum); (*meaning*
'persons' say), *homines*;
omnes; *etc*.

worse, *peior*, -us; *deterior*.

worship, *cultus*, -ūs.

worth, *virtus*, -utis, *f*.; *dig-*
nitas, -atis, *f*.; (*of value*),
pretium, -i; *of great*
worth, *magni*, *etc*.

worth while, it is, *operae*
pretium est.

worthless, *inutilis*, -e; *vilis*,
 -e; *nihili*; *levis*, -e; *nequam*
(indecl.), -ior, -issimus.

worthy, *dignus*, -a, -um.

wound, I, *vulnero*, *i*; *saucio*,
i.

wound, *vulnus*, -eris, *n*.

wounded, the, *vulnerati*;
saucii.

wreak, to, anger or vengeance
on, *ulciscor*, 3, *ultus*
(dep.).

wrench, I, *convello*, 3, -velli,
 -vulsum; *extorqueo*, 2,
 -torsi, -tortum.

wretched, *miser*, -era, -erum;
infelix, -icis.

wrinkle, *ruga*, -ae.

write, I, *scribo*, 3, *scripsi*,
scriptum.

wrong, I do, *pecco*, *i*; *I am*
wrong, *erro*, *i*; *wrong*
doing, *peccare*.

wrong, a, *iniuria*, *f*.

wrong, *pravus*, -a, -um,
mistaken, *falsus*, -a, -um;
unjust, *iniquus*, -a, -um;
morally wrong, *nefas*.

year, *annus*, -i.

yellow, *flavus*, -a, -um.

yesterday, *heri*; *of yesterday*,
hesternus (*adj.*).

yet (nevertheless), *tamen*;
vero.

yet, not, *nondum*.

yield, I, *cedo*, 3, *cessi*, *ces-*
sum (*trans. and intrans.*).

yoke, *iugum*, -i.

you, tu; *plur.*, *vos*.

VOCABULARY.

young, iuvenis, -is; adoles-
cens, -entis.

your (sing.), tuus; (*plur.*),
vester, -tra, -trum; *that of*
yours, iste.

yourself, ipse, -a.

youth, time of, iuventus,
-utis, *f.*; iuventa, -ae; *a*

body of youth, iuventus,
-utis, *f.*; *a youth*, iu-
venis, -is, *m.*; adolescens,
-entis.

zeal, studium, *n.*

zealous, studiosus, -a, -um.

INDEX

—♦—
(*The Roman numerals refer to the Exercises.*)
—♦— •

ABLATIVE, §§ 70-90; definition of, § 70; classification of,
§ 71.

- „ Absolute, § 89, and Pref. Note to LXIV.
- „ after certain Adjs. and Parts., § 87 (2).
- „ of Agent, § 76 and § 24, Note.
- „ of Association, *n.* to p. 90.
- „ of Cause, § 83.
- „ of Comparison, § 75.
- „ after certain Deponent Verbs, § 87 (3).
- „ of Manner, § 84.
- „ of Material, § 73, Note.
- „ of Means or Instrument, § 82.
- „ of Measure, Difference of, § 86.
- „ of Motion From, § 72.
- „ of Origin, § 73.
- „ of Place Where, §§ 77, 78.
- „ after Prepositions, § 90.
- „ of Price, § 85.
- „ of Quality or Description, § 88.
- „ of Respect, § 80.
- „ of Route by which, § 79.
- „ of Separation, § 74.
- „ of Time When or Within Which, § 81.
- „ after Verbs of Want or Fulness, § 87 (1).

Abstract terms, to be avoided when possible in writing Latin,
Appendix, § 3 (c).

INDEX.

ACCUSATIVE, §§ 44-58 ; definition and classification of, § 44.

„ Cognate, § 51.

„ of Direct Object, § 45.

„ Double, §§ 46, 47.

„ of Exclamation, § 48.

„ of Extent, §§ 54, 55.

„ External and Internal, § 44.

„ before Infinitive, § 36 (5), § 58.

„ of Motion Towards, §§ 49, 50, and *n.* to p. 53.

„ of Part Affected, § 52.

„ Predicative, § 47.

„ after Prepositions, §§ 56, 57.

ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES, §§ 110, 113.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES, defined, § 112 ; classified and explained, §§ 131-133 ; various kinds of, in detail, §§ 134-154.

ADVERBS of Place, list of, Pref. Note to **XXXIII.**

agere aliquid, **LV**, *n.* 2.

antequam, § 143.

Aorist Subjunctive, use of, § 157.

Apodosis, the, § 144.

apud, **XXXIX**, *n.* 6.

at, at enim, **CXX**, *n.* 3.

Calendar, Roman, explained, Pref. Note to **LXXXVI.**

Causal Clauses, § 131 (III) ; § 138.

„ Conjunctions, § 138.

Clause, definition of the term, *n.* to p. 2.

CLAUSES, Adjectival, §§ 109, 110, 113.

„ Adverbial, §§ 109, 112, 131-133.

„ Causal, § 131 (III) ; § 138.

„ Comparative, § 131 (VII) ; §§ 151-153.

„ Concessive, § 131 (IV) ; §§ 139, 140.

„ Conditional, § 131 (VI) ; §§ 144-147.

„ „ in Oratio Obliqua, §§ 148, 149 ; do. subordinate to Consecutive Clauses, &c., § 150.

„ Consecutive, § 131 (II) ; §§ 136, 137.

„ Subordinate, definition and classification of, §§ 10, 108, 109 ; various kinds of, Part II generally.

„ Substantival, §§ 109, 111, 114, 115 ; various in detail, § 116-130.

- Comparative Clauses, § 131 (VII) ; §§ 151-153.
 „ Conjunctions, §§ 152, 153.
- Composite Subjects, § 15.
- Concessive Clauses, § 131 (IV) ; §§ 139, 140.
 „ Conjunctions, § 139.
 „ use of Subjunctive, § 107 (6).
- Concords, the Four, §§ 11-14.
- Concrete words, to be preferred to Abstract, in writing Latin,
 Appendix, § 3 (c).
- Conditional Sentences, of two kinds, §§ 145-147.
 „ Clauses, § 131 (VI), §§ 144-147.
 „ use of Subjunctive, § 107 (5).
- Conjunctions, causal, § 138 ; comparative, §§ 152, 153 ; concessive, § 139 ; conditional, § 147 ; consecutive, § 136 ; final, § 134 ; temporal, § 141.
- Consecution of Tenses, general law of, § 123 ; qualifications of general law, § 157 ; in final clauses, § 135 ; in consecutive do., § 137 ; in subordinate clauses generally, § 157.
- Consecutive Clauses, § 131 (II) ; §§ 136, 137.
 „ Conjunctions, § 136.
- Continuous Oratio Obliqua, § 128.
- Co-ordinate Sentences, § 9.
- Copula, the, § 3.
- Copulative Verbs, § 7.
- crimen*, LX, n. 14.
- cui bono*, meaning of, LI, n. 5.
- cum*, introducing real apodosis, CXXXIX, n. 3.
 „ frequentative, CXXXVIII, n. 2.
 „ with Subjunctive, §§ 138, 140, 142.
- cum . . . tum*, CXXXVII, n. 2.
- Dates and dating, Roman system of, Pref. Note to LXXXVI.
- DATIVE, §§ 59-69 ; used in two senses, § 59 ; general definition of, § 60.
 „ of Advantage or Disadvantage, § 64.
 „ of the Agent, § 68.
 „ with Compound Verbs, § 62 (4), and *n.* to p. 69.
 „ Ethical, § 65.
 „ of Indirect Object, §§ 60-68.
 „ Opinion, indicating a person's, § 66.

INDEX.

DATIVE of Person or Thing specially interested, § 63.

„ of Possessor, § 67.

„ Predicative, § 69, (1) and (2) with Note.

„ of Recipient, § 62 (2).

decretum ultimum or *supremum*, CXXIII, n. 1.

Deliberative Subjunctive, § 107 (2) ; lost in Oratio Obliqua, CXXIII, n. 4 ; § 157 (7).

Deponent Verbs, §§ 29, 30.

Described Speech, n. to p. 164.

Direct Object, § 17.

Distance, how expressed, § 54, and Pref. Note to LXXXVII.

doceo, 'I inform,' used with *de*, p. 51, n.

dum, with Pres. Indic., § 143 ; CVI, n. 3 ; peculiar use of, § 143, Note.

dum, donec, &c., § 143.

Enclitic particles in Latin, VII, n. 3 ; Appendix, 31 (f).

Exclamations, expressed by Infinitive, § 36 (3).

Exclamation, accusative of, § 48.

Factitive Verbs, §§ 7, 47.

Final Clauses, § 131 (I) ; §§ 134, 135.

Final Conjunctions, § 134.

fore ut, futurum esse or *fuisse ut*, CIII, n. 1.

French Constructions analogous to Latin, n. to p. 70 ; XCIX, n. 1 ; nn. to pp. 257, 258.

fuero for *fuissem*, n. to p. 168.

FUTURE Infinitive Passive, how formed, § 42, and § 50, Note.

„ Participle, used with Verb *esse* to supply Fut. to the Subj. and the Infin., § 124.

„ Perfect Tense, meaning of, Pref. Note to IV.

„ Tense subordinate to a Fut., VI, n. 9 ; VII, n. 14.

GENITIVE, §§ 91-104 ; definition and classification of, § 91.

„ of Author or Possessor, § 92.

„ of Definition, § 98.

„ indicating Duty or Sign of, § 93.

„ Greek, § 103.

„ used for Locative, § 104.

„ Objective, explained, § 101 ; various instances of, § 102.

GENITIVE Partitive, § 94.

„ of Quality or Description, §§ 95, 96.

„ of Value, § 97.

„ after Verbs of Accusing, Condemning, &c., § 99.

„ after Verbs and Adjs. signifying Want or Fulness,
§ 100.

Gerund, the, use of, §§ 37-39, and Pref. Note to LXXIX.

Gerundive, the, use of, §§ 37, 40, 41; and Pref. Note to
LXXIX.

gratias agere and *habere*, LXII, n. 10.

Historical Infinitive, § 36 (1).

„ Tenses, § 123.

honor, 'a public office,' XLI, n. 8.

Hortative (or Jussive) use of Subj., § 107 (4).

iam, distinguished from *nunc*, XXXIV, n. 1.

idem, may signify 'also,' IX, n. 8; XLIX, n. 10.

Ides, the, Pref. Note to LXXXVI.

Imperfect Tense, meanings of, Pref. Note to IV; do. sub-
ordinate to a Present Perfect, § 157.

Impersonal Verbs, definition of, § 28; list and construction
of, § 28 (1) to (6); § 102 (4) and (5).

Impersonal Verbs of *happening*, *resulting*, &c., how con-
structed, § 115 (4); § 129 (3); § 130.

Indirect Commands, Entreaties, Prohibitions, &c., § 129.

„ or Remoter Object, §§ 19, 60, 61.

„ Question, § 115 (II); explained with rules, §§ 126,
127.

„ Statement, see 'Oratio Obliqua.'

Infinitive Mood, definition and various uses of, § 36.

-ING, words ending in, how variously to be rendered in
Latin, Appendix, § 7.

Interrogative Particles, VIII, n. 13; XIX, n. 5.

INTRANSITIVE VERBS, § 18; some have Transitive equiva-
lents in English, § 20; some are Transitive as well as
Intransitive, §§ 21, 22; Verbs Intransitive in English
may be Transitive in Latin, § 23; Intransitives fol-
lowed by Dative, list of, §§ 20-22; how used in Pass.,
§§ 25, 26; sometimes Trans. when compounded with
Preps., n. to p. 22.

INDEX.

ila . . . *ut*, CXXX, *n.* 6 ; CXXXII, *n.* 6 ; § 152 ; App. § 35.
ius, distinguished from *lex*, XXXV, *n.* 6.

Kalends, the, Pref. Note to LXXXVI.

lex, distinguished from *ius*, XXXV, *n.* 6.

Locative Case, §§ 77, 104 ; *nn.* to pp. 110, 115.

'loose connection,' not tolerated in Latin, LIII, *n.* 15 ;
Appendix, § 31 (o).

Measure, = Extent, § 54, Pref. Note to LXXXVII ; = Difference of Measure, § 86, and Pref. Note to LXXXVII.

memini, *reminiscor*, &c., § 102 (2).

Metaphors, how to be introduced, CX, *n.* 8 ; and see Appendix, § 3 (b).

metuere ne, *metuere ut*, § 129, Note.

misereor, *miseresco*, § 102 (3).

Money, Roman system of counting, Pref. Note to LXXXV.

Mood in Oratio Obliqua, § 120.

Motion From, § 72.

Motion Towards, how expressed, § 49, and Pref. Note to LXXXVII.

ne . . . *quidem*, LXVI, *n.* 14 ; CXXIX, *n.* 4.

nedum, CXXIX, *n.* 7.

nescio quis, CXIII, *n.* 7.

neu or *neve*, use of, *n.* to p. 189.

non quod . . . *sed quia*, § 138, Note.

Nones, the, Pref. Note to LXXXVI.

'now,' resumptive, how to be translated, XXXVI, *n.* 1 ;
XLIV, *n.* 6.

Numerals and Roman system of counting, Pref. Note to LXXXV.

nunc, distinguished from *iam*, XXXIV, *n.* 1.

nuntius, LXII, *n.* 1.

Object, Direct, § 17 ; Indirect, §§ 19, 60, 61.

Oblique Speech, see 'Oratio Obliqua' and 'Indirect Question.'

obliviscor, recordor, &c., § 102 (2).

Optative use of Subjunctive, § 107 (3).

ORATIO OBLIQUA, explained, §§ 116–118.

„ „ Continuous Speeches in, § 128.

„ „ Examples of Continuous, § 128, pp. 176, 177.

„ „ Mood in, § 120.

„ „ Pronouns and Adverbs of Time in, § 119.

„ „ Tenses in Principal Clauses of, § 122.

„ „ „ in Subordinate Clauses of, § 123.

„ „ Virtual, § 125.

Oratio Recta, §§ 117, 118.

Order of words in Latin, rules for, Appendix, §§ 29–32.

‘*ought to have*,’ how to be translated, **XXII**, *n.* 3.

Passive Voice of Transitive and Intransitive Verbs respectively, how used, § 24.

Participles, the Latin, §§ 31–35 ; the Past, § 33 ; the Present, § 32 ; the Future, § 34 ; deficiencies of, § 35 ; hints for the use of, Pref. Note to **XXV** and **LXIV** ; also Appendix, §§ 10, 11.

Perfect Subjunctive with Aoristic meaning, § 157 (5).

„ Tense, meanings of, Pref. Note to **IV**.

Periphrasis for Future Infinitive Passive, **CIII**, *n.* 1 ; with Future Participle, to form Fut. Subjunctive and Infinitive, § 124.

Phrase, definition of the term, *n.* to p. 3.

Pluperfect in Latin used where English uses Imperfect, **CVI**, *n.* 2.

Potential Subjunctive, § 107 (1).

Predicate, the, § 2 ; how composed and enlarged, § 5.

Prepositions governing the Accusative, § 56.

Present Participle, meaning of, § 32 ; Pref. Note to **XXV** ; not to be used for Adjective, **XV**, *n.* 8 and Appendix, § 11.

„ Tense, the two meanings of, Pref. Note to **IV**.

Primary Tenses, § 123.

prius quam, § 143.

Prohibitions, **XLIII**, *n.* 5, and p. 132, *n.*

Prolate (or Supplementary) use of Verbs, § 27, and *n.* to p. 32, § 36 (4).

Prolative Verbs, § 27.

INDEX.

Pronouns, exact meaning of the various, Pref. Note to I and XIX; also Appendix, § 12; usually omitted in Latin, *n.* to p. 3; in Oratio Obliqua, § 119.

Protasis, the § 144.

Purpose, never expressed by Infinitive, LXII, *n.* 15; various ways of expressing, *n.* to p. 188.

quam has same case after as before it, V, *n.* 5.

quamquam, § 139, Note.

quavis, § 139, Note.

quanto . . . tanto, § 152.

QUI, Causal, §§ 133, 154 (3).

„ Consecutive, §§ 133, 154 (2).

„ Concessive, §§ 133, 140, 154 (4).

„ Final, §§ 133, 135, 154 (1).

„ and other Relative words introducing Adverbial Clauses of *purpose*, *consequence*, *cause*, or *concession*, §§ 112, 133, 154.

„ with the Subjunctive, §§ 138, 140, 154.

„ Subjunctive and Indicative contrasted, CI, *nn.* 4 and 5; CII, *n.* 1; § 154.

sunt qui, why usually with Subjunctive, CII, *n.* 3.

quin, for *qui non*, *n.* to p. 220; § 155.

quis used for *aliquis* after *si*, *ne*, *num*, and *an*, *n.* to p. 29.

quo, with Comparatives, CXXVIII, *n.* 3.

quo . . . eo, how used, XVI, *n.* 6; § 151.

quoad, § 143.

quod, *quia*, § 138.

quominus, § 156.

Quotation, Speeches reported by, § 117.

quotus, VIII, *n.* 12; *quotus quisque*, L, *n.* 10.

Relative Clauses, main difficulty of, in Latin, § 113 Note.

Relatives (*qui*, *unde*, *ubi*, &c.), used to introduce Adverbial Clauses, §§ 112, 133, 154.

‘safe,’ variously expressed, CXXXIII, *n.* 5.

Sentences, Compound, §§ 10, 108; Co-ordinate, § 9; Simple, § 8.

sequi, *assequi*, *consequi*, LVIII, *n.* 3.

sesterces, sums of, how counted, Pref. Note to LXXXV; how written, XLIII, *n.* 8.

si non and *sin*, *n.* to p. 206.

Simple Sentences, definition of, §§ 8, 108.

Subject of a Sentence, the, § 2; must be a Noun in the Nom. or its equivalent, § 4; how enlarged, § 6.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, defined, § 105 note on App. § 23.

„ Concessive, § 107 (6).

„ Conditional, § 107 (5).

„ Deliberative, § 107 (2).

„ Hortative or Jussive, § 107 (4).

„ in Independent Sentences, §§ 106, 107.

„ Optative, § 107 (3).

„ Potential, § 107 (1).

Subordinate Clauses, §§ 10, 108, 109; and generally in Part II.

SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES, defined and explained, §§ 109, 111, 114; classified, § 115; various kinds of, in detail, §§ 116–130.

„ after Impersonal and Passive Phrases, § 130.

„ after *ut* and *ne*, &c., § 129.

sunt qui, with Subjunctive and Indicative according to the sense, CII, *n.* 3.

Supines, the, use of, §§ 42, 43; Supine in *-um*, § 50; in *-u*, § 43.

Syntax, definition of, § 1.

Tacitus, peculiar usage of, in Conditional Clauses, § 147, Note (3); in Oratio Obliqua, § 124, Note (2).

Tantum abest ut, § 130, Note.

Temporal Clauses, § 131 (V); §§ 141–143.

„ Conjunctions, § 141.

TENSES, exact meaning of Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Future Perfect, Pref. Note to IV.

„ used in Consecutive Clauses, § 137; in Final Clauses, § 135.

„ in Oratio Obliqua, §§ 121–123.

‘that of,’ ‘those of,’ not to be translated in Latin, XXXIV, *n.* 3, and Appendix, § 12 (d).

‘That,’ the word, various uses of in English, how to be translated into Latin, Appendix, § 5.

'those killed,' 'those found,' &c., how to translate, **LI**, *n.* 4, and Appendix, § 12 (e).

Time, how long, § 54 ; and Pref. Note to **LXXXVII** ; time at or within which, § 81 and Pref. Note.

'To,' often omitted in English, *n.* to p. 67.

'To,' the word, various uses of in English, how to be translated into Latin, Appendix, § 6.

Trajective, use of Term, *nn.* to pp. 67 and 68.

Transitive Verbs, defined, §§ 16, 17 ; Verbs Transitive and Intransitive, §§ 20-22 ; Latin Transitives may be Intransitive in English, and *vice versa*, § 23 ; how used in Passive, §§ 24, 25, 26.

UT, Consecutive, § 115, Note.

„ in Comparisons, § 152.

„ Definitive, § 115, Note.

„ Final, § 115, Note.

ut . . . ita, § 143, Note, § 151.

Vel with concessive force, **LXIV**, *n.* 6.

VERBS, of *Asking*, how constructed, *n.* to p. 51, and **XLVI**, *n.* 8.

„ governing Dative, §§ 19-22.

„ Deponent, §§ 29, 30, *n.* 8.

„ of *hoping* and *promising*, **XXXI** ; also Appendix, § 9 (f).

„ Impersonal, § 28.

„ Intransitive, § 18.

„ Prolative, § 27.

„ of *stating* and *thinking* take Accusative and Infinitive, § 36 (5) ; § 116.

Transitive, §§ 16, 17.

vereri ne, *vereri ut*, § 129, Note.

Virtual Oratio Obliqua, §§ 125, 138.

'when,' sometimes marks Principal Verb, **LXXVI**.

'while,' different meanings of, § 143, Note.

'with,' ambiguity of the word, *n.* to p. 88.

'would' may denote habit, **XXI**, *n.* 1 ; or desire, **LXXIX**, *n.* 1.

Clarendon Press Series.

Latin Educational Works.

GRAMMARS, LEXICONS, &c.

- Allen.** *Rudimenta Latina.* Comprising Accidence, and Exercises of a very Elementary Character, for the use of Beginners. By J. BARROW ALLEN, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.]
- *An Elementary Latin Grammar.* By the same Author. One hundred and thirty-seventh Thousand. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *A First Latin Exercise Book.* By the same Author. Seventh Edition. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *A Second Latin Exercise Book.* By the same Author. Eighth Edition. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- [A Key to First and Second Latin Exercise Books: for Teachers only, price 5s.]
- Fox and Bromley.** *Models and Exercises in Unseen Translation.* By H. F. FOX, M.A., and T. M. BROMLEY, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.]
- [A Key to Passages quoted in the above: for Teachers only, price 6d.]
- Gibson.** *An Introduction to Latin Syntax.* By W. S. GIBSON, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.]
- Jerram.** *Reddenda Minora.* By C. S. JERRAM, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.]
- *Anglice Reddenda.* FIRST SERIES. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Anglice Reddenda.* SECOND SERIES. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- *Anglice Reddenda.* THIRD SERIES. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- Lee-Warner.** *Hints and Helps for Latin Elegiacs.* By H. LEE-WARNER, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- [A Key is provided: for Teachers only, price 4s. 6d.]
- Lewis.** *An Elementary Latin Dictionary.* By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D. [Square 8vo, 7s. 6d.]
- *A Latin Dictionary for Schools.* By the same Author. [Small 4to, 18s.]
- Lindsay.** *A Short Historical Latin Grammar.* By W. M. LINDSAY, M.A. [Crown 8vo, 5s. 6d.]
- Nunns.** *First Latin Reader.* By T. J. NUNNS, M.A. Third Edition. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.]
- Ramsay.** *Latin Prose Composition.* By G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., LL.D. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo.
- Vol. I. *Syntax, Exercises with Notes, &c.*, 4s. 6d.
Or in two Parts, 2s. 6d. each, viz.
Part I. *The Simple Sentence.* Part II. *The Compound Sentence.*
- * * *A Key to the above, price 5s. net. Supplied to Teachers only, on application to the Secretary, Clarendon Press.*
- Vol. II. *Passages of Graduated Difficulty for Translation into Latin, together with an Introduction on Continuous Prose*, 4s. 6d.
- Ramsay.** *Latin Prose Versions.* Contributed by various Scholars. Edited by G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., LL.D. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.]

- Sargent.** *Easy Passages for Translation into Latin.* By J. Y. SARGENT, M.A. *Seventh Edition.* [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
[A Key to this Edition is provided: for Teachers only, price 5s., net.]
- *A Latin Prose Primer.* By the same Author.
[Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- King and Cookson.** *The Principles of Sound and Inflection, as illustrated in the Greek and Latin Languages.* By J. E. KING, M.A., and CHRISTOPHER COOKSON, M.A. [8vo, 18s.]
- *An Introduction to the Comparative Grammar of Greek and Latin.* By the same Authors. [Crown 8vo, 5s. 6d.]
- Papillon.** *A Manual of Comparative Philology.* By T. L. PAPILLON, M.A. *Third Edition.* [Crown 8vo, 6s.]
-
- Caesar.** *The Commentaries (for Schools).* With Notes and Maps. By CHARLES E. MOBERLY, M.A.
The Gallic War. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo—
Books I and II, 2s.; III-V, 2s. 6d.; VI-VIII, 3s. 6d.
Books I-III, stiff covers, 2s.
The Civil War. Second Edition. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- Catulli Veronensis Carmina Selecta,** secundum recognitionem ROBINSON ELLIS, A.M. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- Cicero.** *Selection of Interesting and Descriptive Passages.* With Notes. By HENRY WALFORD, M.A. In three Parts. *Third Edition.*
[Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.]
Part I. *Anecdotes from Grecian and Roman History.* . . . [limp, 1s. 6d.]
Part II. *Omens and Dreams; Beauties of Nature.* . . . [„ 1s. 6d.]
Part III. *Rome's Rule of her Provinces.* . . . [„ 1s. 6d.]
- *De Amicitia.* With Introduction and Notes. By ST. GEORGE STOCK, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- *De Senectute.* With Introduction and Notes. By LEONARD HUXLEY, B.A. In one or two Parts. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.]
- *Pro Cluentio.* With Introduction and Notes. By W. RAMSAY, M.A. Edited by G. G. RAMSAY, M.A. *Second Edition.* [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- *Pro Marcello, pro Ligario, pro Rege Deiotaro.* With Introduction and Notes. By W. Y. FAUSSET, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Pro Milone.* With Notes, &c. By A. B. POYNTON, M.A.
[Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Pro Roscio.* With Introduction and Notes. By ST. GEORGE STOCK, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- *Select Orations (for Schools).* In *Verrem Actio Prima. De Imperio Gn. Pompeii. Pro Archia. Philippica IX.* With Introduction and Notes. By J. R. KING, M.A. *Second Edition.* . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *In Q. Caecilium Divinatio and In C. Verrem Actio Prima.* With Introduction and Notes. By J. R. KING, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 1s. 6d.]

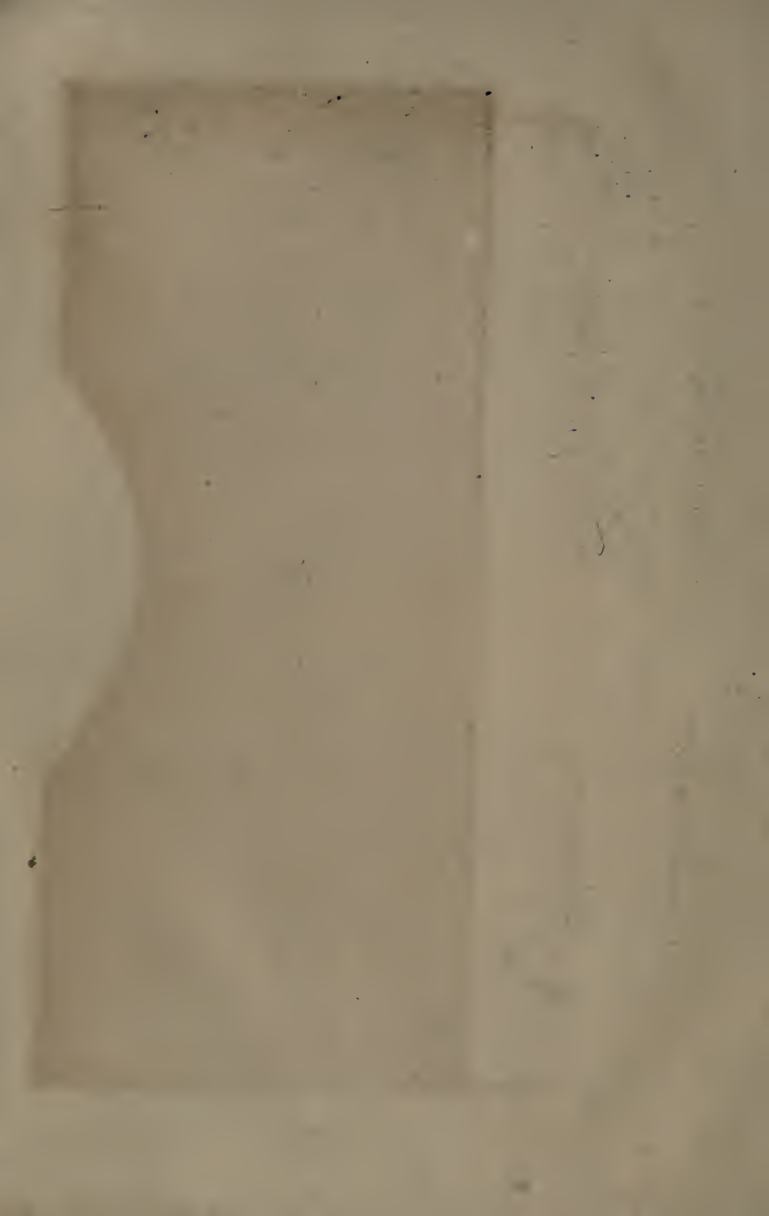
- Cicero.** *Speeches against Catilina.* With Introduction and Notes. By E. A. UPCOTT, M.A. *Second Edition.* . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Philippic Orations.* With Notes, &c., by J. R. KING, M.A. *Second Edition.* . . . [8vo, 10s. 6d.]
- *Selected Letters* (for Schools). With Notes. By C. E. PRICHARD, M.A., and E. R. BERNARD, M.A. *Second Edition.* [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- *Select Letters.* With English Introductions, Notes, and Appendices. By ALBERT WATSON, M.A. *Fourth Edition.* . . . [8vo, 18s.]
- *Select Letters.* Text. By the same Editor. *Second Edition.* [Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s.]
- Cornelius Nepos.** With Notes. By OSCAR BROWNING, M.A. *Third Edition.* Revised by W. R. INGE, M.A. . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- Early Roman Poetry.** *Selected Fragments.* With Introduction and Notes. By W. W. MERRY, D.D. . . . [Crown 8vo, 6s. 6d.]
- Horace.** With a Commentary. Volume I. *The Odes, Carmen Seculare, and Epodes.* By EDWARD C. WICKHAM, D.D. *New Edition.* [Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.]
- *Odes, Book I.* By the same Editor. . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.]
- *Selected Odes.* With Notes for the use of a Fifth Form. By E. C. WICKHAM, D.D. . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.]
- Juvenal.** *XIII Satires.* Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by C. H. PEARSON, M.A., and H. A. STRONG, M.A. *Second Edition.* [Crown 8vo, 9s.]
- Livy.** *Selections* (for Schools). With Notes and Maps. By H. LEE-WARNER, M.A. . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo]
- Part I. *The Caudine Disaster.* . . . [limp, 1s. 6d.]
- Part II. *Hannibal's Campaign in Italy.* . . . [„ 1s. 6d.]
- Part III. *The Macedonian War.* . . . [„ 1s. 6d.]
- *Book I.* With Introduction, Historical Examination, and Notes. By J. R. SEELEY, M.A. *Third Edition.* . . . [8vo, 6s.]
- *Books V—VII.* With Introduction and Notes. By A. R. CLUER, B.A. *Second Edition.* Revised by P. E. MATHESON, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.]
- Book V, 2s. 6d. ; Book VII, 2s.* By the same Editors.
- *Books XXI—XXIII.* With Introduction, Notes, and Maps. By M. T. TATHAM, M.A. *Second Edition.* . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.]
- *Book XXI.* By the same Editor. . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Book XXII.* By the same Editor. . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- Ovid.** *Selections* (for the use of Schools). With Introductions and Notes, and an Appendix on the Roman Calendar. By W. RAMSAY, M.A. Edited by G. G. RAMSAY, M.A. *Third Edition.* . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s. 6d.]
- *Tristia, Book I.* The Text revised, with an Introduction and Notes. By S. G. OWEN, B.A. . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- *Tristia, Book III.* With Introduction and Notes. By the same Editor. . . . [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s.]

- Persius.** *The Satires.* With Translation and Commentary by J. CONINGTON, M.A., edited by H. NETTLESHIP, M.A. . . . [8vo, 8s. 6d.]
- Plautus.** *Captivi.* With Introduction and Notes. By W. M. LINDSAY, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Trinummus.* With Notes and Introductions. (Intended for the Higher Forms of Public Schools.) By C. E. FREEMAN, M.A., and A. SLOMAN, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- Pliny.** *Selected Letters* (for Schools). By C. E. PRICHARD, M.A., and E. R. BERNARD, M.A. *Third Edition.* [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- Quintilian.** *Institutionis Oratoriae Liber X.* Edited by W. PETERSON, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- Sallust.** *Bellum Catilinarium* and *Jugurthinum.* With Introduction and Notes, by W. W. CAPES, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 4s. 6d.]
- Tacitus.** *The Annals.* Books I—IV. Edited, with Introduction and Notes for the use of Schools and Junior Students, by H. FURNEAUX, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 5s.]
- *The Annals.* Book I. By the same Editor. . . . [limp, 2s.]
- Terence.** *Adelphi.* With Notes and Introductions. By A. SLOMAN, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- *Andria.* With Notes and Introductions. By C. E. FREEMAN, M.A., and A. SLOMAN, M.A. *Second Edition* [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- *Phormio.* With Notes and Introductions. By A. SLOMAN, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 3s.]
- Tibullus and Propertius.** *Selections.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by G. G. RAMSAY, M.A. *Second Edition.* [Extra fcap. 8vo, 6s.]
- Virgil.** With an Introduction and Notes. By T. L. PAPILLON, M.A., and A. E. HAIGH, M.A. 2 vols. [Crown 8vo, 12s.]
- *Bucolics and Georgics.* By the same Editors. [Crown 8vo, 3s. 6d.]
- *Aeneid.* With Introduction and Notes, by the same Editors. In Four Parts. [Crown 8vo, 3s. each.]
- *The Text, including the Minor Works.* [On writing-paper, 32mo, 5s.; on India paper, 6s.]
- *Bucolics.* With Introduction and Notes, by C. S. JERRAM, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Georgics.* Books I, II. By the same Editor. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Georgics.* Books III, IV. By the same Editor. [Extra fcap. 8vo, 2s. 6d.]
- *Aeneid I.* With Introduction and Notes, by the same Editor. [Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d.]
- *Aeneid IX.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. E. HAIGH, M.A. [Extra fcap. 8vo, limp, 1s. 6d. In two Parts, 2s.]

London: HENRY FROWDE,

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE, AMEN CORNER.

Edinburgh: 12 FREDERICK STREET.



Lal.Gr

R 1787kx

281882

Author Ramsay, George Gilbert

Title Latin prose composition. Ed.4. Vol.1.

NAME OF BORROWER.

University of Toronto Library

**DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

